



Polycom RMX™ 2000 Administrator's Guide

Version 4.0



Copyright © 2009 Polycom, Inc.
All Rights Reserved

Catalog No. DOC2225A
Version 4.0

Proprietary and Confidential

The information contained herein is the sole intellectual property of Polycom, Inc. No distribution, reproduction or unauthorized use of these materials is permitted without the expressed written consent of Polycom, Inc. Information contained herein is subject to change without notice and does not represent commitment of any type on the part of Polycom, Inc. Polycom and Accord are registered trademarks of Polycom, Inc.

Notice

While reasonable effort was made to ensure that the information in this document was complete and accurate at the time of printing, Polycom, Inc., cannot assume responsibility for any errors. Changes and/or corrections to the information contained in this document may be incorporated into future issues. Portions, aspects and/or features of this product are protected under United States Patent Law in accordance with the claims of United States Patent No: US 6,300,973; US 6,492,216; US 6,496,216; US 6,757,005; US 6,760,750; US 7,054,620; US 7,085,243; US 7,113,200; US 7,269,252; US 7,310,320.

PATENT PENDING

Regulatory Notices

United States Federal Communication Commission (FCC)

Part 15: Class A Statement. This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Test limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio-frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manuals, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his or her own expense.

Part 68: Network Registration Number. This equipment is registered with the FCC in accordance with Part 68 of the FCC Rules. This equipment is identified by the FCC registration number.

If requested, the FCC registration Number and REN must be provided to the telephone company.

Any repairs to this equipment must be carried out by Polycom Inc. or our designated agent. This stipulation is required by the FCC and applies during and after the warranty period.

United States Safety Construction Details:

- All connections are indoor only.
- Unit is intended for RESTRICTED ACCESS LOCATION.
- Unit is to be installed in accordance with the National Electrical Code.
- The branch circuit overcurrent protection shall be rated 20 A for the AC system.
- This equipment has a maximum operating ambient of 40°C, the ambient temperature in the rack shall not exceed this temperature.

To eliminate the risk of battery explosion, the battery should not be replaced by an incorrect type.

Dispose of used batteries according to their instructions.

CE Mark R&TTE Directive

Polycom Inc., declares that the Polycom RMX™ 2000 is in conformity with the following relevant harmonized standards:

EN 60950-1:2001

EN 55022: 1998+A1:2000+A2:2003 class A

EN 300 386 V1.3.3: 2005

Following the provisions of the Council Directive 1999/CE on radio and telecommunication terminal equipment and the recognition of its conformity.

Canadian Department of Communications

This Class [A] digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Notice: The Industry Canada label identifies certified equipment. This certification means that the equipment meets telecommunication network protective, operational and safety requirements as prescribed in the appropriate Terminal Equipment Technical Requirements document(s). The Department does not guarantee the equipment will operate to the user's satisfaction.

Before installing this equipment, users should ensure that it is permissible to be connected to the facilities of the local telecommunications company. The equipment must also be installed using an acceptable method of connection. The customer should be aware that compliance with the above conditions may not prevent degradation of service in some situations. Repairs to certified equipment malfunctions, may give the telecommunications company causes to request the user to disconnect the equipment.

Users should ensure for their own protection that the electrical ground connections of the power utility, telephone lines and internal metallic water pipe system, if present, are connected together. This precaution may be particularly important in rural areas.

Caution: Users should not attempt to make such connections themselves, but should contact the appropriate electric inspection authority, or electrician, as appropriate.

Regulatory Notices

Chinese Communication Certificate

声 明

此为 **A** 级产品，在生活环境中，该产品可能会造成无线电干扰。在这种情况下，可能需要用户对其干扰采取切实可行的措施。

Singapore Certificate

RMX 2000 complies with IDA standards G0916-07

Table of Contents

Conference Profiles	1-1
Conferencing Modes	1-2
Standard Conferencing	1-2
Supplemental Conferencing Features	1-4
Viewing Profiles	1-6
Profile Toolbar	1-7
Defining Profiles	1-8
Modifying an Existing Profile	1-19
Deleting a Conference Profile	1-20
Meeting Rooms	2-1
Meeting Rooms List	2-2
Meeting Room Toolbar & Right-click Menu	2-4
Creating a New Meeting Room	2-5
Entry Queues, Ad Hoc Conferences and SIP Factories .	3-1
Entry Queues	3-1
Defining a New Entry Queue	3-3
Listing Entry Queues	3-7
Modifying the EQ Properties	3-8
Transit Entry Queue	3-8
Setting a Transit Entry Queue	3-8
Ad Hoc Conferencing	3-10
Gateway to Polycom® Distributed Media Application™ (DMA™) 7000	3-11
SIP Factories	3-12
Creating SIP Factories	3-12
Address Book	4-1
Viewing the Address Book	4-2
Displaying and Hiding the Address Book	4-2
Adding a Participant to the Address Book	4-4
Adding a new participant to the Address Book Directly	4-4
Adding a Participant from an Ongoing Conference to the Address Book	4-12

Modifying Participants in the Address Book	4-13
Deleting Participants from the Address Book	4-14
Searching the Address Book	4-14
Filtering the Address Book	4-15
Participant Groups	4-17
Adding a New Group to the Address Book	4-17
Deleting a Group from the Address Book	4-18
Modifying a Group in the Address Book	4-19
Importing and Exporting Address Books	4-20
Exporting an Address Book	4-20
Importing an Address Book	4-21
Reservations	5-1
Guidelines	5-1
System	5-1
Resources	5-1
Reservations	5-3
Using the Reservation Calendar	5-4
Toolbar Buttons	5-4
Reservations Views	5-5
Week View	5-6
Day View	5-6
Today View	5-6
List View	5-7
Changing the Calendar View	5-8
Scheduling Conferences Using the Reservation Calendar	5-10
Creating a New Reservation	5-10
Managing Reservations	5-18
Guidelines	5-18
Viewing and Modifying Reservations	5-18
Using the Week and Day views of the Reservations Calendar	5-18
Deleting Reservations	5-20
Searching for Reservations using Quick Search	5-21
Conference Templates	6-1
Guidelines	6-1
Using Conference Templates	6-3
Toolbar Buttons	6-4

Creating a New Conference Template	6-5
Creating a new Conference Template from Scratch	6-5
Saving an Ongoing Conference as a Template	6-11
Starting an Ongoing Conference From a Template	6-13
Scheduling a Reservation From a Conference Template	6-14
Deleting a Conference Template	6-16
Conference and Participant Monitoring	7-1
General Monitoring	7-2
Conference Level Monitoring	7-3
Participant Level Monitoring	7-10
IP Participant Properties	7-11
Monitoring ISDN/PSTN Participants	7-22
Additional Conferencing Information	8-1
Video Session Modes	8-1
Dynamic Continuous Presence (CP) Mode	8-1
High Definition Video Switching Mode	8-2
Continuous Presence (CP) Conferencing	8-2
Video Resolutions in CP	8-3
Additional Video Resolutions in MPM+ Mode	8-5
Additional Intermediate Video Resolutions	8-5
Video Display with CIF, SD and HD Video Connections	8-5
Setting the Maximum CP Resolution for Conferencing ...	8-6
CP Conferencing with H.263 4CIF	8-7
H.263 4CIF Guidelines	8-7
High Definition Video Switching	8-8
HD VSW Guidelines	8-8
Enabling HD Video Switching	8-9
Modifying the HD Video Switching Threshold Bit Rate ..	8-9
Creating a High Definition Video Switching Profile	8-9
Monitoring High Definition Video Switching Conferences ...	8-11
H.239	8-12
Content Transmission Modes	8-12
Content Protocol	8-13
Defining Content Sharing Parameters for a Conference	8-14
Lecture Mode	8-17
Enabling Lecture Mode	8-17

Enabling the Automatic Switching	8-17
Selecting the Conference Lecturer	8-18
Lecture Mode Monitoring	8-18
Media Encryption	8-21
Encryption Flag Settings	8-24
Enabling Encryption in the Profile	8-24
Enabling Encryption at the Participant Level (IP Only)	8-25
Monitoring the Encryption Status	8-26
LPR – Lost Packet Recovery	8-27
Packet Loss	8-27
Causes of Packet Loss	8-27
Effects of Packet Loss on Conferences	8-27
Lost Packet Recovery	8-27
Lost Packet Recovery Guidelines	8-28
Enabling Lost Packet Recovery	8-28
Monitoring Lost Packet Recovery	8-29
Telepresence Mode	8-31
RMX 2000 Telepresence Mode Guidelines	8-31
System Level	8-31
Conference Level	8-32
Room (Participant/Endpoint) Level	8-32
RPX and TPX Video Layouts	8-33
Enabling Telepresence	8-36
Conference Level	8-36
Room (Participant/Endpoint) Level	8-37
Saving an Ongoing Conference as a Template	8-38
Starting an Ongoing Conference From a Template	8-39
Cascading Conferences - Star Topology	8-40
Enabling Cascading	8-42
Creating the Cascade-enabled Entry Queue	8-42
Creating the Dial-out Cascaded Link	8-44
Enabling Cascaded Conferences without Password	8-47
Monitoring Cascaded Conferences	8-48
Creating the Dial-out Link from a Conference Running on the MGC to the Conference Running on the RMX	8-49
Cascading Conferences - H.239-enabled MIH Topology	8-50
MIH Cascading Levels	8-50

MIH Cascading Guidelines	8-51
Master and Slave Conferences	8-51
Video Session Mode, Line Rate and Video Settings	8-52
H.239 Content Sharing	8-53
Setting up MIH Cascading Conferences	8-54
RMX to RMX Cascading	8-54
MGC to RMX 2000 Cascading	8-62
Starting and Monitoring MIH Cascading Conferences	8-73
Monitoring Participants in an MIH Cascaded Conference	8-73
Viewing Participant Properties	8-75
Recording Conferences	9-1
Configuring the RMX to enable Recording	9-1
Defining the Recording Link	9-1
Enabling the Recording Features in a Conference IVR Service	9-3
Enabling the Recording in the Conference Profile	9-4
Managing the Recording Process	9-6
Using the RMX Web Client to Manage the Recording Process	9-6
Using DTMF Codes to Manage the Recording Process	9-8
Conference Recording with Codian IP VCR	9-9
Users, Connections and Notes	10-1
Listing Users	10-2
Adding a New User	10-3
Deleting a User	10-4
Changing a User's Password	10-5
Connections	10-6
Viewing the Connections List	10-6
Notes	10-7
Using Notes	10-7
Network Services	11-1
IP Network Services	11-2
Management Network (Primary)	11-2
Default IP Service (Conferencing Service)	11-2
Modifying the Management Network	11-3
Modifying the Default IP Network Service	11-8

IP Network Monitoring	11-22
ISDN/PSTN Network Services	11-25
Adding/Modifying ISDN/PSTN Network Services	11-26
Obtaining ISDN/PSTN required information	11-26
Modifying an ISDN/PSTN Network Service	11-35
IVR Services	12-1
IVR Services List	12-2
IVR Services Toolbar	12-3
Adding Languages	12-4
Defining a New Conference IVR Service	12-9
Defining a New Conference IVR Service	12-9
Entry Queues IVR Service	12-24
Defining a New Entry Queue Service	12-24
Setting a Conference IVR Service or Entry Queue IVR Service as the Default Service	12-29
Modifying the Conference or Entry IVR Queue Service Properties	12-30
Replacing the Music File	12-31
Adding a Music File	12-31
Creating Audio Prompts and Video Slides	12-33
Recording an Audio Message	12-33
Creating a Welcome Video Slide	12-37
Default IVR Prompts and Messages	12-38
Volume Control of IVR Messages, Music and Roll Call	12-42
The Call Detail Record (CDR) Utility	13-1
The CDR File	13-2
CDR File Formats	13-2
CDR File Contents	13-3
Viewing, Retrieving and Archiving Conference Information	13-5
Viewing the Conference Records	13-5
Refreshing the CDR List	13-6
Retrieving and Archiving Conference CDR Records	13-7
RMX Administration and Utilities	14-1
RMX Manager	14-1
Installing RMX Manager	14-1
Running RMX Manager	14-4

System and Participant Alerts	14-6
System Alerts	14-7
Participant Alerts	14-9
System Configuration	14-10
Modifying System Flags	14-10
Manually Adding and Deleting System Flags	14-15
Auto Layout Configuration	14-22
Customizing the Default Auto Layout	14-22
RMX Time	14-25
Altering the clock	14-25
Resource Management	14-27
Resource Capacity	14-27
Resource Capacity Modes	14-28
Resource Usage	14-29
Video/Voice Port Configuration	14-30
Flexible Resource Capacity Mode	14-30
Fixed Resource Capacity	14-30
Configuring the Video/Voice Resources in MPM Mode	14-32
Configuring the Video/Voice Resources in MPM+ Mode	14-33
Flexible Resource Capacity	14-33
Resource Report	14-37
Displaying the Resource Report	14-38
Resource Report Display in Flexible Resource Capacity Mode™	14-39
Resource Report in Fixed Resource Capacity Mode™ ..	14-40
ISDN/PSTN	14-42
Port Usage	14-43
Setting the Port Usage Threshold	14-43
Port Usage Gauges	14-44
Port gauges in Flexible/Fixed Capacity Modes	14-45
System Information	14-46
SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol)	14-49
Detailed Description	14-49
MIB (Management Information Base) Files	14-49
Private MIBS	14-49

Support for MIB-II Sections	14-50
The Alarm-MIB	14-50
H.341-MIB (H.341 – H.323)	14-50
Standard MIBs	14-50
Traps	14-52
Status Trap Content	14-53
Defining the SNMP Parameters in the RMX	14-54
Multilingual Setting	14-60
Customizing the Multilingual Setting	14-60
Software Management	14-61
Using Software Management	14-61
Notification Settings	14-63
Logger Diagnostic Files	14-65
Auditor	14-68
Auditor Files	14-68
Auditor Event History File Storage	14-68
Retrieving Auditor Files	14-69
Auditor File Viewer	14-71
Audit Events	14-75
Alerts and Faults	14-75
Transactions	14-76
ActiveX Bypass	14-79
Installing ActiveX	14-79
Hardware Monitoring	15-1
Viewing the Status of the Hardware Components	15-1
HW Monitor Pane Toolbar	15-3
Viewing Hardware Component's Properties	15-4
Diagnostic Mode	15-13
Performing Diagnostics	15-13
Diagnostics Monitoring	15-16
MCU Monitor	15-16
Cards Monitor	15-17
Error Buffer	15-18
Appendix A - Disconnection Causes	A-1
IP Disconnection Causes.	A-1
ISDN Disconnection Causes.	A-10

Appendix B - Alarms and Faults B-1

Alarms	B-1
--------------	-----

Appendix C - CDR Fields - Unformatted File C-1

The Conference Summary Record	C-3
Event Records	C-5
Standard Event Record Fields	C-5
Event Types	C-6
Event Specific Fields	C-15
Disconnection Cause Values	C-47
MGC Manager Events that are not Supported by the RMX 2000	C-51

Appendix D - Ad Hoc Conferencing and External Database Authentication D-1

Ad Hoc Conferencing without Authentication	D-2
Ad Hoc Conferencing with Authentication	D-3
Entry Queue Level - Conference Initiation Validation with an External Database Application	D-4
Conference Access with External Database Authentication	D-6
Conference Access Validation - All Participants (Always)	D-7
Conference Access Validation - Chairperson Only (Upon Request)	D-9
System Settings for Ad Hoc Conferencing and External Database Authentication	D-11
Ad Hoc Settings	D-11
Authentication Settings	D-11
MCU Configuration to Communicate with an External Database Application	D-13
Enabling External Database Validation for Starting New Ongoing Conferences	D-15
Enabling External Database Validation for Conferences Access	D-16

Appendix E - Gateway to Polycom® DMA™ 7000 E-1

Call Flow	E-2
Setting up the RMX as an Audio Gateway to the DMA	E-4
Entry Queue Definition	E-4
Monitoring a Gateway-to-DMA Session	E-8

Appendix F - Participant Properties Advanced Channel InformationF-1

Appendix G - Secure Communication Mode G-1

 Switching to Secure Mode G-1

 Purchasing a Certificate G-1

 Installing the Certificate G-3

 Creating/Modifying System Flags G-5

 Enabling Secure Communication Mode G-5

 Alternate Management Network G-6

 Securing an External Database G-7

Appendix H - Configuring Direct Connections to RMX . H-1

 Management Network (Primary) H-1

 Alternate Management Network H-1

 Configuring the Workstation H-2

 Connecting to the Management Network H-5

 Connecting to the Alternate Management Network H-7

 Connecting to the RMX via Modem H-8

 Procedure 1: Install the RMX Manager H-8

 Procedure 2: Configure the Modem H-8

 Procedure 3: Create a Dial-up Connection H-8

 Procedure 4: Connect to the RMX H-13

Conference Profiles

Profiles stored on the MCU enable you to define all types of conferences. Profiles include conference parameters such as Bit Rate, Video Layout, Encryption, etc.

A maximum of 40 *Conference Profiles* can be defined.

Conference Profiles are saved to *Conference Templates* along with all participant parameters, including their *Personal Layout* and *Video Forcing* settings, enabling administrators and operators to create, save, schedule and activate identical conferences. For more information see Chapter 6, “*Conference Templates*”.

The RMX is shipped with a default *Conference Profile* which allows users to immediately start standard ongoing conferences. Its settings are as follows:

Table 1-1 Default Conference Profile Settings

Setting	Value
<i>Profile Name</i>	Factory Video Profile
<i>Bit Rate</i>	384Kbps
<i>Encryption</i>	Disabled
<i>Auto Terminate</i>	Enabled
<i>H.239 Settings</i>	Graphics
<i>HD Video Switching</i>	Disabled
<i>Video Quality</i>	Sharpness
<i>Layout</i>	Auto Layout
<i>Skin</i>	Polycom

Table 1-1 *Default Conference Profile Settings (Continued)*

Setting	Value
<i>IVR Name</i>	Conference IVR Service
<i>LPR</i>	Enabled for CP Conferences

This Profile is automatically assigned to the following conferencing entities:

Name	ID
<i>Meeting Rooms</i>	
<i>Maple_Room</i>	<i>1001</i>
<i>Oak_Room</i>	<i>1002</i>
<i>Juniper_Room</i>	<i>1003</i>
<i>Fig_Room</i>	<i>1004</i>
<i>Entry Queue</i>	
<i>Default EQ</i>	<i>1000</i>

Conferencing Modes

Standard Conferencing

When defining a new video Profile, you select the parameters that determine the video display on the participant’s endpoint and the quality of the video. When defining a new conference Profile, the system uses default values for standard conferencing. Standard conferencing enable several participants to be viewed simultaneously and each connected endpoint uses its highest video, audio and data capabilities up to the maximum bit rate set for the conference.

The main parameters that define the quality of a video conference are:

- **Bit Rate** - The transfer rate of video and audio streams. The higher the bit rate, the better the video quality.

- **Audio Algorithm** - The audio compression algorithm determines the quality of the conference audio.
- **Video protocol, video format, frame rate, annexes, and interlaced video mode** - These parameters define the quality of the video images. The RMX will send video at the best possible resolution supported by endpoints regardless of the resolution received from the endpoints.
 - When Sharpness is selected as the Video Quality setting in the conference Profile, the RMX will send 4CIF (H.263) at 15fps instead of CIF (H.264) at 30fps.
 - H.264 protocol provides better compression of video images in bit rates lower than 384 Kbps and it will be automatically selected for the endpoint if it supports H.264.
 - When working with RMXs at low bit rates (128, 256, or 384Kbps), HDX endpoints will transmit SD15 resolution instead of 2CIF resolution.

When using 1x1 conference layout, the RMX transmits the same resolution it receives from the endpoint.

- **Lost Packet Recovery (LPR)** - LPR creates additional packets that contain recovery information used to reconstruct packets that are lost during transmission.
- **Video Clarity** - Video Clarity feature applies video enhancing algorithms to incoming video streams of resolutions up to and including SD.
- **Supported resolutions:**
 - **H.261 CIF/QCIF** - Is supported in Continuous Presence (CP) conferences at resolutions of 288 x 352 pixels (CIF) and 144 x 176 pixels (QCIF). Both resolutions are supported at frame rates of up to 30 frames per second.
 - **H.263 4CIF** - A high video resolution available to H.263 endpoints that are not H.264 enabled. It is only supported for conferences in which the video quality is set to sharpness and for lines rates of 384kbps to 1920kbps.
 - **Standard Definition (SD)** - A high quality video protocol which uses the H.264 video algorithm. It enables HD compliant endpoints to connect to Continuous Presence conferences at resolutions of 720X576 pixels for PAL systems and 720X480 pixels for NTSC systems. Bit rates for SD range from 256Kbps to

2Mbps. For more information, see "*Video Resolutions in CP*" on page 8-3.

- **High Definition (HD)** – HD is an ultra-high quality video resolution. Depending on the RMX's Card Configuration mode, compliant endpoints are able to connect to conferences at resolutions ranging from 720p (1280 x 720 pixels) to 1080p (1920 x 1080 pixels) (in MPM+ Mode) at bit rates ranging from 1024 Kbps to 4 Mbps (6 Mbps with HD VSW). For more information, see "*Video Resolutions in CP*" on page 8-3.

Supplemental Conferencing Features

In addition to *Standard Conferencing* the following features can be enabled:

- **H.239** – Allows compliant endpoints to transmit and receive two simultaneous streams of conference data to enable Content sharing. H.239 is also supported in cascading conferences. Both H.263 and H.264 Content sharing protocols are supported. If all endpoints connected to the conference have H.264 capability, Content is shared using H.264, otherwise Content is shared using H.263.

For more information, see "*H.239*" on page 8-12.

- **Lecture Mode** – The lecturer is seen by all participants in full screen while the lecturer views all conference participants in the selected video layout.

For more information, see "*Lecture Mode*" on page 8-17.

- **Presentation Mode** – When the current speaker's speech exceeds a predefined time (30 seconds), the conference layout automatically changes to full screen, displaying the current speaker as the conference lecturer on all the participants' endpoints. During this time the speaker's endpoint displays the previous conference layout. When another participant starts talking, the Presentation Mode is cancelled and the conference returns to its predefined video layout. Presentation mode is available with *Auto Layout* and *Same Layout*.

- If the speaker in a video conference is an Audio Only participant, the Presentation Mode is disabled for that participant.
- Video forcing works in the same way as in Lecture Mode when Presentation Mode is activated, that is, forcing is only enabled at the conference level, and it only applies to the video layout viewed by the lecturer.

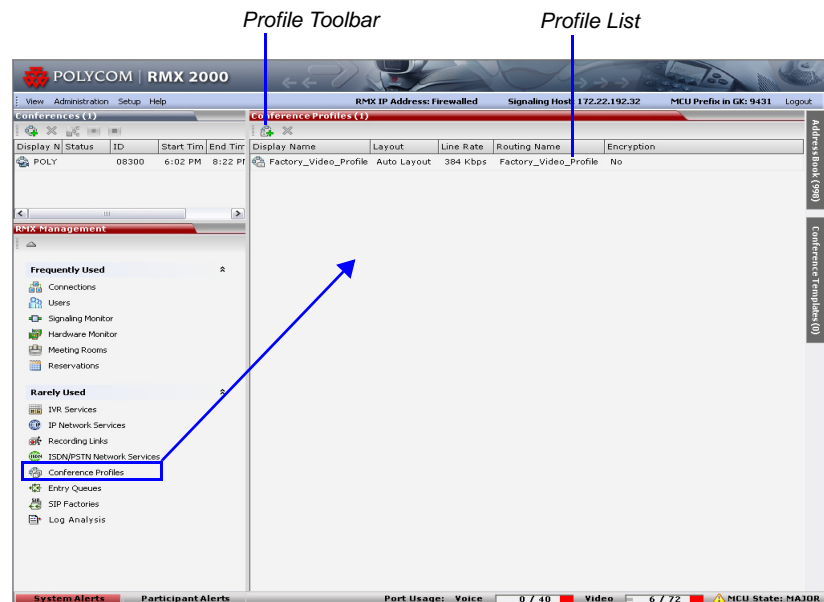
- **Telepresence Mode** - enables the connection of numerous high definition telepresence rooms and of different models (such as TPX and RPX) into one conference maintaining the telepresence experience. This mode is enabled by a special license.
- **Encryption** - Used to enhance media security at conference and participant levels. For more information, see "*Media Encryption*" on page [8-21](#).
- **Conference Recording** - The RMX enables audio and video recording of conferences using Polycom RSS 2000 recording system.

Viewing Profiles

Conference Profiles are listed in the *Conference Profiles* list pane.

To list Conference Profiles:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, expand the *Rarely Used* list.
 - 2 Click the **Conference Profiles** button.
- The *Conference Profiles* are displayed in the *List* pane.



The following *Conference Profile* properties are displayed in the *List* pane:

Table 1-2 Conference Profiles Pane Columns

Field	Description
<i>Name</i>	The name of the <i>Conference Profile</i> .
<i>Layout</i>	Displays either “ <i>Auto Layout</i> ” or an icon of the layout selected for the profile. For information about video layouts, see Table 1-7 “ <i>Video Layout Options</i> ” on page 1-15.



Table 1-2 Conference Profiles Pane Columns (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Line Rate</i>	The maximum bit rate at which endpoints can connect to the conference.
<i>Encryption</i>	Displays if media encryption is enabled for the Profile (Yes). For more information about encryption, see "Media Encryption" on page 8-21.

Profile Toolbar

The Profile toolbar provides quick access to the Profile functions:

Table 1-3 Profile Toolbar buttons

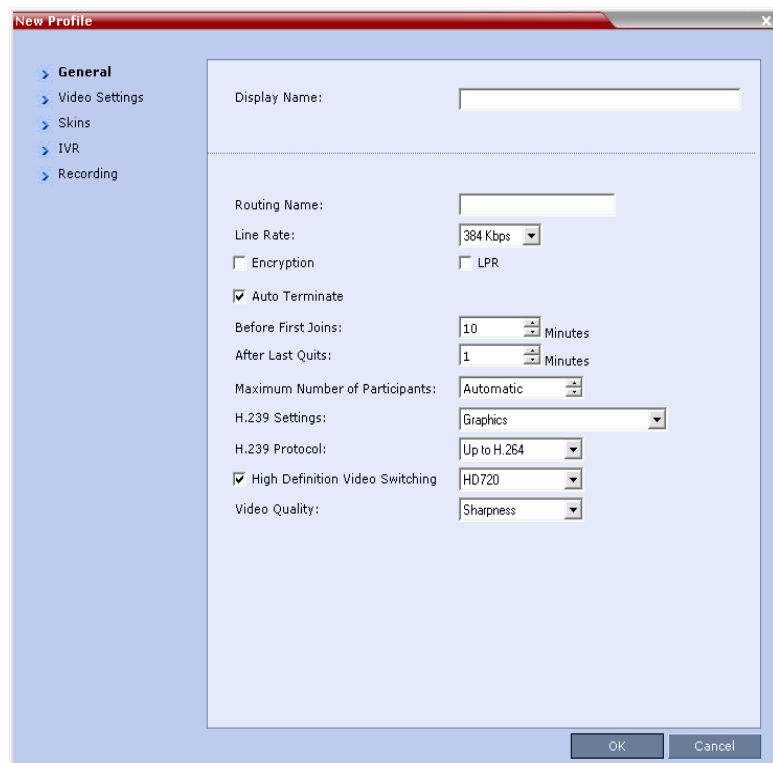
Button	Button Name	Descriptions
	<i>New Profile</i>	To create a new Profile.
	<i>Delete Profile</i>	To delete a profile, click the Profile name and then click this button.

Defining Profiles

Profiles are the basis for the definition of all ongoing conferences, Reservations, Meeting Rooms, Entry Queues, and Conference Templates and they contain only conference properties.

To define a new Profile:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click **Conference Profiles**.
- 2 In the *Conference Profiles* pane, click the **New Profile** button. The *New Profile – General* dialog box opens.

The image shows a screenshot of the 'New Profile' dialog box, specifically the 'General' tab. The dialog box has a title bar with 'New Profile' and a close button. On the left side, there is a tree view with the following items: 'General' (selected), 'Video Settings', 'Skins', 'IVR', and 'Recording'. The main area of the dialog box contains the following settings:

- Display Name: A text input field.
- Routing Name: A text input field.
- Line Rate: A dropdown menu set to '384 Kbps'.
- Encryption: An unchecked checkbox.
- LPR: An unchecked checkbox.
- Auto Terminate: A checked checkbox.
- Before First Joins: A spinner box set to '10' with 'Minutes' to its right.
- After Last Quits: A spinner box set to '1' with 'Minutes' to its right.
- Maximum Number of Participants: A spinner box set to 'Automatic'.
- H.239 Settings: A dropdown menu set to 'Graphics'.
- H.239 Protocol: A dropdown menu set to 'Up to H.264'.
- High Definition Video Switching: A checked checkbox.
- Video Quality: A dropdown menu set to 'Sharpness'.

At the bottom right of the dialog box, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The RMX displays the default settings, so you need only define the Profile name.

3 Define the Profile name and, if required, the Profile general parameters:

Table 1-4 New Profile - General Parameters

Field/Option	Description
<i>Display Name</i>	<p>Enter a unique Profile name, as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> English text uses ASCII encoding and can contain the most characters (length varies according to the field). European and Latin text length is approximately half the length of the maximum. Asian text length is approximately one third of the length of the maximum. <p>Note: This is the only parameter that must be defined when creating a new profile.</p>
<i>Routing Name</i>	<p>Enter the Profile name using ASCII characters set. The Routing Name can be defined by the user or automatically generated by the system if no Routing Name is entered as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If an all ASCII text is entered in Display Name, it is used also as the Routing Name If any combination of Unicode and ASCII text (or full Unicode text) is entered in Display Name, the ID (such as Conference ID) is used as the Routing Name.
<i>Line Rate</i>	<p>Select the conference bit rate. The line rate represents the combined video, audio and Content rate. The default setting is 384 Kbps.</p>
<i>Encryption</i>	<p>Select this check box to activate encryption for the conference. For more information, see "<i>Media Encryption</i>" on page 8-21.</p>
<i>LPR</i>	<p>When selected (default for CP conferences), Lost Packet Recovery creates additional packets that contain recovery information used to reconstruct packets that are lost during transmission. LPR is automatically disabled if High Definition Video Switching is selected. For more information, see "<i>LPR – Lost Packet Recovery</i>" on page 8-27.</p>

Table 1-4 New Profile - General Parameters (Continued)

Field/Option	Description
<i>Auto Terminate</i>	<p>When selected (default), the conference automatically ends when the termination conditions are met:</p> <p>Before First Joins — No participant has connected to a conference during the <i>n</i> minutes after it started. Default idle time is 10 minutes.</p> <p>After Last Quits — All the participants have disconnected from the conference and the conference is idle (empty) for the predefined time period. Default idle time is 1 minute.</p>
<i>Max Participants</i>	<p>Indicate the total number of participants that can be connected to the conference. The automatic setting indicates that the maximum number of participants that can be connected to the MCU is determined according to resource availability.</p> <p>Note: If a number is specified, it should be large enough to accommodate the participants specified in the <i>Reserve Resources for Video/Audio Participants</i> fields of the <i>New Conference</i> dialogue box.</p>
<i>H.239 Settings</i>	<p>Select the transmission mode for the Content channel:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Graphics — basic mode, intended for normal graphics • Hi-res Graphics — a higher bit rate intended for high resolution graphic display • Live Video — Content channel displays live video <p>Selection of a higher bit rate for the Content results in a lower bit rate for the people channel.</p> <p>For more information, see "H.239" on page 8-12.</p>

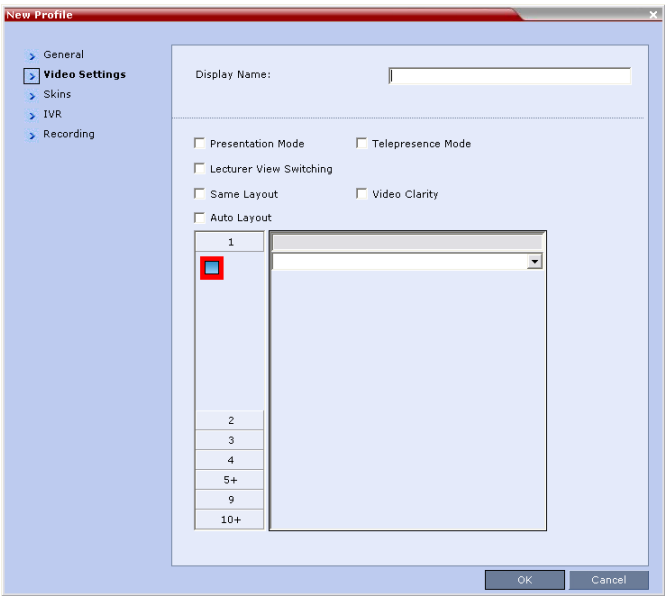
Table 1-4 New Profile - General Parameters (Continued)

Field/Option	Description
<i>H.239 Protocol</i>	<p>H.263 – Content is shared using <i>H.263</i> even if some endpoints have <i>H.264</i> capability.</p> <p>Up to H.264 – <i>H.264</i> is the default Content sharing algorithm.</p> <p>When selected:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Content is shared using <i>H.264</i> if all endpoints have <i>H.264</i> capability. • Content is shared using <i>H.263</i> if all endpoints do not have <i>H.264</i> capability. • Endpoints that do not have at least <i>H.263</i> capability can connect to the conference but cannot share Content.
<i>High Definition Video Switching</i>	<p>When selected, the conference is ultra-high quality video resolution, in a special conferencing mode which implies that all participants must connect at the same line rate and use HD video.</p> <p>This feature utilizes the resources more wisely and efficiently by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Saving utilization of video ports (1 port per participant as opposed to 4 ports in CP mode). • Video display is in full screen mode only. <p>Drawbacks of this feature are that all participants must connect at the same line rate, (e.g. HD) and all participants with endpoints not supporting HD will connect as secondary (audio only).</p> <p>Video layout changes are not enabled during a conference.</p> <p>High Definition Video Switching supports the following resolutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HD 720p • HD 1080p (in MPM+ mode) <p>If HD 1080p is selected, endpoints that do not support HD 1080p resolution are connected as Secondary (Audio Only) participants.</p>

Table 1-4 New Profile - General Parameters (Continued)

Field/Option	Description
High Definition Video Switching (cont.)	Note: High Definition Video Switching conferencing mode is unavailable to ISDN participants. For more information, see "Video Resolutions in CP" on page 8-3.
Video Quality	Depending on the amount of movement contained in the conference video, select either: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Motion – for a higher frame rate without increased resolution• Sharpness – for higher video resolution and requires more system resources Note: When Sharpness is selected as the Video Quality setting in the conference Profile, the RMX will send 4CIF (H.263) at 15fps instead of CIF (H.264) at 30fps. For more information, see "Video Resolutions in CP" on page 8-3.

- 4** Click the **Video Settings** tab.
The *New Profile - Video Settings* dialog box opens.



- 5 Define the video display mode and layout using the following parameters:






Table 1-5 Profile Properties - Video Settings

Field/Option	Description
<i>Presentation Mode</i>	Select this option to activate the Presentation Mode. In this mode, when the current speaker speaks for a predefined time (30 seconds), the conference changes to Lecture Mode. When another participant starts talking, the Presentation Mode is cancelled and the conference returns to the previous video layout.
<i>Lecture View Switching</i>	Select this option to enable automatic switching of participants on the Lecturer's screen when Lecture Mode is enabled for the conference. The automatic switching is enabled when the number of participants exceeds the number of video windows displayed on the Lecturer's screen. Note: Lecture Mode is enabled in the <i>Conference Properties – Participants</i> tab. For more information, see "Lecture Mode" on page 8-17.
<i>Same Layout</i>	Select this option to force the selected layout on all participants in a conference. Displays the same video stream to all participants and personal selection of the video layout is disabled. In addition, if participants are forced to a video layout window, they can see themselves.
<i>Auto Layout</i>	Select this option to let the system automatically select the conference layout based on the number of participants currently connected to the conference. When a new video participant connects or disconnects, the conference layout automatically changes to reflect the new number of video participants. For more information, see Table 1-6 "Auto Layout – Default Layouts" on page 1-14. The default Auto Layout settings can be customized by modifying default Auto Layout system flags in the System Configuration file. For more information see, "Auto Layout Configuration" on page 14-22.

Table 1-5 Profile Properties - Video Settings (Continued)

Field/Option	Description
<i>Telepresence Mode</i>	Select this option to enable the Telepresence Mode in the Conference. Note: This field is enabled only if the RMX system is licensed for Telepresence Mode.
<i>Video Clarity™</i>	Select this option to enable Video Clarity. Video Clarity applies video enhancing algorithms to incoming video streams of resolutions up to and including SD. Clearer images with sharper edges and higher contrast are sent back to all endpoints at the highest possible resolution supported by each endpoint. All layouts, including 1x1, are supported. Video Clarity can only be enabled for Continuous Presence conferences in MPM+ Card Configuration Mode.

Table 1-6 Auto Layout – Default Layouts

Number of Video Participants	Auto Layout Default Settings
0–2	
3	
4–5	
6–7	
8+	



























The RMX supports the VUI addition to the H.264 protocol for endpoints that transmit wide video (16:9) in standard 4SIF resolution.

- 6 To select the *Video Layout* for the conference, click the required number of windows from the layouts bar and then select the windows array.

The selected layout appears in the *Video Layout* pane.

Table 1-7 Video Layout Options

Number of Video Windows	Available Video Layouts
1	
2	   
3	  
4	   
5+	    
9	   
10+	  



When there is a change of speaker in a Continuous Presence conference, the transition is set by default to fade in the current speaker while fading out the previous speaker.

To make this transition visually pleasant, fading in the current speaker while fading out the previous speaker is done over a period of 500 milliseconds.

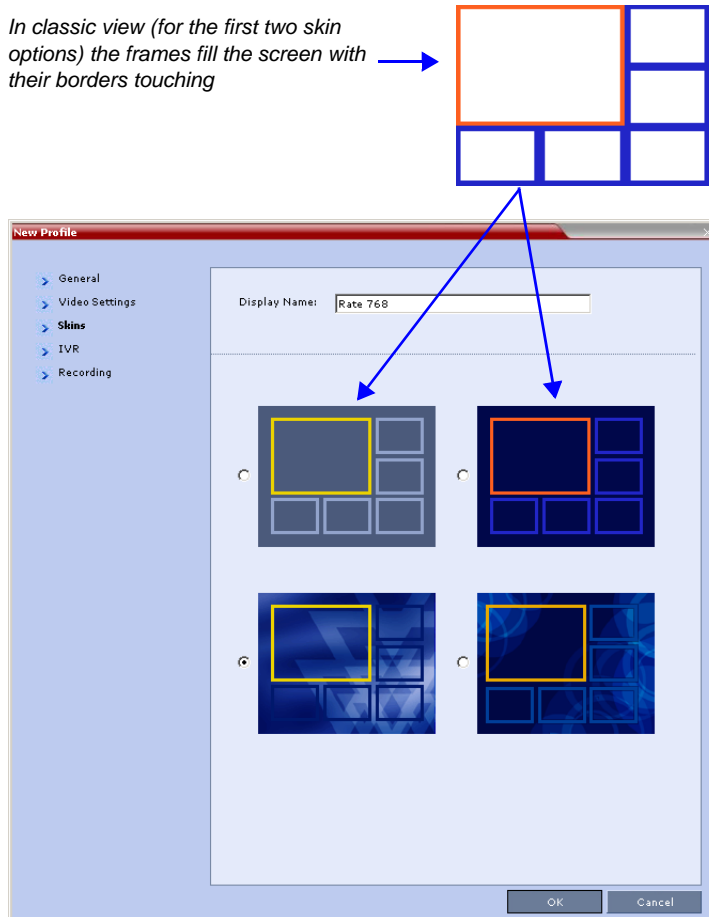
The *Fade In / Fade Out* feature can be disabled by adding a new flag to the *System Configuration*. The *Value* of the new flag must be:

FADE_IN_FADE_OUT=NO.

For more information about *System Flags*, see the *RMX 2000 Administrator's Guide*, Chapter 14, "System Configuration" on page [14-10](#).

- 7 Click the **Skins** tab to modify the background and frames. The *New Profile - Skins* dialog box opens.

In classic view (for the first two skin options) the frames fill the screen with their borders touching



- 8 Select one of the *Skin* options.



When *Telepresence Mode* is enabled, the *Skin* options are disabled as the system uses a black background and the frames and speaker indication are disabled.

- 9 Click **IVR** tab.

The *New Profile - IVR* dialog box opens.

The screenshot shows a 'New Profile' dialog box with a sidebar on the left containing a tree view with the following items: General, Video Settings, Skins, IVR (highlighted), and Recording. The main area of the dialog is titled 'New Profile' and contains the following fields and options:

- Display Name:** A text input field containing the value 'Rate 768'.
- Conference IVR Service:** A dropdown menu with 'Conference IVR Service' selected.
- Conference Requires Chairperson:** An unchecked checkbox.

At the bottom right of the dialog are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- 10** If required, set the following parameters:

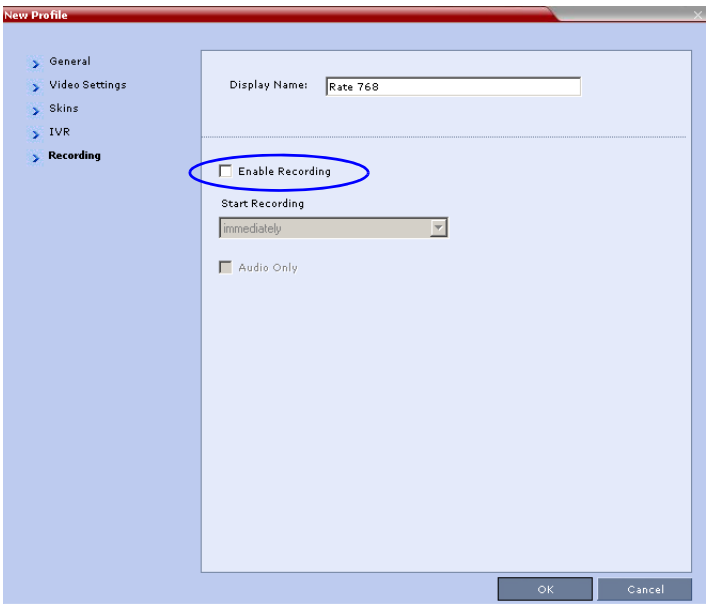
Table 1-8 Profile Properties - IVR

Field/Option	Description
Conference IVR Service	The default conference IVR Service is selected. You can select another conference IVR Service if required.

Table 1-8 Profile Properties - IVR (Continued)

Field/Option	Description
<i>Conference Requires Chairperson</i>	<p>Select this option to allow the conference to start only when the chairperson connects to the conference and to automatically terminate the conference when the chairperson exits. Participants who connect to the conference before the chairperson are placed on <i>Hold</i> and hear background music (and see the <i>Welcome</i> video slide). Once the conference is activated, the participants are automatically connected to the conference.</p> <p>When the check box is cleared, the conference starts when the first participant connects to it and ends at the predefined time or according to the <i>Auto Terminate</i> rules when enabled.</p>

- 11 Optional.** Click the **Recording** tab to enable conference recording with *Polycom RSS 2000*.
- 12** Select the **Enable recording** check box.



13 Define the following parameters:

Table 1-9 Conference Profile Recording Parameters

Parameter	Description
<i>Start recording</i>	Select one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Immediately – conference recording is automatically started upon connection of the first participant.• Upon Request – the operator or chairperson must initiate the recording (manual).
<i>Audio only</i>	Select this option to record only the audio channel of the conference.

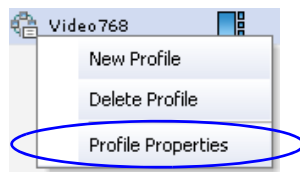
14 Click **OK** to complete the *Profile* definition.
A new *Profile* is created and added to the *Conference Profiles* list.

Modifying an Existing Profile

You can modify any of the Profile's parameters but you cannot rename the *Profile*.

To modify the Profile Properties:


- 1** In the *Conference Profiles* list, double-click the *Profile* icon or right-click the *Profile* icon, and then click **Profile Properties**.



The *Profile Properties - General* dialog box opens.

Deleting a Conference Profile

To delete a Conference Profile:

- 1** In the *Conference Profiles* list, select the *Conference Profile* you want to delete.
- 2** Click the **Delete Profile** () button.
or
Right-click the *Conference Profile* to be deleted and select **Delete Profile** from the drop-down menu.
A confirmation dialog box is displayed.
- 3** Click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box.
- 4** The *Conference Profile* is deleted.



A conference Profile cannot be deleted if it is being used by any conferencing entities such as Ongoing conferences, Meeting Rooms, Entry Queues, SIP Factories and Reservations

Meeting Rooms

A Meeting Room is a conference saved on the MCU in passive mode, without using any of the system resources. A Meeting Room is automatically activated when the first participant dials into it. Meeting Rooms can be activated as many times as required. Once activated, a Meeting Room functions as any ongoing conference. All Meeting Rooms are based on a Profile.

A maximum of 1000 Meeting Rooms can be defined in the system.

The system is shipped with four default Meeting Rooms as shown in Table 2-1.


Table 2-1 *Default Meeting Rooms List*

Meeting Room Name	ID	Default Line Rate
<i>Maple_Room</i>	1001	384 Kbps
<i>Oak_Room</i>	1002	384 Kbps
<i>Juniper_Room</i>	1003	384 Kbps
<i>Fig_Room</i>	1004	384 Kbps

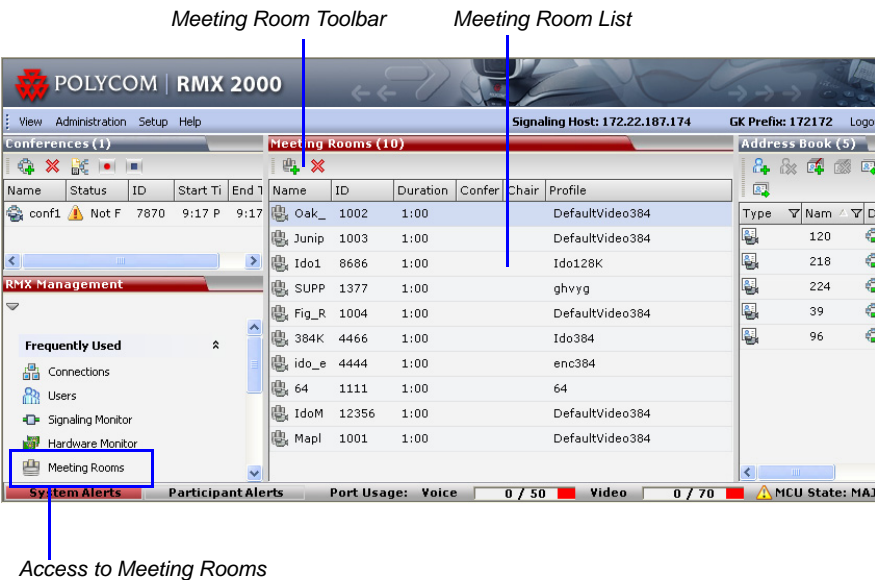
Meeting Rooms List

Meeting Rooms are listed in the *Meeting Room* list pane.

To list Meeting Rooms:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, in the *Frequently Used* list, click the **Meeting Rooms** button .



The *Meeting Rooms List* is displayed.



An active Meeting Room becomes an ongoing conference and is monitored in the same way as any other conference.

The *Meeting Room List* columns include:



Table 2-2 *Meeting Rooms List Columns*

Field	Description
<i>Display Name</i>	Displays the name and the icon of the Meeting Room in the <i>RMX Web Client</i> .
	 (green) An active video Meeting Room that was activated when the first participant connected to it.
	 (gray) A passive video Meeting Room that is waiting to be activated.
<i>Routing Name</i>	<p>The ASCII name that registers conferences, Meeting Rooms, Entry Queues and SIP Factories in the various gatekeepers and SIP Servers. In addition, the Routing Name is also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The name that endpoints use to connect to conferences. • The name used by all conferencing devices to connect to conferences that must be registered with the gatekeeper and SIP Servers.
<i>ID</i>	Displays the Meeting Room ID. This number must be communicated to H.323 conference participants to enable them to dial in.
<i>Duration</i>	Displays the duration of the Meeting Room in hours using the format HH:MM (default 01:00).
<i>Conference Password</i>	The password to be used by participants to access the Meeting Room. If blank, no password is assigned to the conference. This password is valid only in conferences that are configured to prompt for a conference password in the IVR Service.
<i>Chairperson Password</i>	Displays the password to be used by the users to identify themselves as <i>Chairpersons</i> . They are granted additional privileges. If left blank, no chairperson password is assigned to the conference. This password is valid only in conferences that are configured to prompt for a chairperson password.
<i>Profile</i>	Displays the name of the Profile assigned to the Meeting Room. For more information, see the <i>RMX Administrator's Guide</i> , "Conference Profiles" on page 1-1.


Meeting Room Toolbar & Right-click Menu

The Meeting Room toolbar and right-click menus provide the following functionality:

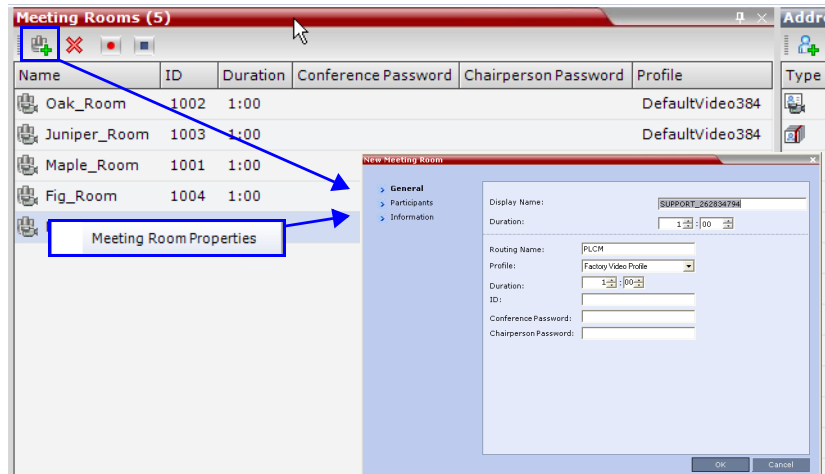
Table 2-3 *Meeting Room Toolbar and Right-click Menus*

Toolbar button	Right-click menu	Description
	<i>New Meeting Room</i>	Select this button to create a new Meeting Room.
	<i>Delete Meeting Room</i>	Select any Meeting Room and then click this button to delete the Meeting Room.

Creating a New Meeting Room

- In the *Meeting Rooms* pane, click the **New Meeting Room**  button or right-click an empty area in the pane and then click **New Meeting Room**.

The *New Meeting Room* dialog box appears.



The definition procedure is the same as for the new conference (with the exception of *Reserved Resources* for *Audio* and *Video* participants).

For more information, see the *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide*, "Starting a Conference" on page [3-14](#).

Entry Queues, Ad Hoc Conferences and SIP Factories

Entry Queues

An Entry Queue (EQ) is a special routing lobby to access conferences. Participants connect to a single-dial lobby and are routed to their destination conference according to the Conference ID they enter. The Entry Queue remains in a passive state when there are no callers in the queue (in between connections) and is automatically activated once a caller dials its dial-in number. The connection of ISDN/PSTN participants to conferences is enabled only via Entry Queues to which an ISDN/PSTN dial-in number is assigned.

A maximum of 40 Entry Queues can be defined in the system.

The parameters (bit rate and video properties) with which the participants connect to the Entry Queue and later to their destination conference are defined in the Conference Profile that is assigned to the Entry Queue. For example, if the Profile Bit Rate is set to 384 Kbps, all endpoints connect to the Entry Queue and later to their destination conference using this bit rate even if they are capable of connecting at higher bit rates.

An *Entry Queue IVR Service* must be assigned to the Entry Queue to enable the voice prompts guiding the participants through the connection process. The Entry Queue IVR Service also includes a video slide that is displayed to the participants while staying in the Entry Queue (during their connection process).

Different Entry Queues can be created to accommodate different conferencing parameters (by assigning different Profiles) and prompts in different languages (by assigning different *Entry Queue IVR Services*). For more information, see "IVR Services" on page 12-1.

The Entry Queue can also be used for Ad Hoc conferencing. If the Ad Hoc option is enabled for the Entry Queue, when the participant enters the target conference ID the system checks whether a conference with that ID is already running on the MCU. If not, the system automatically creates a new ongoing conference with that ID. For more information about Ad Hoc conferencing, see "Ad Hoc Conferencing" on page 3-10.

An Entry Queue can be designated as Transit Entry Queue to which calls with dial strings containing incomplete or incorrect conference routing information are transferred. For more information, see "Transit Entry Queue" on page 3-8.

To enable ISDN/PSTN participants to dial in to a conference, an ISDN/PSTN dial-in number must be assigned to the Entry Queue. Up to two dial-in numbers can be assigned to each Entry Queue. The dial-in numbers must be allocated from the dial-in number range defined in the ISDN/PSTN Network Service. You can allocate the two dial-in numbers from the same ISDN/PSTN Network Service or from two different ISDN/PSTN Network Services. The dial-in number must be communicated to the ISDN or PSTN dial-in participants.

The Entry Queue can also be used as part of the Gateway to Polycom® Distributed Media Application™ (DMA™) 7000 solution for connecting Audio only PSTN, ISDN, SIP and H.323 endpoints to DMA™ 7000.

For more information see Appendix E, "Gateway to Polycom® DMA™ 7000".

Default Entry Queue properties

The system is shipped with a default Entry Queue whose properties are:

Table 3-1 Default Entry Queue Properties

Parameter	Value
Display Name	DefaultEQ The user can change the name if required.
Routing Name	DefaultEQ The default <i>Routing Name</i> cannot be changed.

Table 3-1 Default Entry Queue Properties

Parameter	Value
ID	1000
Profile name	Factory-Video-Profile. Profile Bit Rate is set to 384 Kbps.
Entry Queue Service	Entry Queue IVR Service. This is default Entry Queue IVR Service shipped with the system and includes default voice messages and prompts in English.
Ad Hoc	Enabled
Cascade	None (Disabled)
Enable ISDN/PSTN Access	Disabled. You can modify the properties of this Entry Queue to enable ISDN/PSTN participants to dial-in to a conference. Up to two dial-in numbers can be assigned.


Defining a New Entry Queue

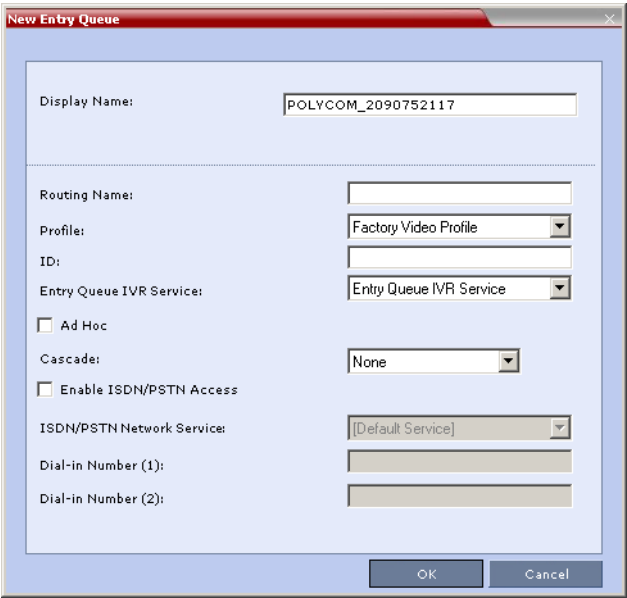
You can modify the properties of the default Entry Queue and define additional Entry Queues to suit different conferencing requirements.

To define a new Entry Queue:

- 1 In the *RMX Management - Rarely Used* pane, click **Entry Queues**.



- 2 In the *Entry Queues* list pane, click the **New Entry Queue**  button. The *New Entry Queue* dialog box opens.

The image shows a 'New Entry Queue' dialog box with a light blue background and a red title bar. It contains several input fields and dropdown menus. The 'Display Name' field is pre-filled with 'POLYCOM_2090752117'. Other fields include 'Routing Name', 'Profile' (set to 'Factory Video Profile'), 'ID', 'Entry Queue IVR Service' (set to 'Entry Queue IVR Service'), 'Ad Hoc' (unchecked), 'Cascade' (set to 'None'), 'Enable ISDN/PSTN Access' (unchecked), 'ISDN/PSTN Network Service' (set to '[Default Service]'), 'Dial-in Number (1)', and 'Dial-in Number (2)'. At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- 3 Define the following parameters:

Table 3-2: *Entry Queue Definitions Parameters*

Option	Description
<i>Display Name</i>	<p>The Display Name is the conferencing entity name in native language character sets to be displayed in the RMX Web Client.</p> <p>In conferences, Meeting Rooms, Entry Queues and SIP factories the system automatically generates an ASCII name for the <i>Display Name</i> field that can be modified using Unicode encoding.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">English text uses ASCII encoding and can contain the most characters (length varies according to the field).

Table 3-2: Entry Queue Definitions Parameters (Continued)

Option	Description
<i>Display Name</i> (cont.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> European and Latin text length is approximately half the length of the maximum. Asian text length is approximately one third of the length of the maximum. <p>The maximum length of text fields also varies according to the mixture of character sets (Unicode and ASCII).</p> <p>Maximum field length in ASCII is 80 characters. If the same name is already used by another conference, Meeting Room or Entry Queue, the RMX displays an error message requesting you to enter a different name.</p>
<i>Routing Name</i>	<p>Enter a name using ASCII text only. If no <i>Routing Name</i> is entered, the system automatically assigns a new name as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If an all ASCII text is entered in <i>Display Name</i>, it is used also as the <i>Routing Name</i>. If any combination of Unicode and ASCII text (or full Unicode text) is entered in <i>Display Name</i>, the <i>ID</i> (such as Conference ID) is used as the <i>Routing Name</i>.
<i>Profile</i>	<p>Select the Profile to be used by the Entry Queue. The default Profile is selected by default. This Profile determines the Bit Rate and the video properties with which participants connect to the Entry Queue and destination conference.</p> <p>In Ad Hoc conferencing it is used to define the new conference properties.</p>
<i>ID</i>	<p>Enter a unique number identifying the Entry Queue for dial in. Default string length is 4 digits.</p> <p>If you do not manually assign the Entry Queue ID, the MCU assigns one after the completion of the definition. The ID String Length is defined by the flag NUMERIC_CONF_ID_LEN in the System Configuration.</p>

Table 3-2: Entry Queue Definitions Parameters (Continued)

Option	Description
<i>Entry Queue IVR Service</i>	The default Entry Queue IVR Service is selected. If required, select an alternate Entry Queue IVR Service, which includes the required voice prompts, to guide participants during their connection to the Entry Queue.
<i>Ad Hoc</i>	Select this check box to enable the Ad Hoc option for this Entry Queue.
<i>Cascade</i>	<p>Set this field to None for all Entry Queues other than cascading.</p> <p>If this Entry Queue is used to connect dial-in cascaded links, select Master or Slave depending on the Master/Slave relationship in the Cascading topology.</p> <p>Set this field to <i>Master</i> if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Entry Queue is defined on the MCU on level 1 and the dialing is done from level 2 to level 1. • The Entry Queue is defined on the MCU on level 2 and the dialing is done from level 3 to level 2. <p>Set this field to <i>Slave</i> if the Entry Queue is defined on the MCU on level 2 (Slave) and the dialing is done from MCU level 1 to level 2.</p> <p>For more information about cascaded conferencing, see "<i>Select the Telepresence Mode for the participant:</i>" on page 8-38.</p>
<i>Enable ISDN/PSTN Access</i>	<p>Select this check box to allocate dial-in numbers for ISDN/PSTN connections.</p> <p>To define the first dial-in number using the default ISDN/PSTN Network Service, leave the default selection. When the Entry Queue is saved on the MCU, the dial-in number will be automatically assigned to the Entry Queue. This number is taken from the dial-in numbers range in the default ISDN/PSTN Network Service.</p>
<i>ISDN/PSTN Network Service</i>	<p>The default Network Service is automatically selected.</p> <p>To select a different ISDN/PSTN Network Service in the service list, select the name of the Network Service.</p>

Table 3-2: Entry Queue Definitions Parameters (Continued)

Option	Description
<i>Dial-in Number (1)</i>	Leave this field blank to let the system automatically assign a number from the selected ISDN/PSTN Network Service. To manually define a dial-in number, enter a required number from the dial-in number range defined for the selected Network Service.
<i>Dial-in Number (2)</i>	By default, the second dial-in number is not defined. To define a second-dial-in number, enter a required number from the dial-in number range defined for the selected Network Service.

4 Click **OK**.

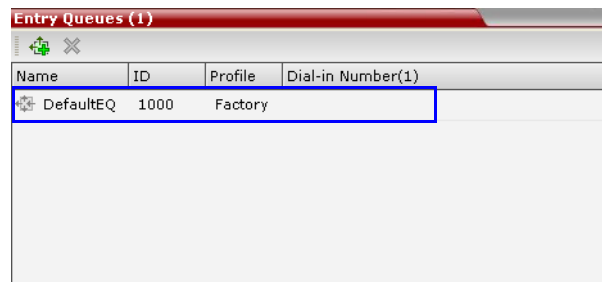
The new *Entry Queue* is added to the *Entry Queues* list.

Listing Entry Queues

To view the list of **Entry Queues**:

- In the *RMX Management - Rarely Used* pane, click **Entry Queues**.

The *Entry Queues* are listed in the *Entry Queues* pane.



Name	ID	Profile	Dial-in Number(1)
DefaultEQ	1000	Factory	

You can double-click an *Entry Queue* to view its properties.

Modifying the EQ Properties

To modify the EQ:

- In the *Entry Queues* pane, either double-click or right-click and select **Entry Queue Properties** of the selected *Entry Queue* in the list.
The Entry Queue Properties dialog box is displayed. All the fields may be modified except **Routing Name**.

Transit Entry Queue

A *Transit Entry Queue* is an Entry Queue to which calls with dial strings containing incomplete or incorrect conference routing information are transferred.

IP Calls are routed to the *Transit Entry Queue* when:

- A gatekeeper is not used, or where calls are made directly to the RMX's *Signaling IP Address*, with incorrect or without a Conference ID.
- When a gatekeeper is used and only the prefix of the RMX is dialed, with incorrect or without a Conference ID.
- When the dialed prefix is followed by an incorrect conference ID.

When no *Transit Entry Queue* is defined, all calls containing incomplete or incorrect conference routing information are rejected by the RMX.

In the *Transit Entry Queue*, the *Entry Queue IVR Service* prompts the participant for a destination conference ID. Once the correct information is entered, the participant is transferred to the destination conference.

Setting a Transit Entry Queue

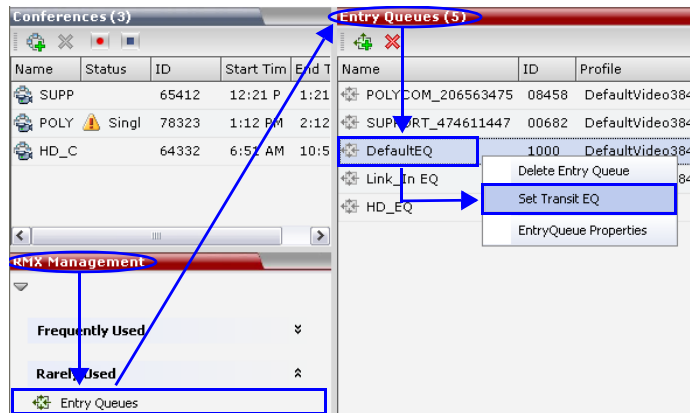
The RMX factory default settings define the *Default Entry Queue* also as the *Transit Entry Queue*. You can designate another Entry Queue as the *Transit Entry Queue*.

Only one *Transit Entry Queue* may be defined per RMX and selecting another Entry Queue as the *Transit Entry Queue* automatically cancels the previous selection.

To designate an Entry Queue as Transit Entry Queue:

- 1 In the *RMX Management - Rarely Used* pane, click **Entry Queues**.

- 2 In the *Entry Queues* list, right-click the Entry Queue entry and then click **Set Transit EQ**.



The Entry Queue selected as *Transit Entry Queue* is displayed in bold.

To cancel the Transit Entry Queue setting:

- 1 In the *RMX Management - Rarely Used* pane click **Entry Queues**.
- 2 In the *Entry Queues* list, right-click the *Transit Entry Queue* entry and then click **Cancel Transit EQ**.

Ad Hoc Conferencing

The Entry Queue can also be used for Ad Hoc conferencing. If the Ad Hoc option is enabled for the Entry Queue, when the participant enters the target conference ID the system checks whether a conference with that ID is already running on the MCU. If not, the system automatically creates a new ongoing conference with that ID. The conference parameters are based on the Profile linked to the Entry Queue. As opposed to Meeting Rooms, that are predefined conferences saved on the MCU, Ad Hoc conferences are not stored on the MCU. Once an Ad Hoc conference is started it becomes an ongoing conference, and it is monitored and controlled as any standard ongoing conference.

An external database application can be used for authentication with Ad Hoc conferences. The authentication can be done at the Entry Queue level and at the conference level. At the Entry Queue level, the MCU queries the external database server whether the participant has the right to create a new conference. At the conference level the MCU verifies whether the participant can join the conference and if the participant is the conference chairperson. The external database can populate certain conference parameters.

For more information about Ad Hoc conferencing, see *Appendix D: "Ad Hoc Conferencing and External Database Authentication"* on page **D-1**.

Gateway to Polycom® Distributed Media Application™ (DMA™) 7000

Gateway to Polycom® Distributed Media Application™ (DMA™) 7000 enables audio only PSTN, ISDN (video endpoints using only their audio channels), SIP and H.323 calls can connect to the Polycom DMA 7000 via gateway sessions running on the RMX. Each RMX conference acting as a gateway session includes one connection to the endpoint and another connection to the DMA. The DMA 7000 enables load balancing and the distribution of multipoint calls on up to 10 Polycom RMX media servers.

As part of this solution, the RMX acts as a gateway for the DMA that supports H.323 calls. The PSTN, ISDN or SIP endpoint dials the virtual Meeting Room on the DMA via a special Entry Queue on the RMX.

For more information see Appendix E, *“Gateway to Polycom® DMA™ 7000”*.

SIP Factories


A SIP Factory is a conferencing entity that enables SIP endpoints to create Ad Hoc conferences. The system is shipped with a default SIP Factory, named DefaultFactory.

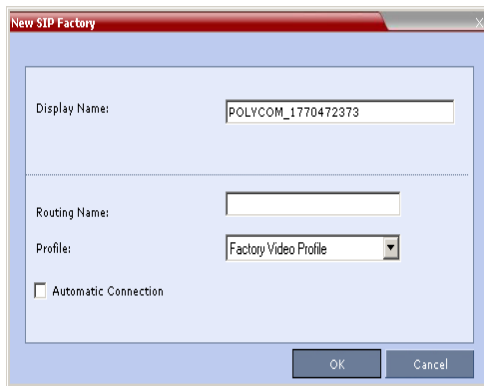
When a SIP endpoint calls the SIP Factory URI, a new conference is automatically created based on the Profile parameters, and the endpoint joins the conference.

The SIP Factory URI must be registered with the SIP server to enable routing of calls to the SIP Factory. To ensure that the SIP factory is registered, the option to register *Factories* must be selected in the Default IP Network Service.

Creating SIP Factories

To create a new SIP Factory:

- 1 In the *RMX Management - Rarely Used* pane, click **SIP Factories**.
- 2 In the *SIP Factories* list pane, click the **New SIP Factory**  button. The *New Factory* dialog box opens.



The image shows a dialog box titled "New SIP Factory". It contains the following fields and controls:

- Display Name:** A text input field containing the value "POLYCOM_1770472373".
- Routing Name:** An empty text input field.
- Profile:** A dropdown menu with "Factory Video Profile" selected.
- Automatic Connection:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.
- Buttons:** "OK" and "Cancel" buttons at the bottom right.

3 Define the following parameters:

Table 3-3: New Factory Properties

Option	Description
<i>Display Name</i>	<p>Enter the SIP Factory name that will be displayed. The Display Name is the conferencing entity name in native language character sets to be displayed in the RMX Web Client.</p> <p>In conferences, Meeting Rooms, Entry Queues and SIP factories the system automatically generates an ASCII name for the <i>Display Name</i> field that can be modified using Unicode encoding.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> English text uses ASCII encoding and can contain the most characters (length varies according to the field). European and Latin text length is approximately half the length of the maximum. Asian text length is approximately one third of the length of the maximum. <p>The maximum length of text fields also varies according to the mixture of character sets (Unicode and ASCII).</p> <p>Maximum field length in ASCII is 80 characters. If the same name is already used by another conference, Meeting Room or Entry Queue, the RMX displays an error message requesting you to enter a different name.</p>
<i>Routing Name</i>	<p>The <i>Routing Name</i> is defined by the user, however if no <i>Routing Name</i> is entered, the system automatically assigns a new name as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If an all ASCII text is entered in <i>Display Name</i>, it is used also as the <i>Routing Name</i>. If any combination of Unicode and ASCII text (or full Unicode text) is entered in <i>Display Name</i>, the <i>ID</i> (such as Conference ID) is used as the <i>Routing Name</i>.

Table 3-3: New Factory Properties (Continued)

Option	Description
<i>Profile</i>	The default Profile is selected by default. If required, select the conference Profile from the list of Profiles defined in the MCU. A new conference is created using the parameters defined in the Profile.
<i>Automatic Connection</i>	Select this check box to immediately accept the conference creator endpoint to the conference. If the check box is cleared, the endpoint is redirected to the conference and then connected.

- 4** Click **OK**.
The new SIP Factory is added to the list.

Address Book

The Address Book is your database and information storage for the people and businesses you communicate with. The Address Book stores, among many other fields, IP addresses, phone numbers and network communication protocols used by the participant's endpoint. By utilizing the Address Book users are able to quickly and efficiently assign or designate participants to conferences. Groups defined in the Address Book help facilitate the creation of conferences. Rather than adding each participant individually to a conference, groups enable multiple participants to be added to a conference.

The maximum number of Address Book entries is 1000.

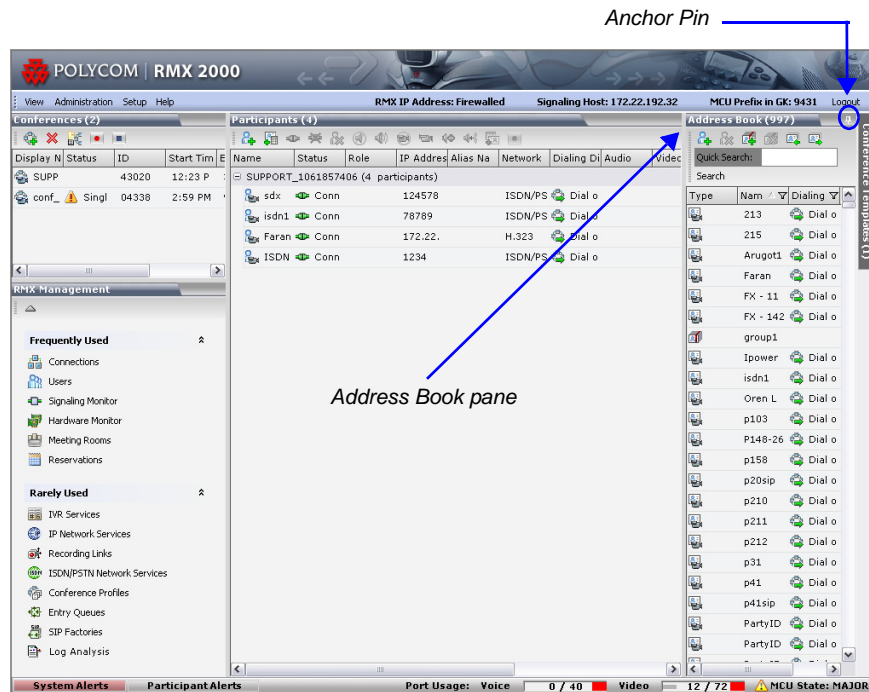
Importing and exporting of Address Books enables organizations to seamlessly distribute up-to-date Address Books to multiple RMX units. It is not possible to distribute Address Books to external databases running on applications such as *Polycom's RendiManager (SE200)*. External databases can run in conjunction with RMX units, but must be managed from the external application, e.g. new participants cannot be added to the external database from the RMX Web Client. To enable the RMX to run with an external database, the appropriate system configuration flag must be set. For more information, see "*System Configuration*" on page [14-10](#).



Incorporating the *SE200* GAB (Global Address Book) into the RMX Web Client is not supported.

Viewing the Address Book

You can view the participants currently defined in the Address Book. The first time the *RMX Web Client* is accessed, the *Address Book* pane is displayed.



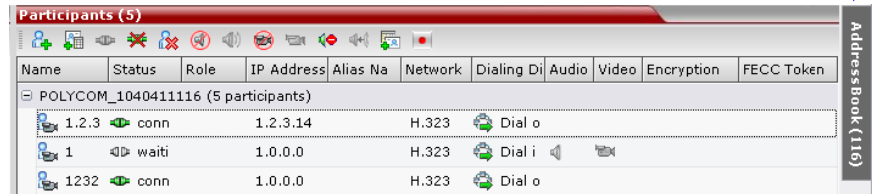
Displaying and Hiding the Address Book

The Address Book can be hidden by clicking the anchor pin (📌) button in the pane header.

The *Address Book* pane closes and a tab appears at the right edge of the screen.



Click the tab to re-open the *Address Book*.

Click tab to open Address Book



The following information is displayed for each participant. The fields displayed vary accordingly, when viewing the full display or the docked Address Book pane.

Table 4-1 Docked Address Book List Columns

Field/Option	Description
<i>Type</i>	Indicates whether the participant is a video () or audio ()
<i>Name</i>	Displays the name of the participant.
<i>IP Address/Phone</i>	Indicates the IP address and phone number of the participant's endpoint. For SIP participants, the IP address is displayed only if one was defined for the participant.
<i>Dialing Direction</i>	<i>Dial-in</i> – The participant dials in to the conference. <i>Dial-out</i> – The RMX dials out to the participant.

Adding a Participant to the Address Book

Adding participants to the Address Book can be performed by the following methods:

- Directly in the Address Book.
- Moving or saving a participant from an ongoing conference to the Address Book.


Only defined **dial-out** ISDN/PSTN participants can be added to the Address Book or on going conferences. ISDN/PSTN participants are added to the Address Book in the same manner that H.323 and SIP participants are added.

When adding dial-out participants to the ongoing conference, the system automatically dials out to the participants using the Network Service (ISDN/PSTN or IP) defined for the connection in the participant properties.

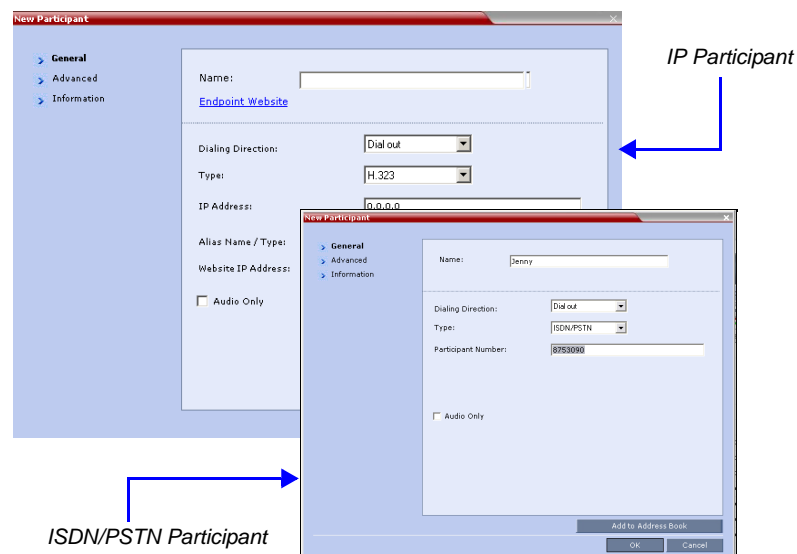
Adding a new participant to the Address Book Directly

New participants can be added directly in the Address Book as needed.

To add a new participant to the Address Book:

- 1 In the *Address Book* pane, click the **New Participant** button().

The *New Participant - General* dialog box opens.



2 Define the following fields:

Table 4-2 *New Participant – General Properties*

Field	Description
<i>Name</i>	<p>Enter the name of the participant or the endpoint as it will be displayed in the RMX Web Client.</p> <p>The <i>Name</i> field can be modified using Unicode encoding.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> English text uses ASCII encoding and can contain the most characters (length varies according to the field). European and Latin text length is approximately half the length of the maximum. Asian text length is approximately one third of the length of the maximum. <p>Maximum field length in ASCII is 80 characters. The maximum length of text fields varies according to the mixture of character sets used (Unicode and ASCII).</p> <p>This name can also become the endpoint name that is displayed in the video layout. For more details about endpoint (site) names, see the <i>RMX Getting Started Guide</i>, “Text Indication in the Video Layout” on page 3-32.</p> <p>Note: This field is displayed in all tabs.</p>
<i>Endpoint Website (IP only)</i>	<p>Click the Endpoint Website hyperlink to connect to the internal website of the participant's endpoint. It enables you to perform administrative, configuration and troubleshooting activities on the endpoint.</p> <p>The connection is available only if the IP address of the endpoint's internal site is defined in the <i>Website IP Address</i> field.</p>

Table 4-2 New Participant – General Properties (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Dialing Direction</i>	<p>Select the dialing direction:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dial-in – The participant dials in to the conference. • Dial-out – The MCU dials out to the participant. <p>Note:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This field applies to IP participants only. • Dial-out is forced when defining an ISDN/PSTN participant.
<i>Type</i>	<p>The network communication protocol used by the endpoint to connect to the conference: <i>H.323</i>, <i>SIP</i> or <i>ISDN/PSTN</i>.</p> <p>The fields in the dialog box change according to the selected network type.</p>
<i>IP Address (H.323 and SIP Only)</i>	<p>Enter the IP address of the participant's endpoint.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For H.323 participant define either the endpoint IP address or alias. • For SIP participant define either the endpoint IP address or the SIP address. <p>Note: This field is hidden when the ISDN/PSTN protocol is selected.</p>
<i>Phone Number (ISDN/PSTN Only)</i>	<p>Enter the phone number of the ISDN/PSTN participant.</p> <p>Note: This field is only displayed when the ISDN/PSTN protocol is selected.</p>

Table 4-2 *New Participant – General Properties (Continued)*

Field	Description
<i>Alias Name/Type</i> (H.323 Only)	<p>If you are using the endpoint's alias and not the IP address, first select the type of alias and then enter the endpoint's alias:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• H.323 ID (alphanumeric ID)• E.164 (digits 0-9, * and #)• Email ID (email address format, e.g. abc@example.com)• Participant Number (digits 0-9, * and #) <p>Note:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Although all types are supported, the type of alias is dependent on the gatekeeper's capabilities. The most commonly supported alias types are H.323 ID and E.164.• This field is used to enter the Entry Queue ID, target Conference ID and Conference Password when defining a cascaded link.• This field is removed from the dialog box when the ISDN/PSTN protocol is selected.

Table 4-2 New Participant – General Properties (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>SIP Address/Type</i> (SIP Only)	<p>Select the format in which the SIP address is written:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SIP URI - Uses the format of an E-mail address, typically containing a user name and a host name: <i>sip:[user]@[host]</i>. For example, <i>sip:dan@polycom.com</i>. • TEL URI - Used when the endpoint does not specify the domain that should interpret a telephone number that has been input by the user. Rather, each domain through which the request passes would be given that opportunity. As an example, a user in an airport might log in and send requests through an outbound proxy in the airport. If the users enters "411" (this is the phone number for local directory assistance in the United States), this number needs to be interpreted and processed by the outbound proxy in the airport, and not by the user's home domain. In this case, tel: 411 is the correct choice. <p>Note: This field is removed from the dialog box when the ISDN/PSTN protocol is selected.</p>
<i>Endpoint Website IP Address</i> (IP only)	<p>Enter the IP address of the endpoint's internal site to enable connection to it for management and configuration purposes.</p> <p>This field is automatically completed the first time that the endpoint connects to the RMX. If the field is blank it can be manually completed by the system administrator. The field can be modified while the endpoint is connected</p>
<i>Audio Only</i>	<p>Select this check box to define the participant as a voice participant, with no video capabilities.</p>

- 3** Usually, additional definitions are not required and you can use the system defaults for the remaining parameters. In such a case, click **OK**.

To modify the default settings for advanced parameters, click the **Advanced** tab.

4 Define the following *Advanced* parameters:

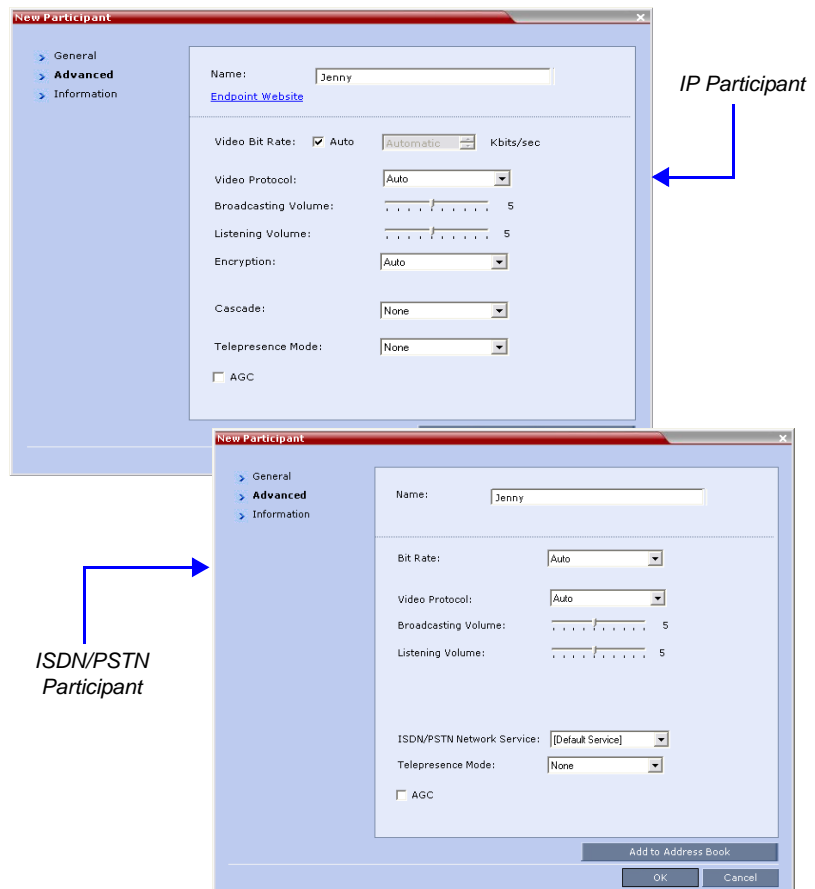


Table 4-3 New Participant – Advanced Properties

Field	Description
<i>Video Bit Rate / Auto</i> (IP Only)	<p>The <i>Auto</i> check box is automatically selected to use the Line Rate defined for the conference.</p> <p>Note: This check box cannot be cleared when defining a new participant during an ongoing conference.</p> <p>To specify the video rate for the endpoint, clear this check box and then select the required video rate.</p>

Table 4-3 New Participant – Advanced Properties (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Video Protocol</i>	Select the video compression standard that will be forced by the MCU on the endpoint when connecting to the conference: <i>H.261</i> , <i>H.263</i> or <i>H.264</i> . Select Auto to let the MCU select the video protocol according to the endpoint's capabilities.
<i>Broadcasting Volume + Listening Volume</i>	To adjust the volume the participant broadcasts to the conference or the volume the participant hears the conference, move the slider; each unit represents an increase or decrease of 3 dB (decibel). The volume scale is from 1 to 10, where 1 is the weakest and 10 is the strongest. The default connection value is 5.
<i>Encryption (IP Only)</i>	Select whether the endpoint uses encryption for its connection to the conference. Auto (default setting) indicates that the endpoint will connect according to the conference encryption setting. Encryption is not supported in ISDN/PSTN calls. ISDN/PSTN participants can connect to encrypted conferences only if the system flag is set to allow non-encrypted participants to connect to encrypted conferences.
<i>AGC</i>	AGC (Auto Gain Control) mechanism regulates noise and audio volume by keeping the received audio signals of all participants balanced. Select this check box to enable the AGC mechanism for participants with weaker audio signals. Note: Enabling AGC may result in amplification of background noise.

Table 4-3 New Participant – Advanced Properties (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Cascaded Link (IP Only)</i>	<p>If this participant is used as a link between conferences select:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Slave, if the participant is defined in a conference running on a Slave MCU. • Master, if the participant is defined in a conference running on the Master MCU. <p>It enables the connection of one conference directly to another conference using an H.323 connection only. The conferences can run on the same MCU or different MCU's. For more information, see "<i>Enabling Cascading</i>" on page 8-42.</p>
<i>ISDN/PSTN Network Service</i>	Enables users to select the ISDN/PSTN network service.
<i>Telepresence Mode</i>	<p>Setting the participant/endpoint Telepresence Mode configures the RMX to receive the video format of the RPX or TPX room endpoints.</p> <p>If you are defining an endpoint that is part of a telepresence room, select the room type as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RPX - for room endpoints that transmit 4:3 video format. • TPX - for room endpoints that transmit 16:9 video format. • None (default) - to indicate a standard endpoint that is not part of a telepresence room configuration.

5 To add general information about the participant, i.e. email, company name, etc..., click the **Information** tab and type the necessary details in the **Info 1-4** fields. Text in the *info* fields can be added in Unicode format (length: 31 characters).


6 Click **OK**.

The new participant is added to the address book.

Adding a Participant from an Ongoing Conference to the Address Book

You can add a participant to the Address Book directly from an ongoing conference.

To add a participant from the conference to the Address Book:

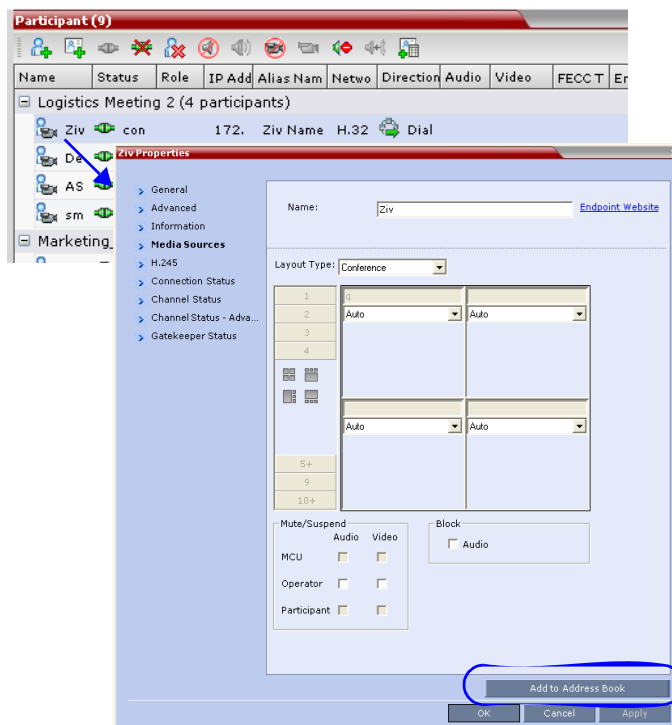
- 1** During an ongoing conference, select the participant in the *Participant* pane and either click the **Add Participant to Address Book** button () or right-click and select **Add Participant to Address Book**.

The participant is added to the Address Book.

Alternatively, you could:

- a** Double-click the participant's icon or right-click the participant icon and click **Participant Properties**.

The *Participant Properties* window opens.



- b** Click the **Add to Address book** button.

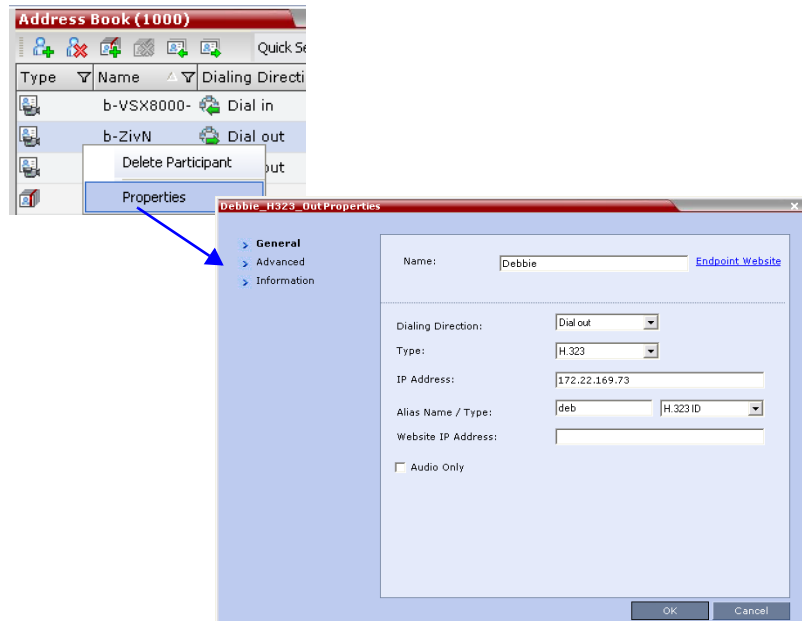
Modifying Participants in the Address Book

When required, you can modify the participant's properties.

To modify participant properties in the Address Book:

- 1 In the *Address Book* pane, double-click the participant's icon or right-click the participant's name and click **Participant Properties**.

The *Participant's Properties* window appears.



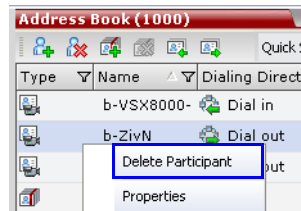
- 2 Modify the necessary properties in the window, e.g. dialing direction, communication protocol type, etc... You can modify any property in any of the three tabs: *General*, *Advanced* and *Info*.
- 3 Click **OK**.

The changes to the participant's properties are updated.

Deleting Participants from the Address Book

To delete participants from the Address Book:

- 1 In the *Address Book* pane select the participant to delete. Click the **Delete Participant** (🗑️) button or right-click and then click the **Delete Participant** option.



- 2 Click **Yes** in the dialog box that appears to confirm the deletion. After confirmation, the selected participant is deleted from the Address Book.

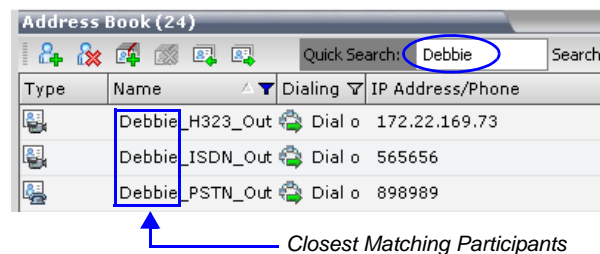
Searching the Address Book

To search for participants in the Address Book:

- 1 In the *Address Book* toolbar, click in the *Quick Search* field. The field clears and a cursor appears indicating that the field is active.



- 2 Type all or part of the participant's *Name* and click **Search**. The closest matching participant entries are displayed and the *Active Filter* indicator turns on.



Filtering the Address Book

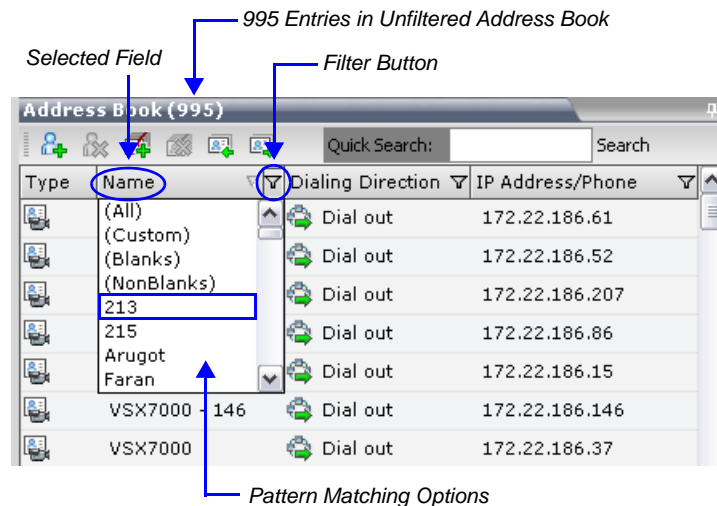
Filtering applies pattern matching criteria to the information in the *Address Book* entries, enabling you to select and work with a subset of *Address Book* entries.

Filtering can be applied to one or multiple *Address Book* fields at a time.

To filter an address book field:

- 1 In the *Address Book* field that you want to filter, click the filter (Y) button.

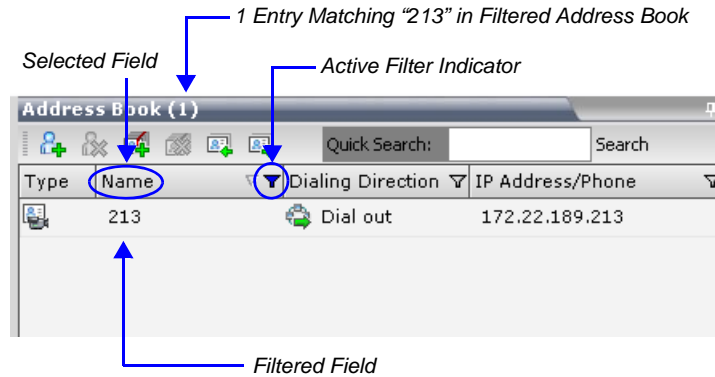
A drop-down menu is displayed containing all the matching patterns that can be applied to the selected field.



- 2 Click the matching pattern to be applied as the filter.

The filtered list is displayed with an active filter (blue) indicator (Y) displayed in the selected field heading.

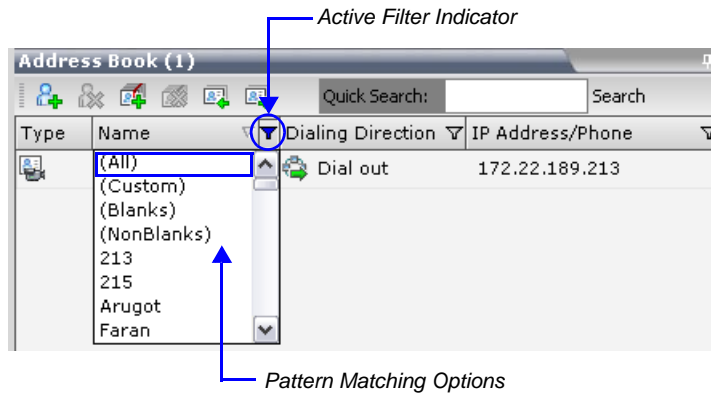
Example: If the user selects **213** as the matching pattern, the filtered *Address Book* is displayed as follows:



To clear the filter and display all entries:

- 1 In the filtered *Address Book* field heading, click the *Active Filter* indicator.

The pattern matching options menu is displayed.



- 2 Click **All**.


The filter is de-activated and all *Address Book* entries are displayed.

Participant Groups

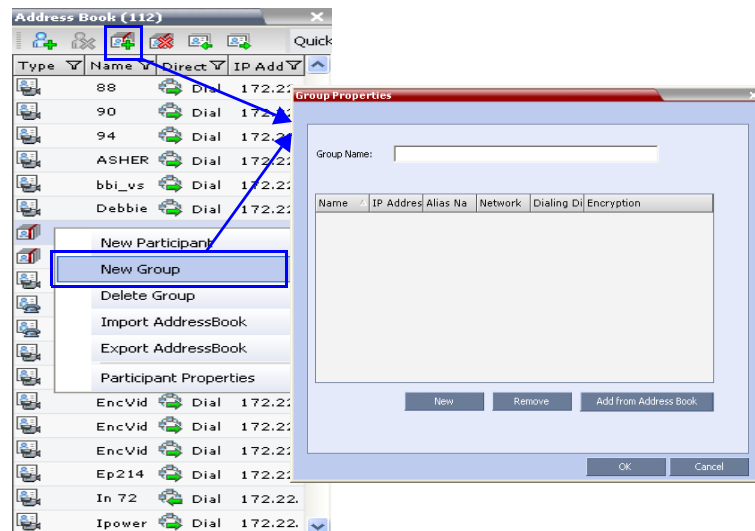
A group is a predefined collection of participants. A group provides an easy way to connect a combination of endpoints to a conference. For example, if you frequently conduct conferences with the marketing department, you can create a group called “Marketing Team” that contains the endpoints of all members of the marketing team.

Adding a New Group to the Address Book

To define a New Group:

- 1 In the *Address Book* pane click the **New Group** ( button or right-click an empty area in the pane and click **New Group**.

The *Group Properties* dialog box appears.




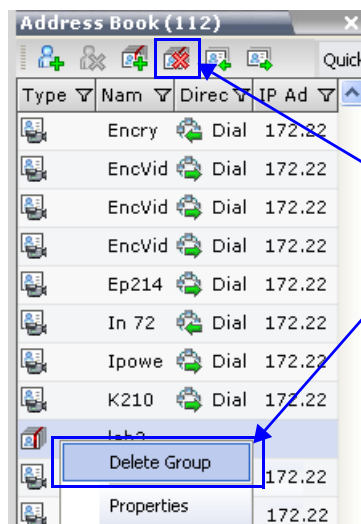
- 2 In the *Name* field, enter a name for the group, for example, Marketing Team.

- 3 Add participants to the Group by doing one of the following:
 - a Click the **Add from Address Book** button to display the *Participants Address Book* dialog box. Select the desired endpoints to include in the Group and click **Add**. Multiple selections of participants are enabled.
 - b Drag and drop the desired endpoints from the *Address Book* pane into the Group's dialog box.
 - c Click the **New** button to display the *New Participant* dialog box. Define the endpoint's parameters and click **OK**.
- 4 In the *Group* dialog box, click **OK**.
The new group is added to the *Address Book*.

Deleting a Group from the Address Book

To delete a Group:

- 1 In the *Address Book* pane, select the group and click the **Delete Group**  button or right-click the group and click the **Delete Group**.



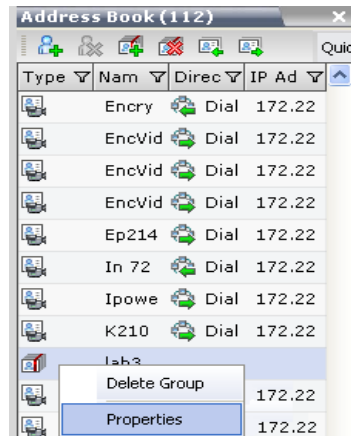
Either option will delete the selected group

- 2 Click **Yes** in the confirmation dialog box.
The selected group is deleted from the *Address Book*.

Modifying a Group in the Address Book

To Modify a Group:

- 1 In the *Address Book* pane, double-click the Group icon (📁) or right-click the Group and then click **Properties**.



The *Group Properties* dialog box will be displayed.

- 2 The following operation can be performed:
 - a **Rename Group** – Rename the Group in the name field.
 - b **Create New Participant** – Click the **New** button to create new participants in the *Address Book* and included them in the Group.
 - c **Add Participant** – Add one or more participants to the Group by clicking the **Add from Address Book** button and selecting the participants from the *Participants Address Book* dialog box.
 - d **Remove Participant** – Select the one or more participants in the *Group properties* dialog box and click the **Remove** button.

Standard Windows multiple selection techniques can be for (adding/removing) participants (to/from) the Group.

- 3 Click **OK**.

Importing and Exporting Address Books

Address Books are proprietary Polycom data files that can only be distributed among RMX units. The Address Books are exported in XML format, which are editable offline. If no name is assigned to the exported Address Book, the default file name is:

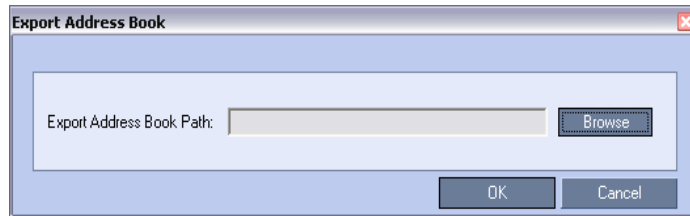
`EMA.DataObjects.OfflineTemplates.AddressbookContent_.xml`

Exporting an Address Book

To Export an Address Book:

- 1 In the *Address Book* pane, click the **Export Address Book** (📁) button or right-click an empty area in the pane and click **Export Address Book**.

The *Export Address Book* dialog box appears.




- 2 Enter the desired path or click the **Browse** button.
- 3 In the **Save Address Book** dialog box, select the directory to save the file. You may also rename the file in the *File Name* field.
- 4 Click **Save**.
You will return to the *Export File* dialog box.
- 5 Click **OK**.

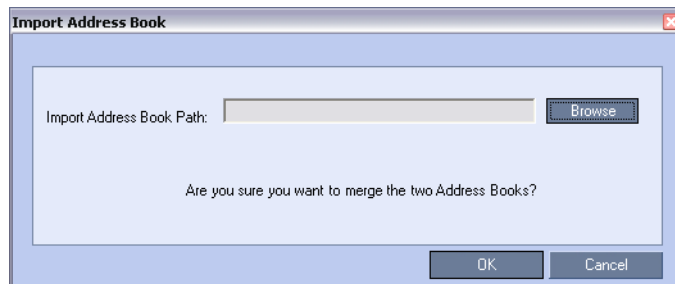
The exported Address Book is saved in the selected folder in XML format.

Importing an Address Book

To Import an Address Book:

- 1 In the *Address Book* pane, click the **Import Address Book** () button or right-click an empty area in the pane and then click **Import Address Book**.

The *Import Address Book* dialog box appears.



- 2 Enter the path from which to import the Address Book or click the **Browse** button.
- 3 In the *Open* dialog box navigate to the desired Address Book file (in XML format) to import.



When importing an Address Book, participants with exact names in the current Address Book will be overwritten by participants defined in the imported Address Book.

- 4 Click **Open**.
You will return to the *Import File* dialog box.
- 5 Click **OK**.
The *Address Book* is imported and a confirmation message is displayed at the end of the process.
- 6 Click **Close**.

Reservations

The *Reservations* option enables users to schedule conferences. These conferences can be launched immediately or become ongoing, at a specified time on a specified date.

Scheduling a conference reservation requires definition of conference parameters such as the date and time at which the conference is to start, the participants and the duration of the conference.

Scheduled conferences (Reservations) can occur once or repeatedly, and the recurrence pattern can vary.

Guidelines

System

- By default, the *Scheduler* is enabled by a *System Flag*. The flag prevents potential scheduling conflicts from occurring as a result of system calls from external scheduling applications such as *ReadiManager®*, *SE200 CMA™ 4000/5000* and others via the API.

If an external scheduling application is used, the flag `INTERNAL_SCHEDULER` must be manually added to the System Configuration and its value must be set to NO.

For more information see "*Modifying System Flags*" on page [14-10](#).

Resources

- The maximum number of participants per reservation is determined by the availability of system resources:
 - MPM Configuration Mode: 80 participants.
 - MPM+ Configuration Mode: 200 participants (120 voice +80 CIF video).

- System resources are calculated according to the RMX's license. For more information see "*Video/Voice Port Configuration*" on page [14-30](#).
- System resource availability is partially checked when reservations are created:
 - If a conference duration extension request is received from an ongoing conference, the request is rejected if it would cause a resource conflict.
 - If several reservations are scheduled to be activated at the same time and there are not enough resources for all participants to be connected:
 - The conferences are activated.
 - Participants are connected to all the ongoing conferences until all system resources are used up.
- If sufficient resources are not available in the system and a scheduled *Reservation* cannot be activated, the *Reservation* is deleted from the schedule.
- Resources for *Reservations* are calculated using the *Reserve Resources for Audio/Video Participants* fields of the *New Reservation* dialog box. For more information see "*New Reservation – Reserved Resources*" on page [5-12](#).
- Resources are reserved for participants at the highest video resolution supported by the *Line Rate* specified in the conference *Profile* and up to the maximum system video resolution specified by the MAX_CP_RESOLUTION system flag.

If the RMX is in *MPM+ Mode* and *Fixed Capacity Mode* is selected, the number of resources allocated to this type of video participant (CIF, SD, HD) is also checked. If resource deficiencies are found an error message is displayed.
- When a new *Reservation* is created in the *Reservations*, the effect of the new *Reservation* (including its recurrences) on available resources is checked. If resource deficiencies are found an error message is displayed.

Defined dial-in or dial-out participants, Meeting Rooms, Entry Queues and new connections to Ongoing conferences are not included in the resources calculation.

Reservations

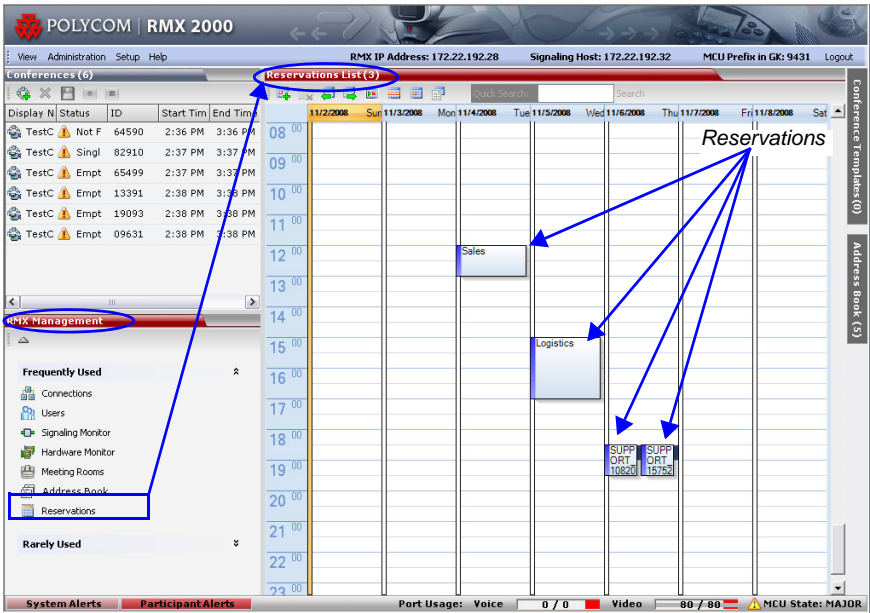
- A *Reservation* that has been activated and becomes an ongoing conference is deleted from the *Reservations* list.
- The maximum number of reservations is 2000.
- The maximum number of concurrent reservations is 80. Reservations with durations that overlap (for any amount of time) are considered to be concurrent.
- The maximum number of participants per reservation is determined by the availability of system resources:
 - MPM Configuration Mode: 80 participants
 - MPM+ Configuration Mode: 200 (120 voice +80 CIF video) participants
- System resource availability is partially checked when reservations are created:
 - If a conference duration extension request is received from an ongoing conference, the request is rejected if it would cause a resource conflict.
 - If several reservations are scheduled to be activated at the same time and there are not enough resources for all participants to be connected:
 - The conferences are activated.
 - Participants are connected to all the ongoing conferences until all system resources are used up.
- A scheduled *Reservation* cannot be activated and is deleted from the schedule if an Ongoing conference has the same *Numeric ID*.
 - Sufficient resources are not available in the system.
- If a problem prevents a *Reservation* from being activated at its schedule time, the *Reservation* will not be activated at all. This applies even if the problem is resolved during the *Reservation's* scheduled time slot.
- A Profile that is assigned to a Reservation cannot be deleted.
- Reservations are backed up and restored during **Setup > Software Management > Backup/Restore Configuration** operations. For more information see "*Software Management*" on page [14-61](#).
- All existing reservations are erased by the *Standard Restore* option of the **Administration > Tools > Restore Factory Defaults** procedure.

- Reservations can also be scheduled from *Conference Templates*. For more information see "*Scheduling a Reservation From a Conference Template*" on page 6-14.

Using the Reservation Calendar

To open the Reservation Calendar:

- ➡ In the RMX Management pane, click the *Reservations* button (📅).



Toolbar Buttons

The toolbar buttons functions are described in Table 5-1.

Table 5-1 Reservations – Toolbar









Button	Description
 <i>New Reservation</i>	Create a new reservation. The date and time of the new reservation is set according to the highlighted blocks on the <i>Reservations</i> .

Table 5-1 Reservations – Toolbar (Continued)

Button	Description
 <i>Delete Reservation</i>	Click to delete the selected reservation.
 <i>Back</i>	Click to show the previous day or week, depending on whether <i>Show Day</i> or <i>Show Week</i> is the selected.
 <i>Next</i>	Click to show the next day or week, depending on whether <i>Show Day</i> or <i>Show Week</i> is the selected.
 <i>Today</i>	Click to show the current date in the Reservation Calendar in either <i>Show Day</i> or <i>Show Week</i> view.
 <i>Show Week</i>	Change the calendar view to weekly display, showing a calendar week: Sunday through Saturday
 <i>Show Day</i>	Click this button to show the day containing the selected time slot.
 <i>Reservations List</i>	Click to change to List View and display a list of all reservations.
Quick Search: <input type="text"/>	Used to search for reservations by <i>Display Name</i> . (Available in <i>Reservations List</i> view only).

Reservations Views

The *Reservations* has the following views available:

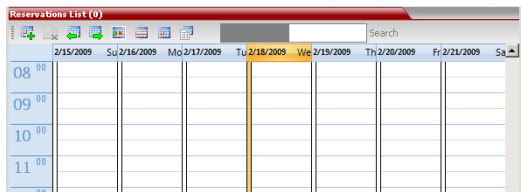
- Week
- Day
- Today
- List

In all views the *Main Window List Pane* header displays the total number of reservations in the system.

Reservations List (6) *Total number of reservations*

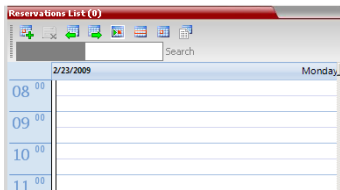
Week View

By default the *Reservations* is displayed in *Week* view with the current date highlighted in orange.



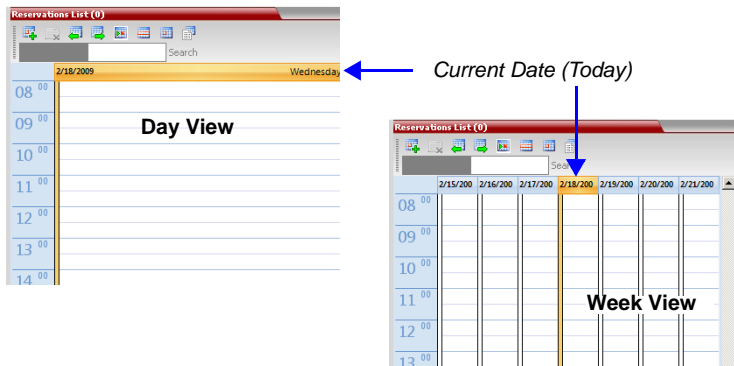
Day View

A single day is displayed.



Today View

The current date (*Today*), highlighted in orange, can be viewed in both *Week View* and *Day View*.



List View

List View does not have a calendar based format.

Reservations List(6)									
Quick Search:				Search					
Display Name	ID	Start Time	End Time	Internal ID	Status	Conference Passw	Profile		
SUPPORT_180	17989	07/11/2008 05:00	07/11/2008 05:30	183	ok	987654	Factory_Video_Profile		
SUPPORT_157	91272	06/11/2008 18:30	06/11/2008 19:30	169	ok		Factory_Video_Profile		
SUPPORT_108	97493	06/11/2008 18:30	06/11/2008 19:30	170	ok		Factory_Video_Profile		
Logistics	00582	05/11/2008 15:00	05/11/2008 17:00	168	ok		Factory_Video_Profile		
Sales	12295	04/11/2008 12:00	04/11/2008 13:00	167	ok		Factory_Video_Profile		
deb_template1	20940	02/11/2008 23:45	03/11/2008 00:45	127	ok		Factory_Video_Profile		


All *Reservations* are listed by:

- *Display Name*
- *ID*
- *Internal ID*
- *Start Time*
- *End Time*
- *Status*
- *Conference Password*
- *Profile*


The *Reservations* can be sorted, searched and browsed by any of the listed fields.

Changing the Calendar View

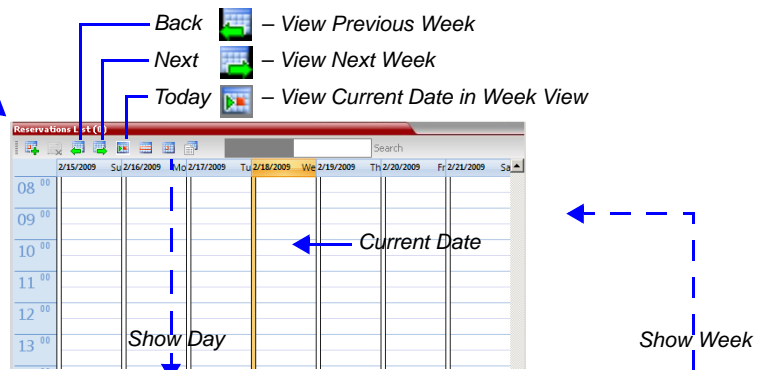
To change between Week and Day views:

➡ In Week View: In the *Reservations* toolbar, click **Show Day** () to change to *Day View*.

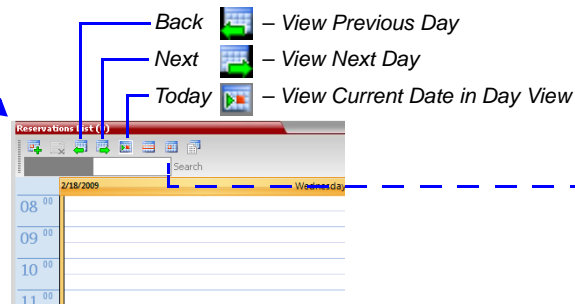
or

In Day View: In the *Reservations* toolbar, click **Show Week** () to change to *Week View*.


Week View



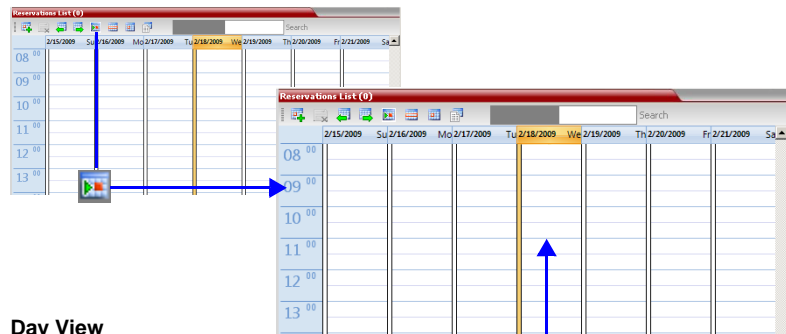
Day View



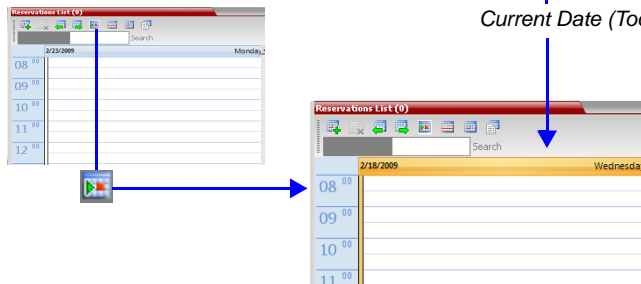
To view Today (the current date):

- 1 In *Week View* or *Day View*, in the *Reservations* toolbar, click the **Today** () button to have the current date displayed within the selected view.

Week View




Day View



Current Date (Today)

To change to List View:

- 1 In the *Reservations* toolbar, click, the **Reservations List** () button. The *Reservations List* is displayed.

Reservations List(6)								
Quick Search: <input type="text"/> Search								
Display Name	ID	Start Time	End Time	Internal ID	Status	Conference Passw	Profile	
SUPPORT_180	17989	07/11/2008 05:00	07/11/2008 05:30	183	ok	987654	Factory_Video_Profile	
SUPPORT_157	91272	06/11/2008 18:30	06/11/2008 19:30	169	ok		Factory_Video_Profile	
SUPPORT_108	97493	06/11/2008 18:30	06/11/2008 19:30	170	ok		Factory_Video_Profile	
Logistics	00582	05/11/2008 15:00	05/11/2008 17:00	168	ok		Factory_Video_Profile	
Sales	12295	04/11/2008 12:00	04/11/2008 13:00	167	ok		Factory_Video_Profile	
deb_template1	20940	02/11/2008 23:45	03/11/2008 00:45	127	ok		Factory_Video_Profile	

- 2 **Optional:** Sort the data by any field (column heading) by clicking on the column heading.

A ▼ or ▲ symbol appears in the column heading indicating that the list is sorted by this field, as well as the sort order.

- 3 **Optional:** Click on the column heading to toggle the column's sort order.

To return to Calendar View:

- ➡ In the *Reservations* toolbar, click any of the buttons (**Show Week/Show Day/Today**) to return to the required *Reservations* view.

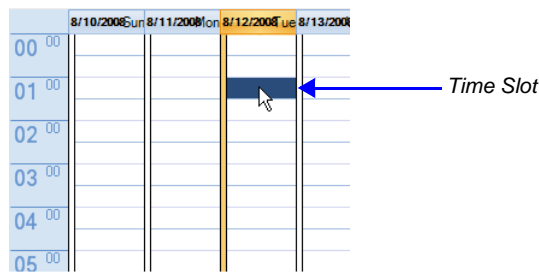
Scheduling Conferences Using the Reservation Calendar

Creating a New Reservation

There are three methods of creating a new reservation:


Each method requires the selection of a starting time slot in the *Reservations*. The default time slot is the current half-hour period of local time.

In all views, if the **New Reservation** (📅) button is clicked without selecting a starting time slot or if a time slot is selected that is in the past, the *Reservation* becomes an Ongoing conference immediately and is not added to the *Reservations* calendar.



After selecting a starting time slot in the *Reservations* you can create a reservation with a default duration derived from the creation method used or by interactively defining the duration of the reservation.


Method I – To create a reservation with default duration of 1 hour:

- In the *Reservations* toolbar, click the **New Reservation** () button to create a reservation of 1 hour duration.

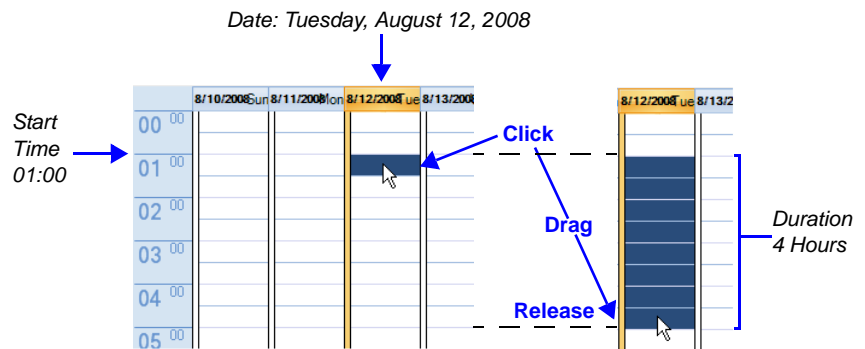
Method II – To create a reservation with default duration of ½ hour:

- Right-click and select **New Reservation** to create a reservation of ½ hour default duration.

Method III – To interactively define the duration:

- 1 In the calendar, click & drag to expand the time slot to select the required *Date*, *Start Time* and *Duration* for the reservation.
- 2 In the *Reservations* toolbar, click the **New Reservation** () button or right-click and select **New Reservation**.

Example: The following click & drag sequence would select a reservation for *Tuesday, August 12, 2008*, starting at *01:00* with a duration of 4 hours.



The duration of reservations created by any of the above methods can be modified in the *Scheduler* tab of the *New Reservation* dialog box.

To create a new reservation:

- 1 Open the *Reservations*.
- 2 Select a starting time slot.
- 3 Create the reservation using one of the three methods described above.

The *New Reservation – General* tab dialog box opens.

The screenshot shows a window titled "New Reservation" with a sidebar on the left containing four tabs: "General", "Participants", "Schedule", and "Information". The "General" tab is selected and circled in blue. The main area of the dialog contains the following fields:

- Display Name: A text box containing "SUPPORT_557388227".
- Duration: A time selection box showing "0" minutes and "30" seconds.
- Routing Name: A text box.
- Profile: A dropdown menu showing "Factory_Video_Profile".
- ID: A text box.
- Conference Password: A text box.
- Chairperson Password: A text box.
- Reserve Resources for Video Participants: A numeric input box with "0" and a "max" button.
- Reserve Resources for Audio Participants: A numeric input box with "0" and a "max" button.

At the bottom right of the dialog are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

All the fields are the same as for the *New Conference – General* tab, described in the *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide*, "General Tab" on page 3-16.

Table 5-2 *New Reservation – Reserved Resources*

Field	Description
<i>Reserve Resources for Video Participants</i>	Enter the number of video participants for which the system must reserve resources. Default: 0 participants. Maximum: <ul style="list-style-type: none">MPM Mode: 80 participants.MPM+ Mode: 80 participants.

Table 5-2 New Reservation – Reserved Resources (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Reserve Resources for Audio Participants</i>	<p>Enter the number of audio participants for which the system must reserve resources.</p> <p>Default: 0 participants.</p> <p>Maximum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MPM Mode: 80 participants. MPM+ Mode: 120 participants.



When a Conference Profile is assigned to a Meeting Room or a Reservation, the Profile's parameters are not embedded in the Reservation, and are taken from the Profile when the reservation becomes an ongoing conference. Therefore, any changes to the Profile parameters between the time the Reservation or Meeting Room was created and the time that it is activated (and becomes an ongoing conference) will be applied to the conference. If the user wants to save the current parameters, a different Profile with these parameters must be assigned, or a different Profile with the new parameters must be created.

4 Click the **Schedule** tab.

Calendar

- 5 Adjust the new reservation’s schedule by modifying the fields as described in Table 5-3.

Table 5-3 *New Reservation – Schedule Tab*

Field	Description	
<i>Start Time</i>	Select the Start Time of the Reservation.	<p>The Start/End Times of the Reservation are initially taken from the time slot selected in the Reservation Calendar.</p> <p>The Start/End Times can be adjusted by typing in the hours and minutes fields or by clicking the arrow buttons.</p> <p>The Start/End dates can be adjusted by typing in the date field or by clicking the arrow buttons or using the calendar.</p>
<i>End Time</i>	Select the End Time of the Reservation.	<p>End Time settings are initially calculated as Start Time + Duration. End Time settings are recalculated if Start Time settings are changed.</p> <p>Changes to End Time settings do not affect Start Time settings. However, the Duration of the Reservation is recalculated.</p>
<i>Recurring Meeting</i>	<p>Select this option to set up a Recurring Reservation - a series of Reservations to be repeated on a regular basis.</p> <p>To create a recurring reservation, you must define a time period and a recurrence pattern of how often the Reservation should occur: <i>Daily</i>, <i>Weekly</i> or <i>Monthly</i>.</p>	

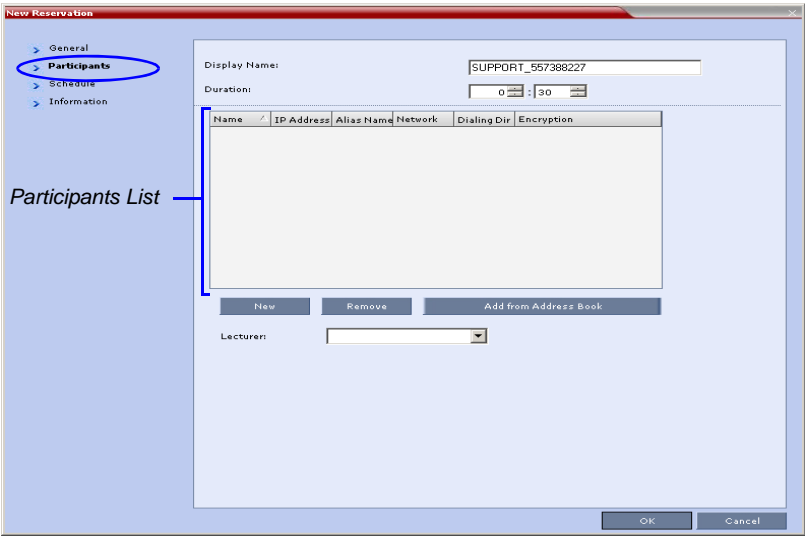
Table 5-3 New Reservation – Schedule Tab (Continued)

Field	Description	
<i>Recurrence Pattern</i>	Daily	If <i>Daily</i> is selected, the system automatically selects all the days of the week. To de-select days (for example, weekends) clear their check boxes.
	Weekly	<p>If <i>Weekly</i> is selected, the system automatically selects the day of the week for the Reservation from the day selected in the Reservation Calendar.</p> <p>You can also define the recurrence interval in weeks. For example, if you want the reservation to occur every second week, enter 2 in the <i>Recur every _ week(s)</i> field.</p> <p>To define a twice-weekly recurring Reservation, select the check box of the additional day of the week on which the Reservation is to be scheduled and set the recurrence interval to 1.</p>
	Monthly	<p>If <i>Monthly</i> is selected, the system automatically selects the day of the month as selected in the Reservation Calendar. You are required to choose a recurrence pattern:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Day (1-31) of every (1-12) month(s) - Repeats a conference on a specified day of the month at a specified monthly interval. For example, if the first Reservation is scheduled for the 6th day of the current month and the monthly interval is set to 1, the monthly Reservation will occur on the 6th day of each of the following months. The (first, second,...,last) (Sun-Sat) of x month(s) - Repeats a Reservation in a particular week, on a specified day of the week at the specified monthly interval. For example, a recurrent meeting on the third Monday every second month.

Table 5-3 *New Reservation – Schedule Tab (Continued)*

Field	Description
	A series of Reservations can be set to end after a specified number of occurrences or by a specific date. Select one of the following methods of terminating the series of Reservations:
End After	End After: x Occurrences - Ends a recurring series of Reservations after a specific number (x) of occurrences. Default: 1 (Leaving the field blank defaults to 1 occurrence.)
End by Date	End By Date: mm/dd/yyyy - Specifies a date for the last occurrence of the recurring series of Reservations. The End By Date value can be adjusted by typing in the date field or by clicking the arrow button and using the calendar utility. Default: Current date.

6 Click the **Participants** tab.



The fields are the same as for the *New Conference – Participants* tab, described in the *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide*, "Participants Tab" on page [3-19](#).



Participant properties are embedded in the conferencing entity and therefore, if the participant properties are modified in the *Address Book* (or *Meeting Rooms*) after the Reservation has been created they are not applied to the participant when the Reservation is activated.

7 Optional: Add participants from the *Participants Address Book*.

For more information see the *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide*, "Add from Address Book" on page [3-21](#) and the *RMX 2000 Administrator's Guide*, "Meeting Rooms" on page [2-1](#).

8 Optional: Add information to the reservation.

Information entered in the *Information* tab is written to the *Call Detail Record (CDR)* when the reservation is activated. Changes made to this information before it becomes an ongoing conference will be saved to the CDR.

For more information see the *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide*, "Information Tab" on page [3-23](#).

9 Click **OK**.

The *New Reservation* is created and is displayed in the *Reservations*.

Managing Reservations

Reservations can be accessed and managed via all the views of the *Reservations List*.

Guidelines

- The *Recurrence Pattern* fields in the *Schedule* tab that are used to create multiple occurrences of a *Reservation* are only displayed when the *Reservation* and its multiple occurrences are initially created.
- As with single occurrence *Reservations*, only the *Duration*, *Start Time* and *End Time* parameters of multiple occurrence reservations can be modified after the *Reservation* has been created.
- A single occurrence *Reservation* cannot be modified to become a multiple occurrence reservation.
- *Reservations* can only be modified one at a time and not as a group.
- If *Reservations* were created as a recurring series, the system gives the option to delete them individually, or all as series.

Viewing and Modifying Reservations

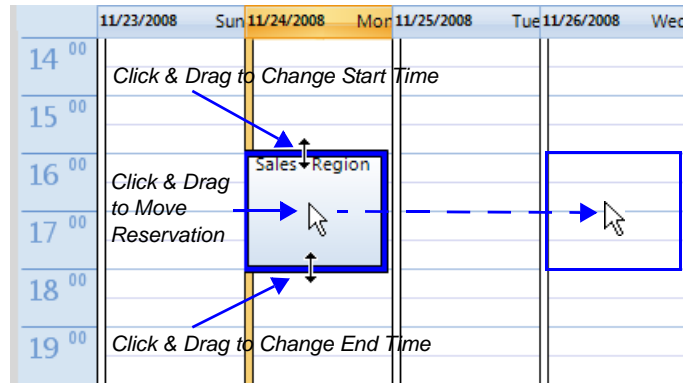
Reservations can be viewed and modified by using the *Week* and *Day* views of the *Reservations Calendar* or by using the *Reservation Properties* dialog box.

Using the Week and Day views of the Reservations Calendar

In the *Week* and *Day* views each *Reservation* is represented by a shaded square on the *Reservations*. Clicking on a *Reservation* selects the *Reservation*. A dark blue border is displayed around the edges of the *Reservation* indicating that it has been selected.

The *Start Time* of the *Reservation* is represented by the top edge of the square while the *End Time* is represented by the bottom edge.

The cursor changes to a vertical double arrow (↕) when it is moved over the top and bottom sides of the square.



To move the Reservation to another time slot:

- 1 Select the *Reservation*.
- 2 Hold the mouse button down and drag the *Reservation* to the desired time slot.
- 3 Release the mouse button.

To change the Reservation's Start time:

- 1 Select the *Reservation*.
- 2 Move the mouse over the top edge of the *Reservation's* square.
- 3 When the cursor changes to a vertical double arrow (↕) hold the mouse button down and drag the edge to the desired *Start Time*.
- 4 Release the mouse button.

To change the Reservation's End time:


- 1 Select the *Reservation*.
- 2 Move the mouse over the bottom edge of the *Reservation's* square.
- 3 When the cursor changes to a vertical double arrow (↕) hold the mouse button down and drag the edge to the desired *End Time*.
- 4 Release the mouse button.

To View or Modify Reservations using the Reservation Properties dialog box:


- 1** In the *Reservations List*, navigate to the reservation (or its recurrences) you want to view, using the **Show Day, Show Week, Today, Back, Next** or **List** buttons.
- 2** Double-click, or right-click and select **Reservation Properties**, to select the reservation to be viewed or modified.
The *Reservation Properties – General* dialog box opens.
- 3** Select the tab(s) of the properties you want to view or modify.
- 4 Optional:** Modify the *Reservation Properties*.
- 5** Click **OK**.
The dialog box closes and modifications (if any) are saved.

Deleting Reservations

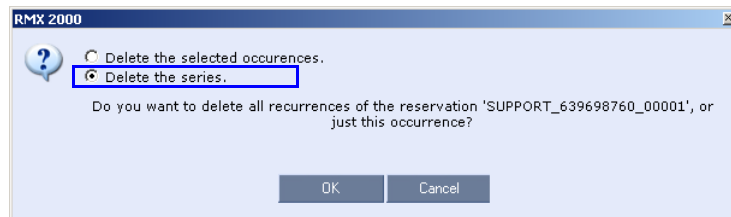
To delete a single reservation:

- 1** In the *Reservations List*, navigate to the reservation you want to delete, using the **Show Day, Show Week, Today, Back, Next** or **List** buttons.
- 2** Click to select the reservation to be deleted.
- 3** Click the **Delete Reservation** () button.
or
Place the mouse pointer within the *Reservation* block, right-click and select **Delete Reservation**.
- 4** Click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box.
The *Reservation* is deleted.

To delete all recurrences of a reservation:

- 1** In the *Reservations List*, navigate to the *Reservation* or any of its recurrences, using the **Show Day, Show Week, Today, Back, Next** or **List** buttons.
- 2** Click the **Delete Reservation** () button.
or
Place the mouse pointer within the *Reservation* or any of its recurrences, right-click and select **Delete Reservation**.

A confirmation dialog box is displayed.



3 Select **Delete the series.**

4 Click **OK.**

All occurrences of the *Reservation* are deleted.

Searching for Reservations using Quick Search

Quick Search is available only in *List View*. It enables you to search for *Reservations* by *Display Name*.

To search for reservations:

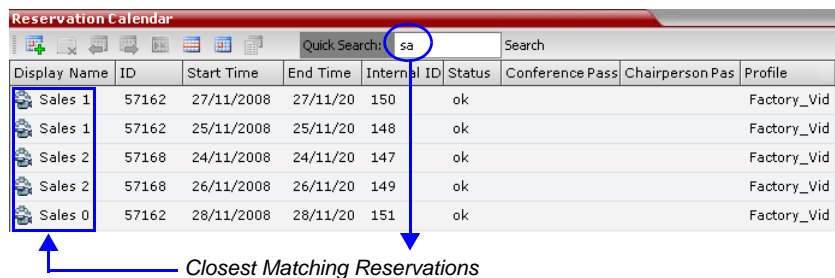
1 In the *Reservations* toolbar, click in the *Quick Search* field.

The field clears and a cursor appears indicating that the field is active.



2 Type all or part of the reservation's *Display Name* into the field and click **Search**.

The closest matching *Reservation* entries are displayed.



3 Optional: Double-click the *Reservation's* entry in the list to open the *Reservations Properties* dialog box to view or modify the *Reservation*.

or

Right -click the *Reservation's* entry in the list and select a menu option to view, modify or delete the *Reservation*.

To clear the search and display all reservations:

1 Clear the *Quick Search* field.

2 Click **Search**.

All *Reservations* are displayed.

Conference Templates

Conference Templates enable administrators and operators to create, save, schedule and activate identical conferences.

A *Conference Template*:

- Saves the conference Profile.
- Saves all participant parameters including their *Personal Layout* and *Video Forcing* settings.
- Simplifies the setting up *Telepresence* conferences where precise participant layout and video forcing settings are crucial.

Guidelines

- A maximum of 100 *Conference Templates* can be saved.
- A maximum of 200 participants can be saved in a *Conference Template* when the RMX is in MPM+ mode. When the RMX is in MPM mode, the maximum is 80 participants.
- If the RMX is switched to from MPM+ mode to MPM mode, conference templates may include more participants than the allowed maximum in MPM mode.

Trying to start a *Conference Template* that exceeds the allowed maximum number of participants will result in participants being disconnected due to resource deficiency.

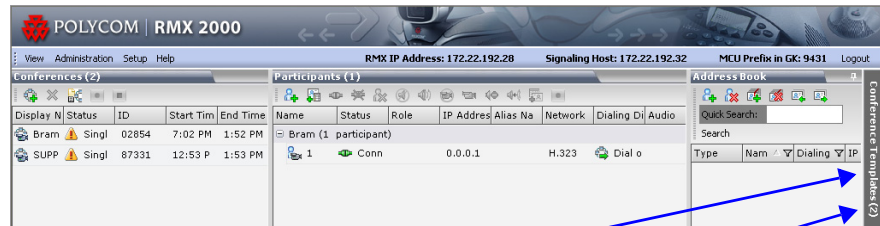
- If the Profile assigned to a conference is deleted while the conference is ongoing the conference cannot be saved as a template.
- A Profile assigned to a *Conference Template* cannot be deleted. The system does not permit such a deletion.
- Profile parameters are not embedded in the *Conference Template*, and are taken from the Profile when the *Conference Template* becomes an ongoing conference. Therefore, any changes to the Profile parameters between the time the *Conference Template* was created and the time

that it is activated (and becomes an ongoing conference) will be applied to the conference.

- Only defined participants can be saved to the *Conference Template*. Before saving a conference to a template ensure that all undefined participants have disconnected.
- Undefined participants are not saved in *Conference Templates*.
- Participant properties are embedded in the *Conference Template* and therefore, if the participant properties are modified in the Address Book after the *Conference Template* has been created they are not applied to the participant whether the *Template* becomes an ongoing conference or not.
- The *Conference Template* display name, routing name or ID can be the same as an Ongoing Conference, reservation, Meeting Room or Entry Queue as it is not active. However, an ongoing conference cannot be launched from the *Conference Template* if an ongoing conference, Meeting Room or Entry Queue already has the same name or ID. Therefore, it is recommended to modify the template ID, display name, routing name to be unique.
- A *Reservation* that has become an ongoing conference can be saved as *Conference Template*.
- SIP Factories and Entry Queues cannot be saved as *Conference Templates*.

Using Conference Templates

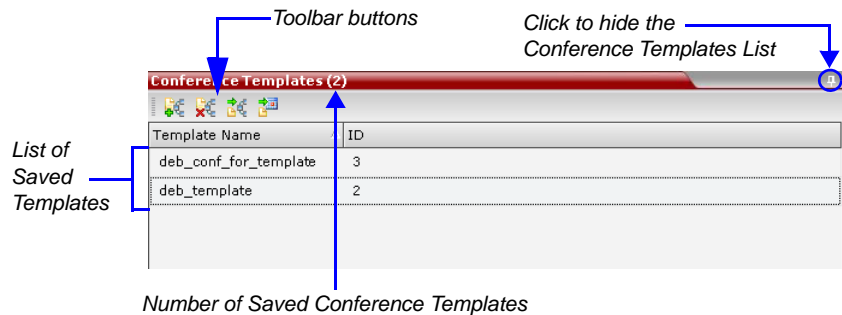
The *Conference Templates* list is initially displayed as a closed tab in the *RMX Web Client* main window. The number of saved *Conference Templates* is indicated on the tab.



Conference Templates Tab

Number of Saved Conference Templates

Clicking the tab opens the *Conference Templates* list.



The *Conference Templates* are listed by *Conference Template Display Name* and *ID* and can be sorted by either field. The list can be customized by re-sizing the pane, adjusting the column widths or changing the order of the column headings.





For more information see *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide*, "Customizing the Main Screen" on page 3-11.

Clicking the anchor pin (📌) button hides the *Conference Templates* list as a closed tab.

Toolbar Buttons


The *Conference Template* toolbar includes the following buttons:

Table 1 *Conference Templates – Toolbar Buttons*

Button	Description
 <i>New Conference Template</i>	Creates a new Conference Template.
 <i>Delete Conference Template</i>	Deletes the Conference Template(s) that are selected in the list.
 <i>Start Conference from Template</i>	Starts an ongoing conference from the <i>Conference Template</i> that has an identical name, ID parameters and participants as the template.
 <i>Schedule Reservation from Template</i>	Creates a conference Reservation from the Conference Template with the same name, ID, parameters and participants as the Template. Opens the <i>Scheduler</i> dialog box enabling you to modify the fields required to create a single or recurring <i>Reservation</i> based on the template. For more information see " <i>Reservations</i> " on page 5-1 .

The *Conferences List* toolbar includes the following button:

Table 2 *Conferences List – Toolbar Button*

Button	Description
 <i>Save Conference to Template</i>	Saves the selected ongoing conference as a Conference Template.

Creating a New Conference Template

There are two methods to create a *Conference Template*:

- From scratch - defining the conference parameters and participants
- Saving an ongoing conference as Template

Creating a new Conference Template from Scratch

To create a new Conference Template:

- 1 In the *RMX Web Client*, click the **Conference Templates** tab.
- 2 Click the **New Conference Template** (🔧) button.

The *New Conference Template - General* dialog box opens.

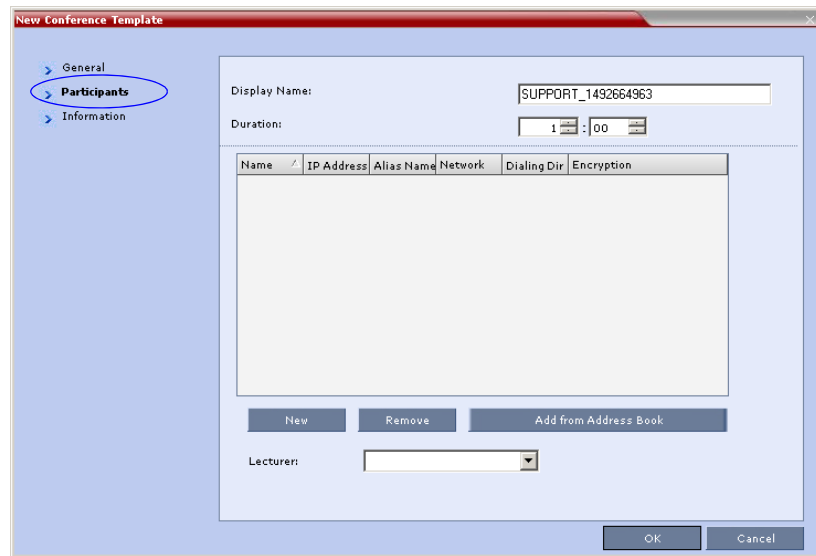
The screenshot shows the 'New Conference Template' dialog box with the 'General' tab selected. The fields are as follows:

Field	Value
Display Name	SUPPORT_1492664963
Duration	1 : 00
Routing Name	
Profile	Factory_Video_Profile
ID	
Conference Password	
Chairperson Password	

The fields of the *New Template - General* dialog box are identical to those of the *New Conference - General* dialog box. For a full description of the fields see the *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide*, "General Tab" on page [3-16](#).

- 3 Modify the fields of the *General* tab.
- 4 Click the **Participants** tab.

The *New Template – Participants* dialog box opens.



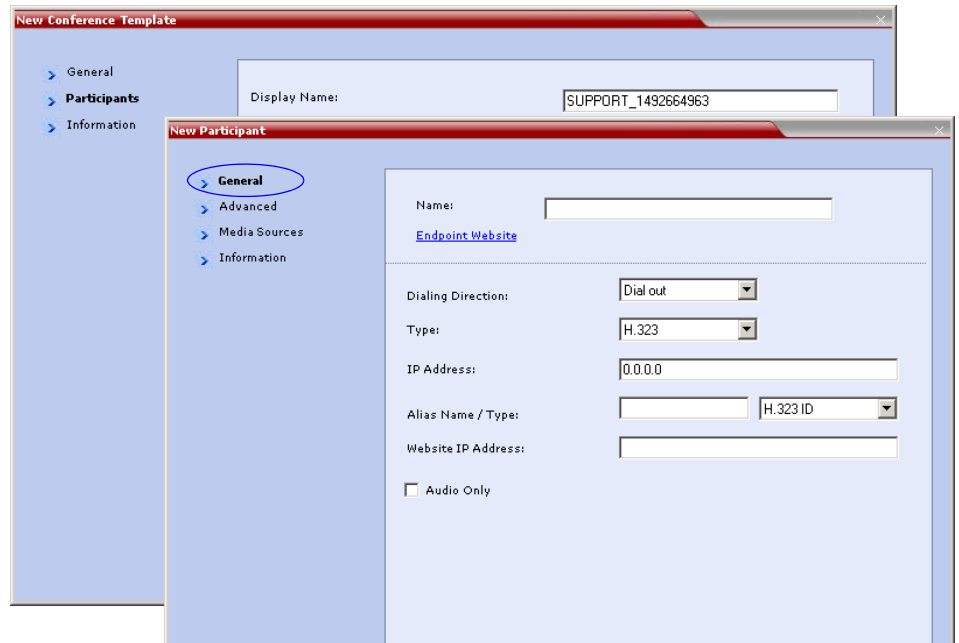
The fields of the *New Template – Participants* dialog box are the same as those of the *New Conference – Participant* dialog box.

For a full description of these fields see the *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide*, "Participants Tab" on page **3-19**.

- 5 Optional:** Add participants to the template from the *Address Book*.
- 6** Click the **New** button.

The *New Participant – General* tab opens.

The *New Template – Participant* dialog box remains open in the background.



For a full description of the *General* tab fields see the *RMX 2000 Administrator's Guide*, "Adding a new participant to the Address Book Directly" on page [4-4](#).

- 7** Modify the fields of the *General* tab.
- 8** Click the **Advanced** tab.

The *New Participant – Advanced* tab opens.

The screenshot shows the 'New Participant' dialog box with the 'Advanced' tab selected. The 'Advanced' tab is highlighted with a blue oval in the left sidebar. The main area contains the following fields and controls:

- Name:** A text input field.
- Endpoint Website:** A blue hyperlink.
- Video Bit Rate:** A checkbox labeled 'Auto' (checked) and a dropdown menu showing 'Automatic' with a 'Kbits/sec' label.
- Video Protocol:** A dropdown menu showing 'Auto'.
- Broadcasting Volume:** A slider control with a value of 5.
- Listening Volume:** A slider control with a value of 5.
- Encryption:** A dropdown menu showing 'Auto'.
- Cascade:** A dropdown menu showing 'None'.
- Telepresence Mode:** A dropdown menu showing 'None'.
- AGC:** A checkbox labeled 'AGC' (checked).

At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Add to Address Book', 'OK', and 'Cancel'.

For a full description of the *Advanced* tab fields see the *RMX 2000 Administrator's Guide*, "New Participant – Advanced Properties" on page 4-9.

- 9 Modify the fields of the *Advanced* tab.
- 10 Click the **Media Sources** tab.

The *Media Sources* tab opens.

The screenshot shows the 'New Participant' dialog box with the 'Media Sources' tab selected. The dialog has a sidebar on the left with tabs: General, Advanced, Media Sources (highlighted with a blue oval), and Information. The main area contains the following fields and controls:

- Name:** A text input field.
- Endpoint Website:** A link labeled 'Endpoint Website'.
- Layout Type:** A dropdown menu set to 'Conference'.
- Layout Selection:** A list of layout options: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5+, 9, 10+. Option 1 is selected, and a corresponding video preview window shows 'Auto'.
- Mute/Suspend:** A table with checkboxes for Audio and Video for MCU, User, and Participant.

	Audio	Video
MCU	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
User	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Participant	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
- Block:** A checkbox for Audio, which is currently unchecked.
- Buttons:** 'Add to Address Book', 'OK', and 'Cancel'.

The *Media Sources* tab enables you to set up and save *Personal Layout* and *Video Forcing* settings for each participant. This is especially important when setting up *Telepresence* conferences.

For a full description of *Personal Layout* and *Video Forcing* settings see the RMX 2000 *Getting Started Guide*, "Changing the Video Layout of a Conference" on page 3-48 and "Video Forcing" on page 3-50.

- 11** Modify the *Personal Layout* and *Video Forcing* settings for the participant.
- 12 Optional.** Click the **Information** tab.

The *New Participant* – *Information* tab opens.



The screenshot shows a window titled "New Participant" with a red title bar. On the left is a sidebar with four tabs: "General", "Advanced", "Media Sources", and "Information". The "Information" tab is selected and circled in blue. The main area of the dialog is light blue and contains the following fields:

- Name:** A text input field.
- Endpoint Website:** A text input field with a blue hyperlink icon to its left.
- Info 1:** A text input field.
- Info 2:** A text input field.
- Info 3:** A text input field.
- Info 4:** A text input field.

At the bottom right of the dialog, there are three buttons: "Add to Address Book", "OK", and "Cancel".

For a full description of the *Information* fields see the *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide*, "Information Tab" on page **3-23**.

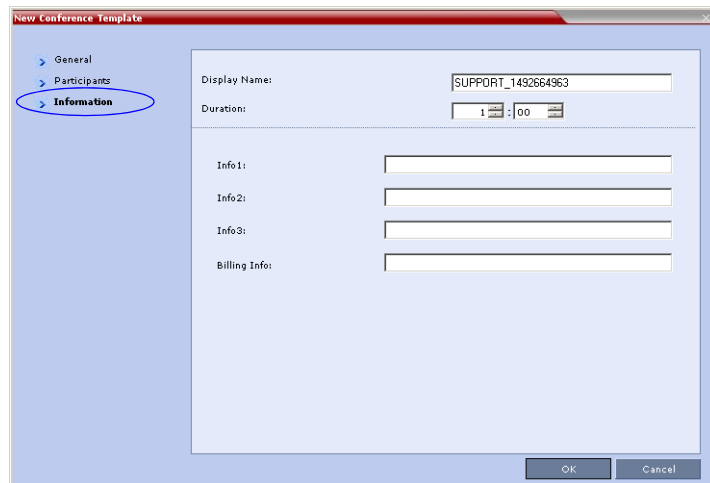
- 13** Click the **OK** button.

The participant you have defined is added to the *Participants List*.

The *New Participant* dialog box closes and you are returned to the *New Template – Participant* dialog box (which has remained open since Step 6).

- 14** **Optional:** In the *New Conference Template* dialog box, click the **Information** tab.

The *New Conference Template – Information* tab opens.

The screenshot shows a window titled "New Conference Template" with a light blue background. On the left, there is a vertical sidebar with three tabs: "General", "Participants", and "Information". The "Information" tab is selected and highlighted with a blue oval. The main area of the window contains several input fields. At the top, there is a "Display Name:" label followed by a text box containing "SUPPORT_1432664963". Below this is a "Duration:" label followed by a time selection control showing "1 : 00". Further down, there are four labels: "Info1:", "Info2:", "Info3:", and "Billing Info:", each followed by a corresponding empty text box. At the bottom right of the window, there are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

For a full description of the *Information* fields see the *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide*, "Information Tab" on page [3-23](#).

- 15** Click the **OK** button.


The *New Conference Template* is created and its name is added to the *Conference Templates* list.

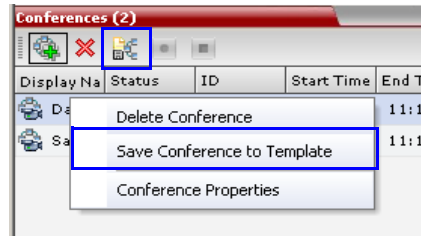
Saving an Ongoing Conference as a Template

Any conference that is ongoing can be saved as a template.

To save an ongoing conference as a template:

- 1** In the *Conferences List*, select the conference you want to save as a Template.

- 2** Click the **Save Conference to Template** () button.
or
Right-click and select **Save Conference to Template**.



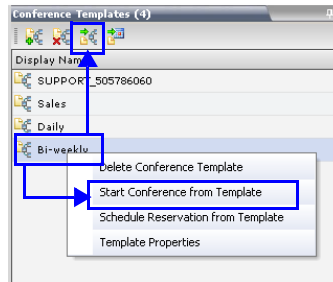
The conference is saved to a template whose name is taken from the ongoing conference *Display Name*.

Starting an Ongoing Conference From a Template

An ongoing conference can be started from any Template saved in the *Conference Templates* list.

To start an ongoing conference from a Template:

- 1** In the *Conference Templates* list, select the Template you want to start as an ongoing conference.
- 2** Click the **Start Conference from Template** (🔗) button.
or
Right-click and select **Start Conference from Template**.



The conference is started.

The name of the ongoing conference in the *Conferences* list is taken from the Conference Template *Display Name*.

Participants that are connected to other ongoing conferences when the template becomes an ongoing conference are not connected.



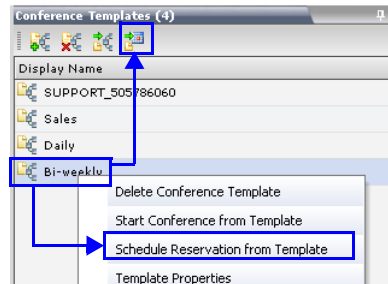
If an ongoing conference, Meeting Room or Entry Queue with the same *Display Name*, *Routing Name* or *ID* already exist in the system, the conference will not be started.

Scheduling a Reservation From a Conference Template

A *Conference Template* can be used to schedule a single or recurring *Reservation*.

To schedule a Reservation from a Conference Template:

- 1** In the *Conference Templates* list, select the Conference Template you want to schedule as a Reservation.
- 2** Click the **Schedule Reservation from Template** (📅) button.
or
Right-click and select **Schedule Reservation from Template**.



The *Reservation Properties* dialog box is displayed.

The *Display Name* of the *Reservation* is taken from the *Conference Template Display Name*.

Conference Template and Reservation Name

The screenshot shows the 'New Reservation' dialog box. The 'Display Name' field is highlighted with a blue circle and a blue arrow pointing to it from the caption above. The dialog includes fields for Duration, Start Time, End Time, and a section for Recurring Meeting with options for Pattern, Recurrence, and End Date.

For a full description of the *Reservation Properties* fields see "*New Reservation – Schedule Tab*" on page [1-30](#).

- 3** Modify the fields of the *Reservation Properties*.
- 4** Click the **OK** button.

A *Reservation* is created based on the *Conference Template*. The *Reservation* can be viewed and modified along with all other *Reservations* using the *Reservations - Calendar View* and *Reservations List*.

If you create a recurring reservation all occurrences have the same ID. The series number (_0000n) of each reservation is appended to its *Display Name*.

Example:

*Conference Template name:*Sales

Display Name for single scheduled occurrence: Sales

If 3 recurrences of the reservation are created:

Display Name for occurrence 1: Sales_00001

Display Name for occurrence 2: Sales_00002

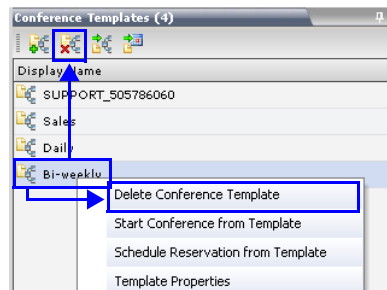
Display Name for occurrence 3: Sales_00003

Deleting a Conference Template

One or several *Conference Templates* can be deleted at a time.

To delete Conference Templates:

- 1 In the *Conference Templates* list, select the *Template(s)* you want to delete.
- 2 Click the **Delete Conference Template** (🗑️) button.
or
Right-click and select **Delete Conference Template**.



A confirmation dialog box is displayed.

- 3 Click the **OK** button to delete the *Conference Template(s)*.

Conference and Participant Monitoring

You can monitor ongoing conferences and perform various operations while conferences are running.

Three levels of monitoring are available with the RMX:

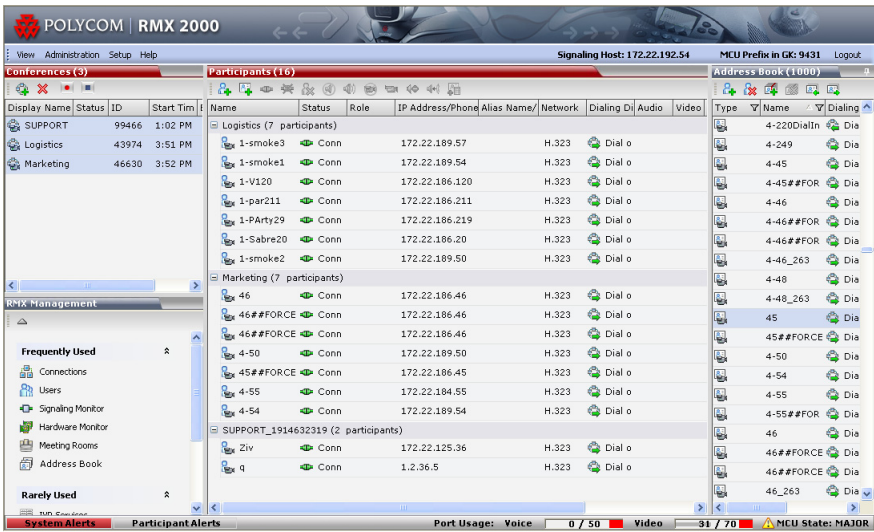
- *General Monitoring* - You can monitor the general status of all ongoing conferences and their participants in the main window.
- *Conference Level Monitoring* - You can view additional information regarding a specific conference and modify its parameters if required, using the *Conference Properties* option.
- *Participant Level Monitoring* - You can view detailed information on the participant's status, using the *Participant Properties* option.

In MPM mode, the maximum number of participants (voice and video) that can connect to a conference is 80.

In MPM+ mode, the maximum number of participants that can connect to a conference is 200. Of these, 80 can be video participants.

General Monitoring

Users can monitor a conference or keep track of its participants and progress. For more information, see *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide*, "Monitoring Ongoing Conferences" on page 3-37.



You can click the blinking **Participants Alerts** indication bar to view participants that require attention. For more information, see "System and Participant Alerts" on page 14-6.

Conference Level Monitoring

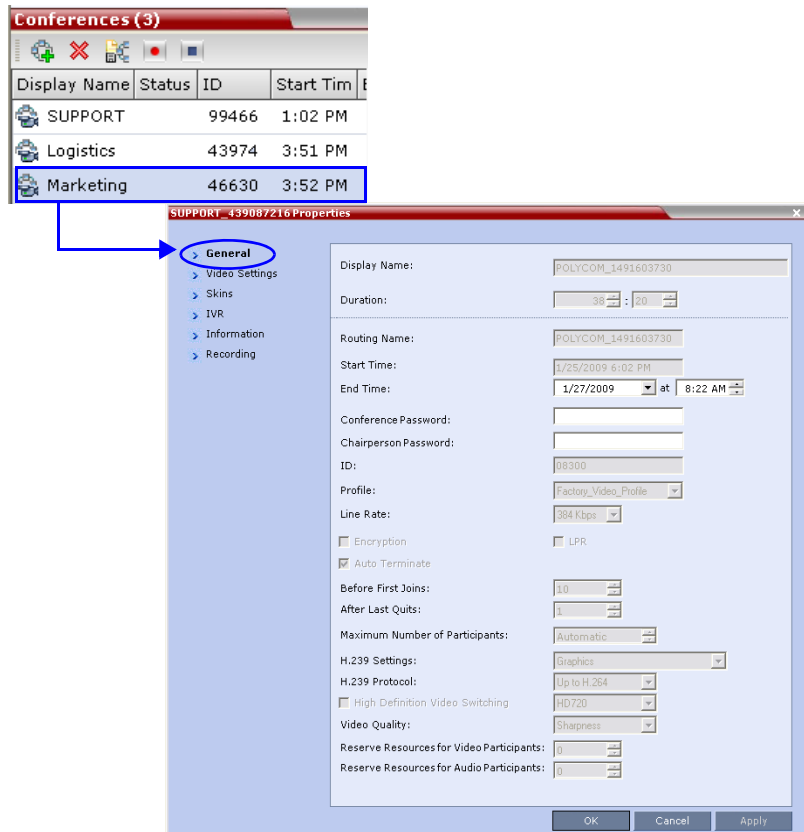
In addition to the general conference information that appears in the *Conference* list pane, you can view the details of the conference's current status and setup parameters, using the *Conference Properties* dialog box.

To view the parameters of an ongoing conference:

- 1 In the *Conference* list pane, double-click the conference or right-click the conference and then click **Conference Properties**.

The *Conference Properties - General* dialog box with the **General** tab opens.

Viewing Permissions			
Tab	Chairperson	Operator	Administrator
General	✓	✓	✓



The following information appears in the *General* tab:

Table 7-1 *Conference Properties - General*

Field	Description
<i>Display Name</i>	The Display Name is the conference name in native language and Unicode character sets to be displayed in the RMX Web Client. Note: This field is displayed in all tabs.
<i>Duration</i>	The expected duration of the conference using the format HH:MM. Note: This field is displayed in all tabs.
<i>Routing Name</i>	The ASCII name of the conference. It can be used by H.323 and SIP participants for dialing in directly to the conference. It is used to register the conference in the gatekeeper and the SIP server.
<i>Start Time</i>	The time the conference started.
<i>End Time</i>	The expected conference end time.
<i>Conference Password</i>	A numeric password for participants to access the conference.
<i>Chairperson Password</i>	A numeric password used by participants to identify themselves as the conference chairperson.
<i>ID</i>	The conference ID.
<i>Profile</i>	The name of the conference Profile from which conference parameters were taken.
<i>Line Rate</i>	The maximum transfer rate, in kilobytes per second (Kbps) of the call (video and audio streams).
<i>Encryption</i>	Indicates whether the conference is encrypted.
<i>LPR</i>	Indicates whether LPR is enabled.
<i>Auto Terminate</i>	When this box is selected, the MCU will automatically terminate the conference when <i>Before First Joins</i> and <i>After Last Quits</i> parameters apply.

Table 7-1 Conference Properties - General (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Max Number of Participants</i>	Indicates the total number of participants that can be connected to the conference. The Automatic setting indicates the maximum number of participants that can be connected to the MCU according to resource availability. Irrespective of resource availability, the maximum number of video participants is 80.
<i>H.239 Settings</i>	Indicates the Content channel resolution set for the conference. Possible resolutions are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Graphics – default mode • Hi-res Graphics – requiring a higher bit rate • Live Video – content channel is live video
<i>H.239 Protocol</i>	<p>H.263 – Content is shared using <i>H.263</i> even if some endpoints have <i>H.264</i> capability.</p> <p>Up to H.264 – <i>H.264</i> is the default Content sharing algorithm.</p> <p>When selected:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Content is shared using <i>H.264</i> if all endpoints have <i>H.264</i> capability. • Content is shared using <i>H.263</i> if all endpoints do not have <i>H.264</i> capability. • Endpoints that do not have at least <i>H.263</i> capability can connect to the conference but cannot share Content.

Table 7-1 Conference Properties - General (Continued)

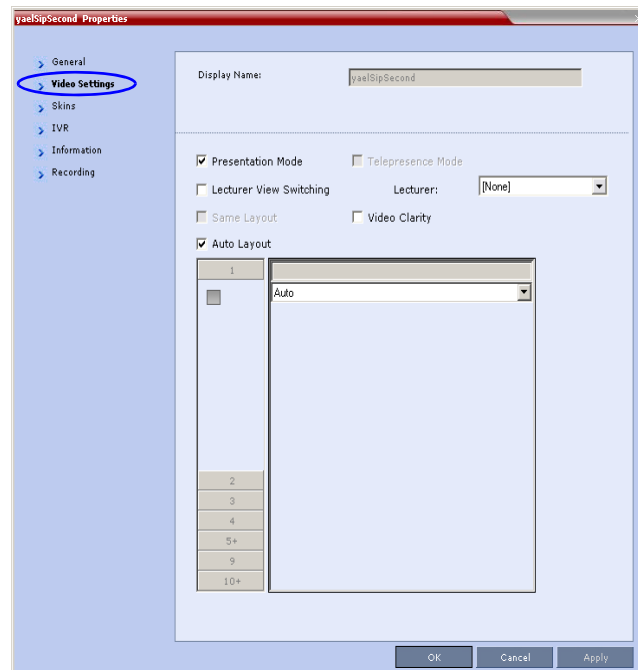
Field	Description
<i>High Definition Video Switching</i>	<p>When selected, the conference is ultra-high quality video resolution, in a special conferencing mode which implies that all participants must connect at the same line rate and use HD video.</p> <p>This feature utilizes the resources more wisely and efficiently by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Saving utilization of video ports (1 port per participant as opposed to 4 ports in CP mode). • Video display is in full screen mode only. <p>Drawbacks of this feature are that all participants must connect at the same line rate, (e.g. HD) and all participants with endpoints not supporting HD will connect as secondary (audio only).</p> <p>Video layout changes are not enabled during a conference.</p> <p>High Definition Video Switching supports the following resolutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HD 720p • HD 1080p (in MPM+ mode) <p>If HD 1080p is selected, endpoints that do not support HD 1080p resolution are connected as Secondary (Audio Only) participants.</p> <p>Note: High Definition Video Switching conferencing mode is unavailable to ISDN participants.</p> <p>For more information, see "<i>Video Resolutions in CP</i>" on page 8-3.</p>
<i>Video Quality</i>	<p>Indicates the resolution and frame rate that determine the video quality set for the conference. Possible settings are: Motion or Sharpness. For more information, see "<i>Video Resolutions in CP</i>" on page 8-3.</p>
<i>Reserve Resources for Video Participants</i>	<p>Enter the number of video participants for which the system must reserve resources.</p> <p>Default: 0 participants.</p> <p>Maximum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MPM Mode: 80 participants. • MPM+ Mode: 80 participants.

Table 7-1 Conference Properties - General (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Reserve Resources for Audio Participants</i>	<p>Enter the number of audio participants for which the system must reserve resources.</p> <p>Default: 0 participants.</p> <p>Maximum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MPM Mode: 80 participants. MPM+ Mode: 120 participants.

Click the **Video Settings** tab to list the video parameters.

Viewing Permissions			
Tab	Chairperson	Operator	Administrator
Video Settings	✓	✓	✓

**Table 7-2** Conference Properties - Video Settings Parameters

Field	Description
<i>Presentation Mode</i>	When checked, indicates that the Presentations Mode is active. For more information, see "Presentation Mode" on page 1-13.

Table 7-2 Conference Properties - Video Settings Parameters (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Lecturer View Switching</i>	When checked, the <i>Lecturer View Switching</i> enables automatic random switching between the conference participants in the lecturer video window.
<i>Same Layout</i>	When checked, forces the selected layout on all conference participants, and the Personal Layout option is disabled.
<i>Auto Layout</i>	When enabled, the system automatically selects the conference layout based on the number of participants in the conference.
<i>Telepresence Mode</i>	Indicates if the conference is running in Telepresence Mode.
<i>Lecturer</i>	Indicates the name of the lecturer (if one is selected). Selecting a lecturer enables the Lecture Mode.
<i>Video Clarity™</i>	<p>Select this option to enable Video Clarity. Video Clarity applies video enhancing algorithms to incoming video streams of resolutions up to and including SD. Clearer images with sharper edges and higher contrast are sent back to all endpoints at the highest possible resolution supported by each endpoint.</p> <p>All layouts, including 1x1, are supported.</p> <p>Video Clarity can only be enabled for Continuous Presence conferences in MPM+ Card Configuration Mode.</p>
<i>Video Layouts (graphic)</i>	Indicates the currently selected video layout.

Viewing Permissions			
Tab	Chairperson	Operator	Administrator
Skins	✓	✓	✓
IVR		✓	✓
Info	✓	✓	✓

- 2** Click the **Skins** tab to view the skin selected for the conference.
You cannot select another skin during an ongoing conference.
- 3** Click the **IVR** tab to view the IVR settings.
- 4** Click the **Information** tab to view general information defined for the conference. Changes made to this information once the conference is running are not saved to the CDR.
- 5** Click the **Recording** tab to review the recording settings for the conference.
- 6** Click **OK** to close the *Conference Properties* dialog box.

Participant Level Monitoring

In addition to conference information, you can view detailed information regarding the status and parameters of each listed participant, using the *Participant Properties* dialog box. Participant properties can be displayed for all participants currently connected to a conference and for defined participants that have been disconnected.



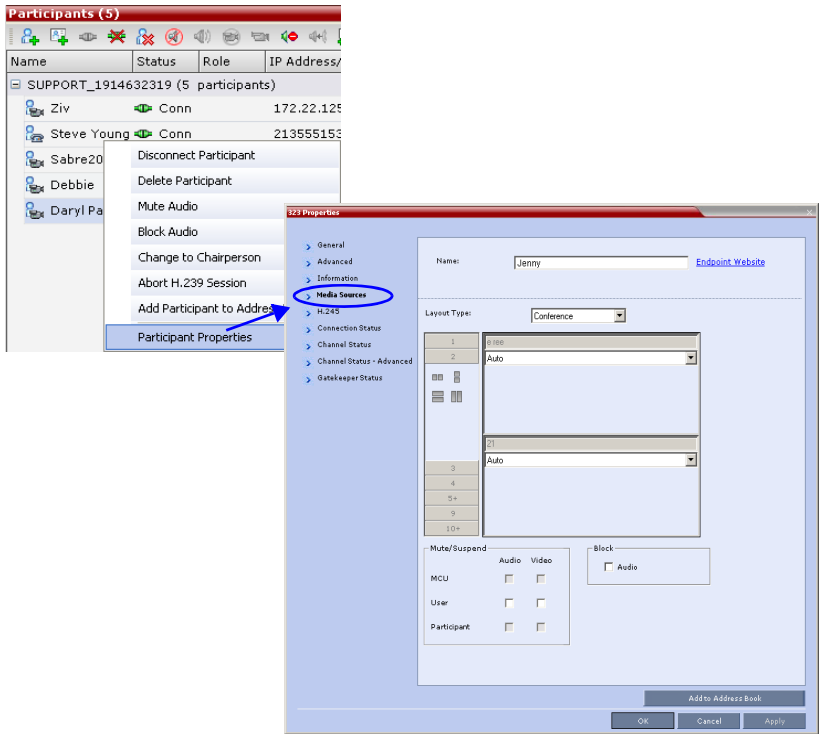
Properties differ for IP and ISDN/PSTN participants.

Displaying Participants Properties:

- 1 In the *Participant List* pane double-click the participant entry. Alternatively, right-click a participant and then click **Participant Properties**.

The *Participant Properties - Media Sources* dialog box opens.

Viewing Permissions			
Tab	Chairperson	Operator	Administrator
Media Sources	✓	✓	✓



The *Media Sources* dialog box enables you to mute participant's audio, suspend participant's video transmission and select a personal Video Layout for the participant.



For ISDN/PSTN participants, only the following tabs are displayed in the *Participant Properties* dialog box:

- General, Advanced, Information
- Media Sources
- Connection Status
- Channel Status

The *General*, *Advanced* and *Information* tabs include the same properties for new and defined participants. For more information, see "Adding a new participant to the Address Book Directly" on page 4-4.

IP Participant Properties

Table 7-3 Participant Properties - Media Sources Parameters

Field	Description
<i>Name</i>	Indicates the participant's name. Note: This field is displayed in all tabs.
<i>Endpoint Website</i>	Click the Endpoint Website hyperlink to connect to the internal website of the participant's endpoint. It enables you to perform administrative, configuration and troubleshooting activities on the endpoint. The connection is available only if the IP address of the endpoint's internal site is filled in the <i>Website IP Address</i> field in the <i>Participant Properties - General</i> dialog box. Note: This field is displayed in all tabs (excluding ISDN/PSTN participants).
<i>Layout Type</i>	Indicates whether the video layout currently viewed by the participant is the Conference or Personal Layout. If <i>Personal Layout</i> is selected, you can select a Video Layout that will be viewed only by this participant.

Table 7-3 Participant Properties - Media Sources Parameters (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Video Layout</i>	Indicates the video layout currently viewed by the participant. When <i>Personal Layout</i> is selected in the <i>Layout Type</i> you can force participants to the video windows in a layout that is specific to the participant. For more information, see <i>RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide</i> , "Personal Layout Control with the RMX Web Client" on page 3-56.
<i>Mute/Suspend</i>	Indicates if the endpoint's audio and/or video channels from the endpoint have been muted/suspended. The entity that initiated audio mute or video suspend is also indicated. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MCU – Audio or Video channel has been muted/suspended by the MCU. • User – Channels have been muted/suspended by the RMX user. • Participant – Channels have been muted/suspended by the participant from the endpoint. You can also cancel or perform mute and suspend operation using these check boxes.
<i>Block</i>	When checked, the audio transmission from the conference to the participant's endpoint is blocked, but the participant will still be heard by other participants.

- 2 Click the **Connection Status** tab to view the connection status, and if disconnected the cause of the disconnection.

Viewing Permissions			
Tab	Chairperson	Operator	Administrator
Connection Status	✓	✓	✓

Table 7-4 Participant Properties - Connection Status Parameters

Field	Description
Participant Status	
<i>Status</i>	Indicates the connection status of the participant.
<i>Connection Time</i>	The date and time the participant connected to the conference. Note: The time format is derived from the MCU's operating system time format.
<i>Disconnection Time</i>	The date and time the defined participant disconnected from the conference.
<i>Connection Retries Left</i>	Indicates the number of retries left for the system to connect defined participant to the conference.

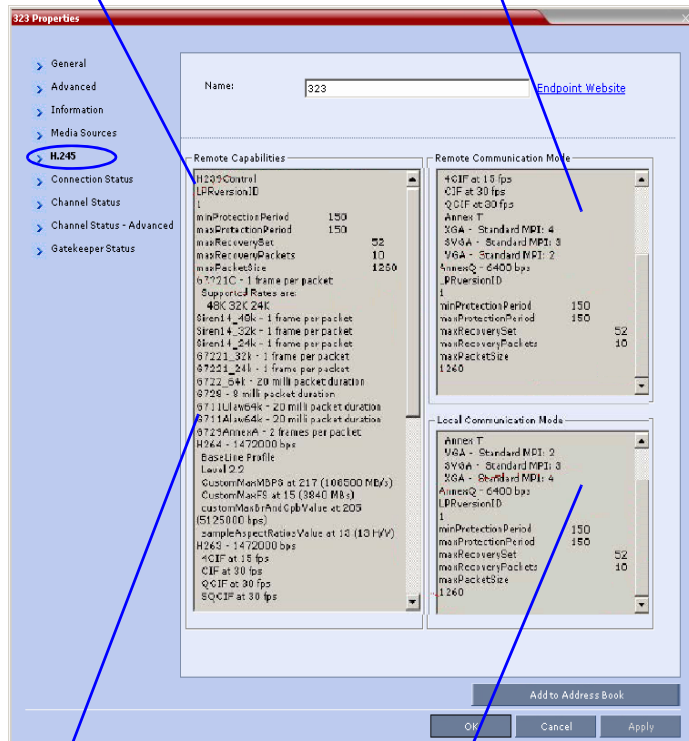
Table 7-4 *Participant Properties - Connection Status Parameters (Continued)*

Field	Description
<i>Call Disconnection Cause</i>	Displays the cause for the defined participant's disconnection from the conference. See <i>Appendix A: "Disconnection Causes"</i> on page A-1 .
<i>Video Disconnection Cause</i>	Displays the cause the video channel could not be connected. For more information, see <i>Appendix A: "Disconnection Causes"</i> on page A-1 .
<i>Possible Solution</i>	In some cases, a possible solution is indicated to the cause of the video disconnection.

- 3 Click the **H.245** (H.323) or **SDP** (SIP) tab during or after the participant's connection process to view information that can help in resolving connection issues.

*LPR activity
(Displayed in all three panes)*

*Displays the endpoint's actual
capabilities used for the connection*



*List's the endpoint's capabilities as
retrieved from the remote site*

*Displays the MCU's capabilities used for
connection with the participant*

Table 7-5 Participant Properties - H.245/SDP Parameters

Field	Description
<i>Remote Capabilities</i>	Lists the participant's capabilities as declared by the endpoint.

Table 7-5 Participant Properties - H.245/SDP Parameters (Continued)

Field	Description
Remote Communication Mode	Displays the actual capabilities used by the endpoint when establishing the connection with the MCU (Endpoint to MCU).
Local Communication Mode	Displays the actual capabilities used by the MCU when establishing the connection with the participant's endpoint (MCU to Endpoint).

- 4 Click on the **Channel Status** tab to view the status of the various channels.

Viewing Permissions			
Tab	Chairperson	Operator	Administrator
Channel Status		✓	✓

55 Properties

> General
> Advanced
> Information
> Media Sources
> H.245
> Connection Status
 Channel Status
 > Channel Status - Adva...
 > Gatekeeper Status

Name: 55 [Endpoint Website](#)

Channels Used:

Channel	Faulty	Bit Rate	Packet Lo	Fraction L	Jitter (Pe	Packets N	Latenc
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> H.225							
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> H.245							
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Audio in		48.0	7777	0.00%(	2(55)	214748	1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Audio out		48.0	0	0.00%(	3(55)	0	1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Video in		15.5	0	0.00%(	3(22)	0	7
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Video out		37,026.	0	0.00%(	4(27)	0	5
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Content in		0.0	0	0.00%(	0(0)	0	0
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Content out		0.0	0	0.00%(	0(0)	0	0
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FECC in		24,688.	0	0.00%(	4(72)	0	3
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FECC out		37,026.	0	0.00%(	4(72)	0	3

Sync Status:

Channel	Source	Position	Protocol Sync Loss	Video Intra Sync	Video Re
Video	55		<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/>	

	Rate	Video Sync Loss	LPR activation
Tx	384000	<input type="checkbox"/> (1)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Rx	368000	<input type="checkbox"/> (0)	<input type="checkbox"/>

☐ FECC Token ☐ Content Token

[Add to Address Book](#)

OK Cancel Apply

Table 7-6 Participant Properties - Channel Status Parameters

Field	Description
<i>Channels Used</i>	<p>When checked, indicates the channel type used by the participant to connect to the conference: Incoming channels are endpoint to MCU, Outgoing channels are from MCU to endpoint.</p> <p><u>Channels:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>H.225/Signaling</i> - The call-signaling channel. • <i>H.245/SDP</i> - The Control channel. • <i>Audio in</i> - Incoming audio channel • <i>Audio out</i> - Outgoing audio channel • <i>Video in</i> - Incoming video channel • <i>Video out</i> - Outgoing video channel • <i>Content in</i> - H.239/People+Content conferences • <i>Content out</i> - H.239/People+Content conferences • <i>FECC in</i> - The incoming FECC channel is open. • <i>FECC out</i> - The outgoing FECC channel is open. <p><u>Columns:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Faulty – A red exclamation point indicates a faulty channel condition. This is a real-time indication; when resolved the indication disappears. An exclamation point indicates that further investigation may be required using additional parameters displayed in the <i>Advanced Channel Status</i> tab. • Bit Rate – The actual transfer rate for the channel. • Packet Loss – The accumulated count of all packets that are missing according to the RTCP report since the channel was opened. This field is relevant only during the connection stage and does not display faulty indications. • Fraction Loss (Peak) – The ratio between the number of lost packets and the total number of transmitted packets since the last RTCP report. <i>Peak</i> (in parentheses) indicates the highest ratio recorded since the channel was opened.

Table 7-6 Participant Properties - Channel Status Parameters (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Channels Used (cont.)</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Number of Packets – The number of received or transmitted packets since the channel has opened. This field does not cause the display of the faulty indicator. • Jitter (Peak) – Displays the network jitter (the deviation in time between the packets) as reported in the last RTCP report (in milliseconds). <i>Peak</i> (in parentheses) reflects the maximum network jitter since the channel was opened. • Latency – Indicates the time it takes a packet to travel from one end to another in milliseconds (derived from the RTCP report).
<i>Sync Status</i>	<p>Channel - The channel type: Video or Content.</p> <p>Source - The name of the participant currently viewed by this participant.</p> <p>Position - The video layout position indicating the place of each participant as they appear in a conference.</p> <p>Protocol Sync Loss - Indicates whether the system was able to synchronize the bits order according to the selected video protocol.</p> <p>Video Intra Sync - Indicates whether the synchronization on a video Intra frame was successful.</p> <p>Video Resolution - The video resolution of the participant.</p>
<i>Rx - Rate</i>	The received line rate.
<i>Tx - Rate</i>	The transmitted line rate.
<i>Tx - Video Sync Loss</i>	When checked, indicates a video synchronization problem in the outgoing channel from the MCU. The counter indicates the sync-loss count.
<i>Rx - Video Sync Loss</i>	When checked, indicates a video synchronization problem in the incoming channel from the endpoint. The counter indicates the sync-loss count.

Table 7-6 Participant Properties - Channel Status Parameters (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Tx - LPR Activation</i>	When checked, indicates LPR activation in the outgoing channel.
<i>Rx - LPR Activation</i>	When checked, indicates LPR activation in the incoming channel.
<i>FECC Token</i>	When checked, indicates that the participant is the holder of the FECC Token.
<i>Content Token</i>	When checked, indicates that the participant is the holder of the Content Token.

- 5 Click the **Channel Status Advanced** tab to view additional information for selected audio and video channels.

323 Properties

General
Advanced
Information
Media Sources
H.245
Connection Status
Channel Status
Channel Status - Advan...
Gatekeeper Status

Name: [Endpoint Website](#)

Channel Info:

RMX IP Address:

Participant IP Address:

Media Info:

Field	Value
Algorithm	H.264
Resolution	525 SD
Frame Rate	0
Annexes	

RTP Statistics:

	N - Accum	% - Accum	N - Interval	% - Interval	Peak - Interval
RTP pac					
ActualL	8	7.41	2	0.99	3
OutOf	9	9.00	2	1.00	2
Frame	6	6.00	3	1.50	2
Jitter Me					
Jitter Buf		1	0.50		1

[Add to Address Book](#)

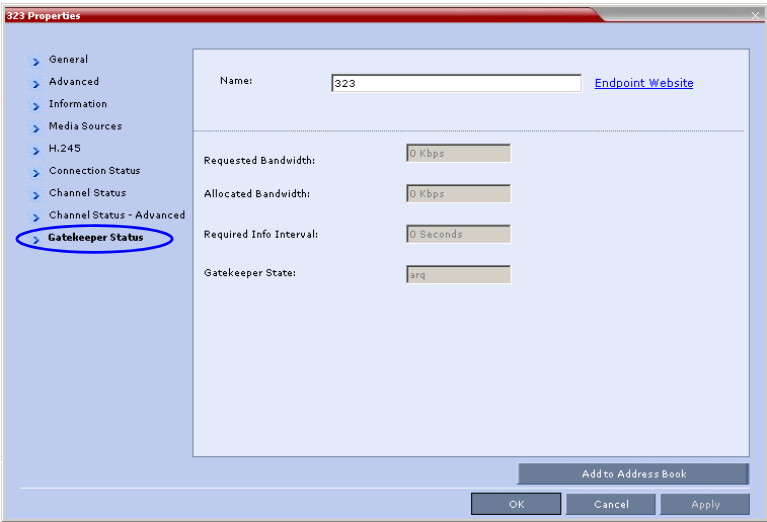
OK Cancel Apply

Viewing Permissions			
Tab	Chairperson	Operator	Administrator
Channel Status Advanced			✓

Table 7-7 Participant Properties - Channel Status Advanced Parameters

Field	Description
Channel Info	Select a channel to view its information.
MCU Address	The IP address of the MCU to which the participant is connected and the port number allocated to the participant incoming media stream on the MCU side.
Party Address	The IP address of the participant and the port number allocated to the media stream on the participant side.
Media Info	This table provides information about the audio and video parameters, such as video algorithm, resolution, etc.... For more information, see <i>Appendix E: "Participant Properties Advanced Channel Information"</i> on page F-1 .
RTP Statistics	This information may indicate problems with the network which can affect the audio and video quality. For more information, see <i>Appendix E: "Participant Properties Advanced Channel Information"</i> on page F-1 .

6 Click the **Gatekeeper Status** tab to view its parameters.



Viewing Permissions			
Tab	Chairperson	Operator	Administrator
Gatekeeper Status	✓	✓	✓

Table 7-8 Participant Properties - Gatekeeper Status Parameters

Field	Description
<i>Requested Bandwidth</i>	The bandwidth requested by the MCU from the gatekeeper.
<i>Allocated Bandwidth</i>	The actual bandwidth allocated by the gatekeeper to the MCU.
<i>Required Info Interval</i>	Indicates the interval, in seconds, between registration messages that the MCU sends to the gatekeeper to indicate that it is still connected.
<i>Gatekeeper State</i>	<p>Indicates the status of the participant's registration with the gatekeeper and the bandwidth allocated to the participant. The following statuses may be displayed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ARQ – Admission Request - indicates that the participant has requested the gatekeeper to allocate the required bandwidth on the LAN. • Admitted – indicates that the gatekeeper has allocated the required bandwidth to the participant. • DRQ – Disengage Request – the endpoint informs the gatekeeper that the connection to the conference is terminated and requests to disconnect the call and free the resources. • None – indicates that there is no connection to the gatekeeper.

Monitoring ISDN/PSTN Participants

Using the *Participant Properties* dialog box, you can monitor and verify the properties of an ISDN/PSTN participant. The dialog box’s tabs contain information that is relevant to the participant’s status only while the conference is running and is used to monitor the participant’s status when connection problems occur.

- Table 7-9 lists the audio algorithms that are supported for ISDN participants according to their connection bit rate:

Table 7-9 *Supported Audio Algorithms vs Bit Rate*

	Bit Rate		
	96Kbps (and Lower)	128Kbps – 192Kbps	256Kbps (and Higher)
Audio Algorithm	G722.1 16K	G722.1 C 32K	G722.1 C 48K
	G722.1 C 24K	G722.1 C 24K	G722.1 C 32K
	Siren14 24K	Siren14 32K	G722.1 C 24K
	G722 48K	Siren14 24K	Siren14 48K
	G722 56K	G722.1 32K	Siren14 32K
	G722 64K	G722.1 24K	Siren14 24K
	G711 56K	G722 48K	G722.1 32K
	G711 64K	G722 56K	G722.1 24K
		G722 64K	G722.1 16K
		G711 56K	G722 48K
		G711 64K	G722 56K
			G722 64K
			G711 56K
			G711 64K

To view the participant's properties during a conference:

- 1 In the *Participants* list, right click the desired participant and select **Participant Properties**.

The *Participant Properties - Media Sources* dialog box is displayed.

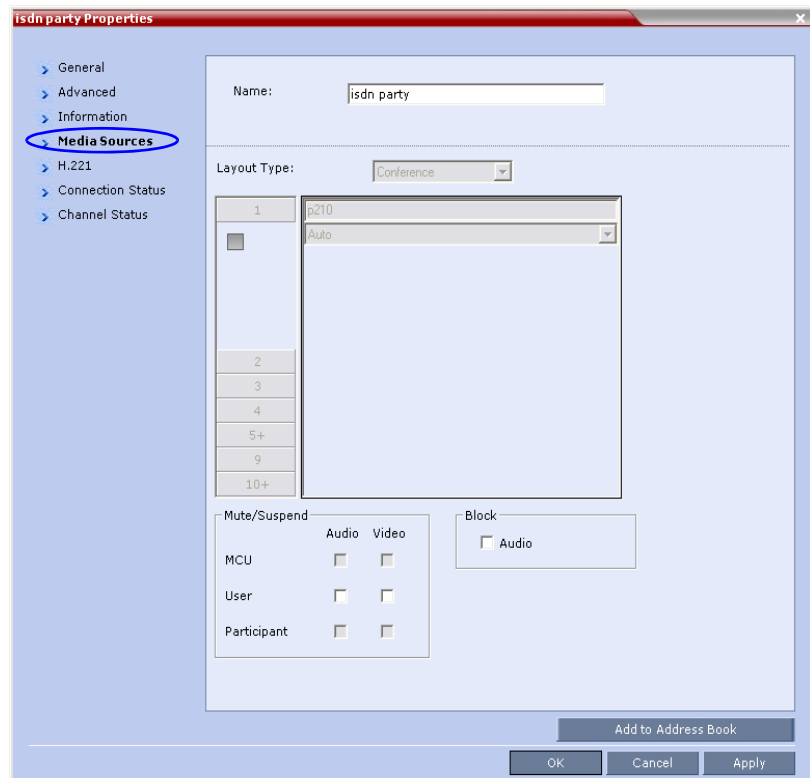


Table 7-10 ISDN/PSTN Participant Properties - Media Sources

Field	Description
<i>Mute/Suspend</i>	Indicates if the endpoint's audio and/or video channels from the endpoint have been muted/suspended.

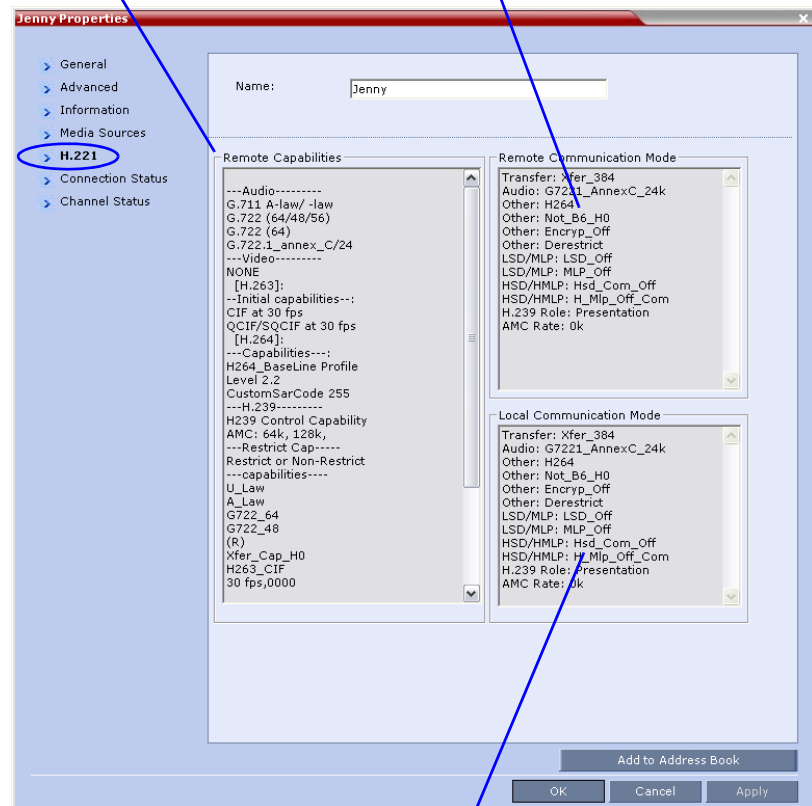
Table 7-10 ISDN/PSTN Participant Properties - Media Sources (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Mute/Suspend (cont.)</i>	<p>The entity that initiated audio mute or video suspend is also indicated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• MCU – Audio or Video channel has been muted/suspended by the MCU.• User – Channels have been muted/suspended by the RMX user.• Participant – Channels have been muted/suspended by the participant from the endpoint. <p>You can also cancel or perform mute and suspend operation using these check boxes.</p>
<i>Block (Audio)</i>	<p>When checked, the audio transmission from the conference to the participant's endpoint is blocked, but the participant will still be heard by other participants.</p>

- 2 Click the **H.221** tab to view additional information that can help to resolve connection issues.

List's the endpoint's capabilities as retrieved from the remote site

Displays the endpoint's actual capabilities used for the connection



Displays the MCU's capabilities used for connection with the participant

Table 7-11 Participant Properties - H.221 Parameters

Field	Description
<i>Remote Capabilities</i>	Lists the participant's capabilities as declared by the endpoint.

Table 7-11 Participant Properties - H.221 Parameters (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Remote Communication Mode</i>	Displays the actual capabilities used by the endpoint when establishing the connection with the MCU (Endpoint to MCU).
<i>Local Communication Mode</i>	Displays the actual capabilities used by the MCU when establishing the connection with the participant's endpoint (MCU to Endpoint).

- 3** Click the **Connection Status** tab to view general information regarding the participant connection and disconnection causes of the participant to the conference.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "vasily-isdn-empty Properties". On the left is a sidebar with a tree view containing the following items: General, Advanced, Information, Media Sources, H.221, **Connection Status** (which is circled in blue), and Channel Status. The main content area on the right is for the "Connection Status" tab. It contains the following fields and values:

- Name: Jenny
- Status: Connected
- Connection Time: 6/26/2008 3:33 PM
- Disconnection Time: (empty field)
- Connection Retries Left: 0
- Call Disconnection Cause: (empty text area)
- Video Disconnection Cause: (empty text area)
- Possible Solution: (empty text area)

At the bottom right of the window are four buttons: "Add to Address Book", "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Table 7-12 ISDN/PSTN Participant Properties - Connection Status

Field	Description
<i>Status</i>	Indicates the connection status of the participant to the conference. If there is a problem, the appropriate status appears, for example, Disconnected.
<i>Connection Time</i>	The date and time the participant connected to the conference.
<i>Disconnection Time</i>	The date and time the participant was disconnected from the conference.
<i>Connection Retries Left</i>	Indicates the number of retries left for the system to connect the participant to the conference.
<i>Call Disconnection Cause</i>	For a full list of <i>Disconnection Causes</i> , see “ISDN Disconnection Causes.” on page A-10 .

- 4 Click the **Channel Status** tab to view the status of a participant's channels.

Vasily-isdn-empty Properties

> General
> Advanced
> Information
> Media Sources
> H.221
> Connection Status
> Channel Status

Name:

Connected Media:
☒ Audio ☒ Video ☒ Content

Channels Used:

Channel	Participant Phone Number	MCU Phone Number
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1	555512345	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2	551001100	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3	551001100	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 4	551001100	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 5	551001100	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 6	551001100	

Sync Status:

Channel	Source	Position	Protocol Sync Loss	Video Intra Sync	Video Resolution

	Sync Loss	Video Sync Loss
Tx	<input type="checkbox"/> (0)	<input type="checkbox"/> (1)
Rx	<input type="checkbox"/> (0)	<input type="checkbox"/> (0)

☐ Content Token

Add to Address Book

OK Cancel Apply

Table 7-13 ISDN/PSTN Participant Properties - Channel Status

Field	Description
Connected Media	Indicates if the participant is connected with Audio, Video and Content media channels.

Table 7-13 ISDN/PSTN Participant Properties - Channel Status

Field	Description
<i>Channels Used</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Channel – Indicates the channel used by the participants and whether the channel is connected (indicated with a check mark) or disconnected. • Participant Phone Number – In a dial-in connection, indicates the participant's CLI (Calling Line Identification) as identified by the MCU. In a dial-out connection, indicates the participant's phone number dialed by the MCU for each channel. • MCU Phone Number – In a dial-in connection, indicates the MCU number dialed by the participant. In a dial-out connection, indicates the MCU (CLI) number as seen by the participant. This is the number entered in the MCU Number field in the Network Service.
<i>Tx - Video Sync Loss</i>	When checked, indicates a video synchronization problem in the outgoing channel from the MCU. The counter indicates the sync-loss count.
<i>Rx - Video Sync Loss</i>	When checked, indicates a video synchronization problem in the incoming channel from the endpoint. The counter indicates the sync-loss count.
<i>Content Token</i>	A check mark indicates that the participant is the current holder of the Content Token.

The *Connected Media* and *Channels Used* fields of an *Audio Only* participant are displayed as follows:

*Audio is the only
Connected
Media*

*Single channel
is used*

Connected Media:

☒ Audio

☐ Video

☐ Content

Channels Used:

Channel	Participant Phone Number	MCU Phone Number
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1	5555898989	

Additional Conferencing Information

Various conferencing modes and video features require additional settings, such as system flag settings, conference parameters and other settings. In depth explanations of these additional settings are described in the following sections.

The RMX can function with two types of video Media Processing Modules (MPM): MPM and MPM+. These cards differ in their port capacity and their support of video resolutions. In addition to all video modes and features supported by MPM cards, MPM+ cards support additional video resolutions and video quality enhancement such as Video Clarity™.

Video Session Modes

The RMX offers two video session modes: Continuous Presence and High Definition Video Switching. The video session type determines the video display options (full screen or split screen with all participants viewed simultaneously) and the method in which the video is processed by the MCU (with or without using the MCU's video resources).

Dynamic Continuous Presence (CP) Mode

The Continuous Presence mode offers 24 layouts to accommodate different numbers of participants and conference settings including support of the VUI annex to the H.264 protocol for endpoints that transmit wide video instead of 4CIF resolution.

For conferences with more participants than display squares, the RMX dynamic video mix capability allows the viewed sites to be modified throughout the conference. The displayed layout can be changed during an ongoing conference, allowing a participant to view different screen layouts of the other conference participants. These layout options allow conferences to have greater flexibility when displaying a large number of participants and maximizes the screen's effectiveness.

High Definition Video Switching Mode

In Video Switching mode all participants see the same video picture (full screen) and use only one CIF video resource for each connection. The current speaker is displayed in full screen on all the participants' endpoints, while the speaker sees the previous speaker. Switching between participants is voice-activated; whenever a participant starts to speak, he or she becomes the conference speaker and is viewed on all screens. All conference participants must use the same line rate and video parameters such as video protocol, frame rate, annexes and interlaced video mode as no video processing is performed. However, the *Highest Common Mechanism* enabled for the video parameters allows the system to select the best video parameters that can be supported by all the endpoints currently connected to the system, and to dynamically change them when a new endpoint joins or leaves the conference.

High Definition Video Switching is an ultra-high quality video resolution enabling compliant endpoints to connect to conferences at resolutions of 1280x720 pixels (720p) and at line rates ranging from 384kbp to 4Mbps (with MPM) and 1920 x 1080 pixels (1080p) at line rates ranging from 384kbp to 6Mbps (with MPM+).

HD Video Switching offers better video quality than HDCP and uses less system resources. The maximum conference size is 80 video participants.

Continuous Presence (CP) Conferencing

Video quality in Continuous Presence mode is affected by the conference line rate (that determines the maximum line rate to be used by the connecting endpoints), and the video capabilities of the endpoints such as the video protocol, video resolution and frame rate.

The video protocol selected by the system determines the video compression standard used by the endpoints. In Continuous Presence conferences, the system selects the best video protocol for the endpoint according to its capabilities. The following Video protocols are supported:

- **H.261** - the video compression algorithm mandatory to all endpoints. It is used by endpoints that do not support other protocols.
- **H.263** - a video compression algorithm that provides a better video quality than H.261. This standard is not supported by all endpoints.
- **H.264** - a video compression standard that offers improved video quality, especially at line rates lower than 384 Kbps.

Video Resolutions in CP

The RMX always attempts to connect to endpoints at the highest line rate. If the connection cannot be established, the RMX attempts to connect at the next highest line rate at its highest supported resolution.

The video resolution is also defined by the *Quality* settings:

- **Motion**, when selected, results lower video resolution.
- **Sharpness**, when selected, sends higher video resolution.

The combination of **frame rate** and **resolution** affects the number of ports required on the MCU to support the call

Table 8-1 Video Protocol & Resolution by Line Rate & Video Quality

Line Rate Kbps	Media Card Type			
	MPM+		MPM	
	Motion (60fps)	Sharpness	Motion (30 fps)	Sharpness
128	H.264 CIF30	H.264 CIF30	H.264 CIF30	H.264 CIF30
	H.263 CIF30	H.263 CIF30	H.263 CIF30	H.263 CIF30
	H.261 CIF30	H.261 CIF30	H.261 CIF30	H.261 CIF30
256	H.264 CIF60	H.264 WSD30	H.264 WCIF30	H.264 SD15

Table 8-1 Video Protocol & Resolution by Line Rate & Video Quality (Continued)

Line Rate Kbps	Media Card Type			
	MPM+		MPM	
	Motion (60fps)	Sharpness	Motion (30 fps)	Sharpness
256		H.264 SD15		H.263 4CIF15
		H.263 4CIF15		H.264 WCIF30
		H.264 WCIF30		
384	H.264 WCIF60	H.264 WSD30	H.264 WCIF30	H.264 SD15
512	H.264 WCIF60	H.264 WSD30	H.264 WCIF30	H.264 WSD30
768	H.264 WCIF60	H.264 WSD30	H.264 WCIF30	H.264 WSD30
1024	H.264 WSD60	H.264 HD720p30	H.264 WSD30	H.264 HD720p30
			H.264 SD30	
1472	H.264 WSD60	H.264 HD720p30	H.264 WSD30	H.264 HD720p30
1536	H.264 WSD60	H.264 HD720p30	H.264 WSD30	H.264 HD720p30
1920	H.264 HD720p60	H.264 HD720p30	H.264 HD720p30	H.264 HD720p30
4096	H.264 HD720p60	H.264 HD1080p30		

Additional Video Resolutions in MPM+ Mode

The following higher video quality resolutions are available when the RMX is working in *MPM+ Mode*:

- CIF 352 x 288 pixels at 50 fps.
- WCIF 512 x 288 pixels at 50 fps.
- WSD 848 x 480 pixels at 50 fps.
- HD 720p 1280 x 720 pixels at 60 fps.
- HD 1080p 1920 x 1080 pixels at 30 fps.

The video resolution transmitted to any endpoint is determined by the endpoint's capabilities, the conference line rate, the *Conference Profile's Motion* and *Sharpness* settings and the RMX's *Card Configuration Mode* (MPM or MPM+).

Additional Intermediate Video Resolutions

Two higher quality, intermediate video resolutions replace the transmission of CIF (352 x 288 pixels) or SIF (352 x 240 pixels) resolutions to endpoints that have capabilities between:

- **CIF** (352 x 288 pixels) and **4CIF** (704 x 576 pixels) – the resolution transmitted to these endpoints is **432 x 336** pixels.
- **SIF** (352 x 240 pixels) and **4SIF** (704 x 480 pixels) – the resolution transmitted to these endpoints is **480 x 352** pixels.

The frame rates (depending on the endpoint's capability) for both intermediate resolutions are:

- In *MPM Mode* – 25 or 30 fps.
- In *MPM+ Mode* – 50 or 60 fps.

Video Display with CIF, SD and HD Video Connections

Although any combination of CIF, SD and HD connections is supported in all CP conferences, the following rules apply:

- In a 1X1 *Video Layout*:
 - **SD**: If the speaker transmits CIF, the MCU will send CIF to all participants, including the SD participants. In any other layout the MCU will transmit to each participant at the participant's sending resolution.

- **HD:** The MCU transmits speaker resolution (including input from HD participants) at up to SD resolution. If 1x1 is the requested layout for the entire duration of the conference, set the conference to *HD Video Switching* mode.
- In asymmetrical *Video Layouts*:
 - **SD:** A participant in the large frame that sends CIF is displayed in CIF.
 - **HD:** Where participants' *video windows* are different sizes, the RMX transmits HD and receives SD or lower resolutions.
- In panoramic *Video Layouts*:
 - **SD:** Participants that send CIF also receive CIF.
 - **HD:** the RMX transmits HD and receives SD or lower resolutions, the RMX scales images from SD to HD resolution.

Setting the Maximum CP Resolution for Conferencing

The maximum CP resolution of the system is determined by the **MAX_CP_RESOLUTION** system flag. The default setting of the flag is **HD 1080**.

The flag values determine the maximum CP capability that each endpoint can declare:

Table 8-2 System Flag – MAX_CP_RESOLUTION Values

Flag Value	MPM	MPM+
	Each endpoint can declare capability up to:	
<i>HD1080</i>	HD	HD1080
<i>HD720</i>	HD	HD720
<i>HD</i>	HD	HD720
<i>SD30</i>	SD30	SD30
<i>SD15</i>	SD15	SD30
<i>CIF</i>	CIF	

For information about setting system flags, see "*System Configuration*" on page [14-10](#).

CP Conferencing with H.263 4CIF

The video resolution of 4CIF in H.263 endpoints is only supported for conferences in which the video quality is set to sharpness and for line rates of 384 Kbps to 1920 Kbps as shown in Table 8-3.

Table 8-3 Video Quality vs. Line Rate

Endpoint Line Rate Kbps	Video Quality			
	Motion		Sharpness	
	Resolution	Frame Rate	Resolution	Frame Rate
128	QCIF	30	CIF	30
256	CIF	30	CIF	30
384 - 1920+	CIF	30	4CIF	15

The RMX Web Client supports monitoring of H.263 4CIF information. The H.245 or SDP tab includes the additional information.

The creation of a new H.263 4CIF slide is supported in the IVR Service in addition to the current H.263 IVR slide. If users utilize the default Polycom slides that are delivered with RMX 2000, the slide's resolution will be as defined in the profile, i.e. SD, HD, CIF, etc.... If users create a custom IVR slide, regardless of its resolution, the slide will be displayed in CIF resolution.

H.263 4CIF Guidelines

- H.263 4CIF is supported with H.323, SIP and ISDN connection endpoints.
- H.263 4CIF is supported in CP mode only. VSW is supported on the RMX 2000 in HD only.
- Click & View is supported in H.263 4CIF.
- AES encryption is supported with H.263 4CIF.
- H.263 4CIF is supported in recording by the RSS2000 and other recording devices.
- All video layouts are supported in H.263 4CIF, except 1x1 layout. In a 1x1 layout, the resolution will be CIF.

- Port usage is the same as for any other H.263 resolution.
- H.239 is supported in all 3 resolutions and based on the same bandwidth decision matrix as for HD.

High Definition Video Switching

High Definition Video Switching enables compliant endpoints to connect to conferences at resolutions of 1280x720 pixels (720p) at line rates ranging from 384kbp to 4Mb and 1920 x 1080 pixels (1080p) at line rates ranging from 384kbp to 6Mbps (with MPM+).

HD Video Switching uses less system resources than HDCP. The supported conference size is up to 80 video participants and 120 voice participants.

High Definition Video Switching conferences require:

- All participants to have HD compliant endpoints.
- All participants to connect using the same conference line rate.



High Definition Video Switching conferencing mode is unavailable to ISDN participants.

HD VSW Guidelines

- The display aspect ratio is 4x3 or 16x9.
- Personal layout, site names, skins, etc... are not supported in HD Video Switching.
- Video forcing is enabled only at the conference level.
- Endpoints that do not support HD or are unable to meet these requirements connect as Secondary (audio only).

Enabling HD Video Switching

For the MCU to run HD Video Switching conferences the following criteria must be met:

- The *HD_THRESHOLD_BITRATE* flag must be set in the *System Configuration*. The value of this flag is the **system** minimum threshold bit rate.



The *HD_THRESHOLD_BITRATE* flag is responsible for negotiation only, It does not guarantee that the endpoint will open an HD channel or transmit on an opened HD channel.

- The line rate selected in the conference Profile must be the same as or higher than that specified by the *HD_THRESHOLD_BITRATE* flag.
- The *High Definition Video Switching* option must be selected in the profile.

For more information see "*Defining Profiles*" on page **1-8**.

- The RMX 2000 must have available resources (ports).
- The endpoints must support HD.

Modifying the HD Video Switching Threshold Bit Rate

To Modify the HD Video Switching Threshold:

- 1 Click **Setup>System Configuration**.
The *System Flags* dialog box opens.
- 2 Set the **HD_THRESHOLD_BITRATE** flag to the required line rate value (range 384kbps to 4Mbps, default is 768 Kbps).
- 3 Click **OK**.

The MCU must be reset the MCU for flag changes to take effect.

For more information see "*System Configuration*" on page **14-10**.

Creating a High Definition Video Switching Profile

An HD Video Switching enabled Profile must be created prior to running HD Video Switching conferences.

High Definition Video Switching conferences, Entry Queues and Meeting Rooms are created by selecting an HD Video Switching-enabled Profile and must be set to the same line rate as the target conference.

To connect to an HD Video Switching conference via an Entry Queue, the Entry Queue must be HD Video Switching enabled. It is recommended to use the same Profile for both the target conference and Entry Queue.

To Create an HD Enabled Profile:

- 1 In the *New Profile – General* tab, in the *Line Rate* field, enter a bit rate that is higher than the defined HD threshold.
- 2 Select the **High Definition Video Switching** check box.

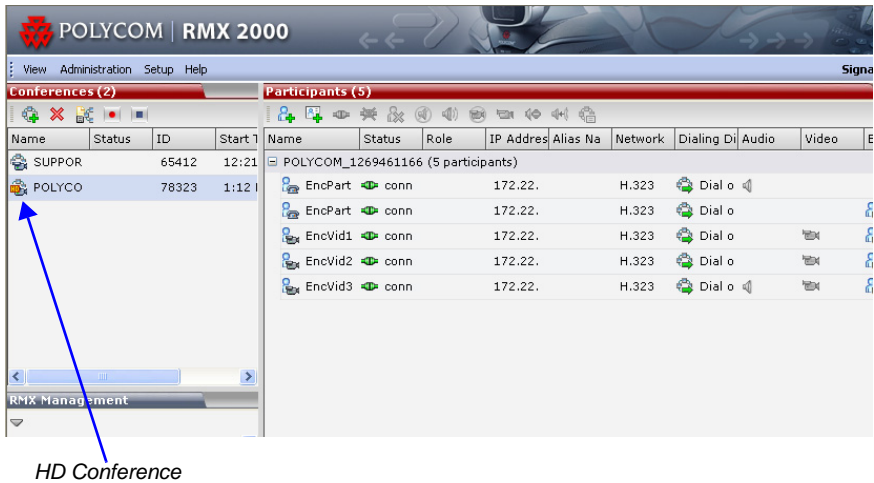
The screenshot shows the 'New Profile' dialog box with the 'General' tab selected. The 'Line Rate' dropdown is set to '384 Kbps'. The 'High Definition Video Switching' checkbox is checked, and the resolution dropdown is set to 'HD1080'. Other settings include: 'Display Name' (empty), 'Routing Name' (empty), 'Encryption' (unchecked), 'LPR' (checked), 'Auto Terminate' (checked), 'Before First Joins' (10 Minutes), 'After Last Quits' (1 Minutes), 'Maximum Number of Participants' (Automatic), 'H.239 Settings' (Graphics), 'H.239 Protocol' (h263), and 'Video Quality' (Sharpness). The 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

- 3 Select the resolution for the conference: **HD720** or **HD1080** (with MPM+).
- 4 Click **OK**.

For more information, see "*Defining Profiles*" on page 1-8.

Monitoring High Definition Video Switching Conferences

HD conferences appear with the HD (HD icon) in the conferences list to indicate the currently running HD conference(s).



Monitoring is done in the same way as for standard conferences. For more information, see "Conference and Participant Monitoring" on page 7-1.

H.239

The H.239 protocol allows compliant endpoints to transmit and receive two simultaneous video streams:

- **People Conference** – Continuous Presence or Video Switched conference
- **Content Conference** – Video Switching conference for content sharing

By default, all conferences, Entry Queues, and Meeting Rooms launched on the RMX 2000 have H.239 capabilities.

To view Content, endpoints must use the same Bit Rate, Protocol, and Resolution. An endpoint may not send Content while connecting to an Entry Queue.

Endpoints without H.239 capability can connect to the video conference without Content.

Cascade links declare H.239 capabilities and they are supported in Star and MIH cascading topologies. For more details, see "*Cascading Conferences - H.239-enabled MIH Topology*" on page 8-50.

Content Transmission Modes

The Content channel can transmit one of the following modes:

- **Graphics** – default mode, for standard graphics
- **Hi-res Graphics** – requiring a higher bit rate, for high quality display or highly detailed graphics
- **Live Video** – highest bit rate, for video clips or live video display

The highest common Content bit rate is calculated for the conference each time an endpoint connects. Therefore, if an endpoint connects to an ongoing conference at a lower bit rate than the current bit rate, the Content bit rate for the current conference is re-calculated and decreased.

Bit rate allocation by the MCU is dynamic during the conference and when the Content channel closes, the video bit rate of the *People conference* is restored to its maximum.

During a conference the MCU will not permit an endpoint to increase its bit rate, it can however change its Content resolution. The RMX can decrease the allocated Content bit rate during a conference.

The following table shows the bit rate allocated to the Content channel from the video channel in each of the three Content modes:

Table 8-4 *Bit Rate Allocation to Content Channel*

Conf Kbps / Mode	64/96	128	256	384	512	768	1024	1472/1920/4096-VSW
<i>Graphics</i>	0	64	64	128	128	256	256	256
<i>Hi-res Graphics</i>	0	64	128	192	256	384	384	512
<i>Live Video</i>	0	64	128	256	384	512	768	768

Content Protocol

H.263 Annex T and H.264 protocols are supported for the Content transmission.

H.264 provides higher video quality at video resolutions of up to HD.

Endpoint Capabilities

- If an endpoint that supports only *H.263* for Content Sharing connects to a conference with an *Up to H.264* Content sharing Profile:
 - *H.263* is used for Content if that participant is the first to connect to the conference
 - Content sharing is stopped for all participants if the connection occurs after Content sharing has started. When Content sharing is restarted by the user, Content is shared using *H.263*.
- If an endpoint that does not support *H.264* Content sharing disconnects from a conference with an *Up to H.264* Content Sharing Profile, the Content sharing continues using *H.263*. This is true even if all the remaining connected endpoints support *H.264*. If Content sharing is stopped and restarted by the user, Content sharing is automatically upgraded to use *H.264*.
- The *H239_FORCE_CAPABILITIES* System Flag in *system.cfg* gives additional control over Content sharing.

When the flag is set to *NO*, the RMX only verifies that the endpoint supports the content protocols: *Up to H.264* or *H.263*.

When set to *YES*, the RMX checks frame rate, bit rate, resolution, annexes and all other parameters of the Content mode as declared by an endpoint during the capabilities negotiation phase. If the endpoint does not support the Content capabilities of the MCU the participant will not be able to send or receive content over a dedicated content channel. The flag's default value is *NO*.

If the *System Flag*, does not exist in the system, it must be created using the *RMX Menu - Setup* option. For more information see the *RMX 2000 Administrator's Guide*, "Modifying System Flags" on page **14-10**.

Entry Queues

- The selection of either *H.263* or *Up to H.264* in the Entry Queue Profile does not affect how Content is shared.
- When the endpoint is moved to the conference from the Entry Queue, the endpoint shares Content according to the guidelines set out under *Endpoint Capabilities* and according to the content protocol that is defined for the target conference.

Cascade Links

Content is shared across a Cascaded Link using *H.263* irrespective of whether either or both the cascade-enabled Entry Queue and the Cascaded Link have *Up to H.264* Content sharing defined in their profiles.

Defining Content Sharing Parameters for a Conference

To define Content Sharing Parameters:

- 1** In the *RMX Management* pane, click **Conference Profiles**.
- 2** In the *Conference Profiles* pane, click **New Profile**.

The *New Profile – General* dialog box opens.

The screenshot shows the 'New Profile' dialog box with the 'General' tab selected. The 'H.239 Settings' and 'H.239 Protocol' fields are highlighted with a blue rectangle. The 'H.239 Settings' dropdown is set to 'Graphics' and the 'H.239 Protocol' dropdown is set to 'h263'.

- 3 Select the *H.239 Settings* and *Protocol* as follows:

Table 8-5 H.239 Protocol Options

Field	Description
<i>H.239 Settings</i>	<p>Select the transmission mode for the Content channel:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Graphics — basic mode, intended for normal graphics Hi-res Graphics — a higher bit rate intended for high resolution graphic display Live Video — Content channel displays live video <p>Selection of a higher bit rate for the Content results in a lower bit rate for the people channel.</p>

Table 8-5 *H.239 Protocol Options (Continued)*

Field	Description
<i>H.239 Protocol</i>	<p>H.263 – Content is shared using <i>H.263</i> even if some endpoints have <i>H.264</i> capability.</p> <p>Up to H.264 – <i>H.264</i> is the default Content sharing algorithm.</p> <p>When selected:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Content is shared using <i>H.264</i> if all endpoints have <i>H.264</i> capability.• Content is shared using <i>H.263</i> if all endpoints do not have <i>H.264</i> capability.• Endpoints that do not have at least <i>H.263</i> capability can connect to the conference but cannot share Content.

4 Click **OK**.

Lecture Mode

Lecture Mode enables all participants to view the lecturer in full screen while the conference lecturer sees all the other conference participants in the selected layout while he/she is speaking. When the number of sites/endpoints exceeds the number of video windows in the layout, switching between participants occurs every 15 seconds.

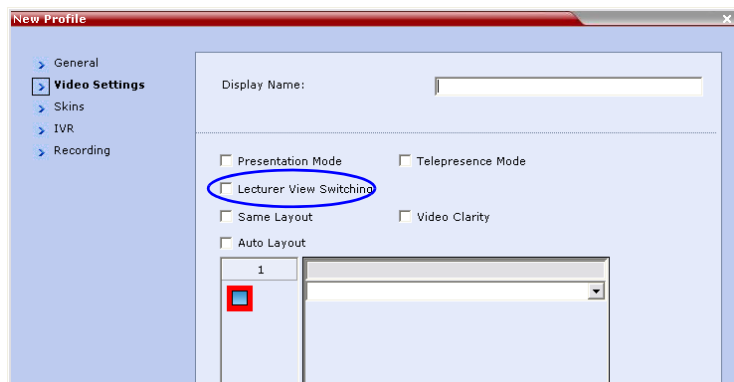
Automatic switching is suspended when one of the participants begins talking, and it is resumed automatically when the lecturer resumes talking.

Enabling Lecture Mode

Lecture Mode is enabled at the conference level by selecting the lecturer. Automatic switching between participants viewed on the Lecturer's screen is enabled in the conference Profile.

Enabling the Automatic Switching

- In the *Profile Properties - Video Settings* dialog box, select the **Lecturer View Switching** check box.



This option is activated when the conference includes more sites than windows in the selected layout. If this option is disabled, the participants will be displayed in the selected video layout without switching.

For more information about Profile definition, see "Defining Profiles" on page 1-8.

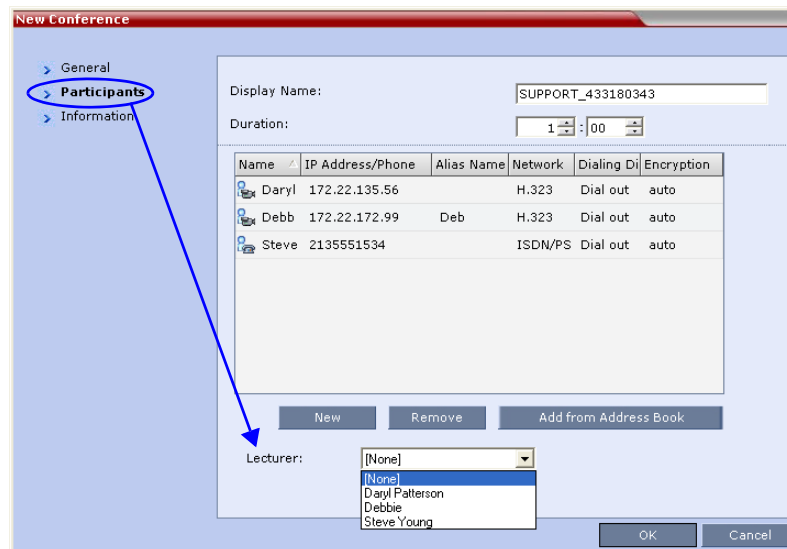
Selecting the Conference Lecturer

A conference can be set to Lecture Mode when:

- Defining a new ongoing Conference, after the adding or defining the participant to be designated as lecturer
- During an ongoing conference, after the participant (to be designated as lecturer) has connected to the conference.

To enable Lecture Mode for the Conference:

- ➔ In the *Conference Properties - Participant* dialog box, select the **Lecturer** from the list.



Lecture Mode Monitoring

A conference in which the Lecture Mode is enabled is started as any other conference. The conference runs as an audio activated Continuous Presence conference until the lecturer connects to the conference. The selected video layout is the one that is activated when the conference starts. Once the lecturer is connected, the conference switches to the Lecture Mode.

When *Lecturer View Switching* is activated, it enables automatic switching between the conference participants in the lecturer's video window. The switching in this mode is not determined by voice activation and is initiated when the number of participants exceeds the number of windows in the selected video layout. In this case, when the switching is performed, the system refreshes the display and replaces the last active speaker with the current speaker.

When one of the participants is talking, the automatic switching is suspended, showing the current speaker, and it is resumed when the lecturer resumes talking.

If the lecturer is disconnected during an Ongoing Conference, the conference resumes standard conferencing.

Forcing is enabled at the Conference level only. It applies only to the video layout viewed by the lecturer as all the other conference participants see only the lecturer in full screen.

If an asymmetrical video layout is selected for the lecturer (i.e. 3+1, 4+1, 8+1), each video window contains a different participant (i.e. one cannot be forced to a large frame and to a small frame simultaneously).

When Lecture Mode is enabled for the conference, the lecturer is indicated by an icon (👤) in the *Role* column of the *Participants* list.

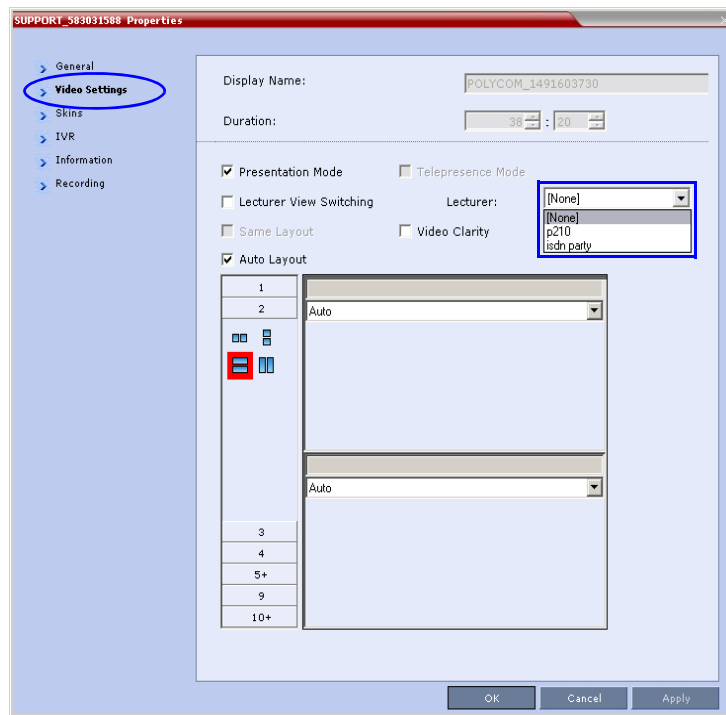
Name	Status	Role	IP Address	Alias Na	Network	Dialing Di	Audio	Vid
POLYCOM_1346662979 (6 participants)								
Brian	connected	👤	172.22.		H.323	Dial o		
Debb	connected	👤	172.22.	deb	H.323	Dial o		
Duke	connected	👤	172.22.		H.323	Dial o		
Ipow	connected	👤	172.22.		H.323	Dial o		
Sabr	connected	👤	172.22.		H.323	Dial o		
ZivN	connected	👤	172.22.	Ziv Nam	H.323	Dial o		

Participant designated as the Lecturer

To control the Lecture Mode during an Ongoing Conference:

During the Ongoing Conference, in the *Conference Properties - Video Settings* dialog box you can:

- Enable or disable the Lecture Mode and designate the conference lecturer in the *Lecturer* list; select **None** to disable the Lecture Mode or select a participant to become the lecturer to enable it.
- Designate a new lecturer.



- Enable or disable the Lecturer View Switching between participants displayed on the lecturer monitor window by selecting or clearing the *Lecturer View Switching* check box.
- Change the video layout for the lecturer by selecting another video layout.

Media Encryption

Encryption is available at the conference and participant levels, based on AES 128 Media Encryption and DH 1024 Key Exchange standards.

Media Encryption guidelines:

- Encryption is not available in all countries and it is enabled in the MCU license. Contact Polycom Support to enable it.
- Endpoints must support both AES 128 encryption and DH 1024 key exchange standards which are compliant with H.235 (H.323) to encrypt and to join an encrypted conference.
- The encryption mode of the endpoints is not automatically recognized, therefore the encryption mode must be set for the conference or the participants (when defined).
- Conference level encryption must be set in the Profile, and cannot be changed once the conference is running.
- Mixing encrypted and non-encrypted endpoints in one conference is supported only for H.323 **defined** participants. Different states of encryption for predefined IP participants are possible, based on system flag settings: (ALLOW_NON_ENCRYPT_PARTY_IN_ENCRYPT_CONF).
- In Cascaded conferences, to encrypt the conference the link between the cascaded conferences must be encrypted.
- The ISDN/PSTN (H.320) protocol, as well as ISDN/PSTN endpoints do not support encryption. ISDN/PSTN participants can therefore only connect to encrypted conferences if the system is set up to allow the mixing of encrypted/non-encrypted participants in the same conference.

Conference Access

You can define whether access to conferences for encrypted and non-encrypted IP participants is done at the conference level or at the participant level.

Conference access is set in the system configuration by the flag `ALLOW_NON_ENCRYPT_PARTY_IN_ENCRYPT_CONF` as follows:

Table 8-6 *Participant Level Encryption According to Flag Settings*

Flag Settings	Encryption is enabled in Profile	Encryption is disabled in the Profile
YES	Encryption is determined at the participant level, therefore encrypted and non-encrypted participants can join the conference.	Encryption is determined at the participant level, therefore encrypted and non-encrypted participants can join the conference.
NO	Encryption is determined at the conference level, therefore only encrypted participants can join the conference.	Encryption is determined at the conference level, therefore only non-encrypted participants can join the conference. Encrypted participants cannot be moved from an encrypted Entry Queue to this conference.

Encrypted Entry Queue Access

To be able to join a conference from an Entry Queue as an encrypted participant, encryption must be enabled in the Profile assigned to the Entry Queue. All non-encrypted participants connecting to an encrypted Entry Queue are disconnected from the MCU.

Encrypted participants can be moved from an encrypted Entry Queue to the destination conference depending on the destination conference settings and the setting of the flag in the system configuration.

Table 8-7 summarizes the dependencies between the connecting participant's defined encryption status, the Conference/Entry Queue encryption setting and the flag setting.

Table 8-7 Participant Level Encryption Options

Participant Encryption Field	Conference/Entry Queue Encryption Enabled		Conference/Entry Queue Encryption Disabled	
	Participant Level Flag		Participant Level Flag	
	YES	NO	YES	NO
Auto	Joins conference encrypted	Joins conference encrypted	Joins conference non-encrypted	Joins conference non-encrypted
On	Joins conference encrypted	Joins conference encrypted	Joins conference encrypted	Cannot join conference
Off	Joins conference non-encrypted Note: Enables ISDN participants to join an encrypted conference	Cannot join conference	Joins conference non-encrypted	Joins conference non-encrypted

Move Guidelines

- When participants are moved to another conference their encryption settings are evaluated to determine if the move is permitted. If not, the move fails and the participants remain in their original conference.
- When the flag is set to YES, participants can move between conferences that have different encryption settings. For example, encrypted participants can move to encrypted and non-encrypted conferences.
- When the flag is set to NO, the participant's encryption setting must match the conference encryption setting to be moved to the other conference. For example, encrypted participants can move only from an encrypted conference to another encrypted conference.

Encryption Flag Settings

To modify the Encryption flag:

- 1 Click **Setup>System Configuration**.
The *System Flags* dialog box opens.
- 2 Set the **ALLOW_NON_ENCRYPT_PARTY_IN_ENCRYPT_CONF** flag to **YES** or **NO**.
- 3 Click **OK**.

For more information, see "*System Configuration*" on page [14-10](#).

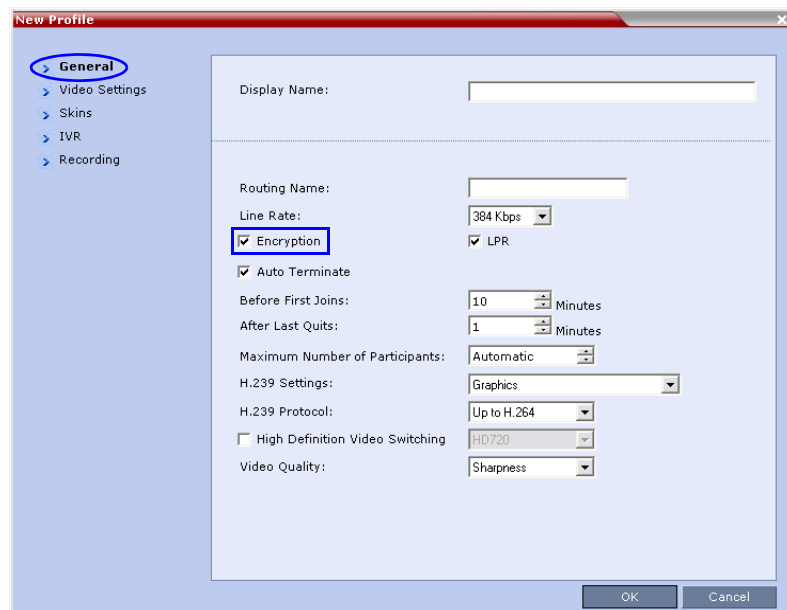
- ➔ Reset the MCU for flag changes to take effect.

Enabling Encryption in the Profile

Encryption for the conference is in the Profile and cannot be changed once the conference is running.

To enable encryption at the conference level:

- ➔ In the *Conference Profile Properties – General* dialog box, select the **Encryption** check box.



Enabling Encryption at the Participant Level (IP Only)

You can select the encryption mode for each of the defined participants. Encryption options are affected by the settings of the flag in the system configuration. Undefined participants are connected with the Participant *Encryption* option set to **Auto**, inheriting the conference/Entry Queue encryption setting.

To enable encryption at the participant level:

- ➔ In the *Participant Properties – Advanced* dialog box, in the *Encryption* list, select one of the following options: **Auto**, **On**, or **Off**.

The screenshot shows the 'New Participant' dialog box with the 'Advanced' tab selected. The 'Encryption' dropdown menu is highlighted with a blue box and is set to 'Auto'. Other settings visible include 'Name: Jenny', 'Video Bit Rate: Auto', 'Video Protocol: Auto', 'Broadcasting Volume: 5', 'Listening Volume: 5', 'Cascade: None', 'Telepresence Mode: None', and an 'AGC' checkbox.

- **Auto** - The participant inherits the conference/Entry Queue encryption setting. The participant connects as encrypted only if the conference is defined as encrypted.
- **Yes** - The participant joins the conference/Entry Queue is *encrypted*.
- **No** - The participant joins the conference/Entry Queue is *non-encrypted*.

Monitoring the Encryption Status

The conference encryption status is indicated in the *Conference Properties - General* dialog box.

The participant encryption status is indicated by a check mark in the *Encryption* column in the *Participants* list pane.

An encrypted participant who is unable to join a conference is disconnected from the conference. The disconnection cause is displayed in the *Participant Properties - Connection Status* tab, *Security Failure* indication, and the *Cause* box identifies the encryption related situation.

For more information about monitoring see "*Conference and Participant Monitoring*" on page 7-1.

LPR – Lost Packet Recovery

Lost Packet Recovery (LPR) and *Dynamic Bandwidth Allocation (DBA)* help minimize media quality degradation that can result from packet loss in the network.

Packet Loss

Packet Loss refers to the failure of data packets, transmitted over an IP network, to arrive at their destination. *Packet Loss* is described as a percentage of the total packets transmitted.

Causes of Packet Loss

Network congestion within a LAN or WAN, faulty or incorrectly configured network equipment or faulty cabling are among the many causes of Packet Loss.

Effects of Packet Loss on Conferences

Packet Loss affects the quality of:

- **Video** – frozen images, decreased frame rate, flickering, tiling, distortion, smearing, loss of lip sync
- **Audio** – drop-outs, chirping, audio distortion
- **Content** – frozen images, blurring, distortion, slow screen refresh rate

Lost Packet Recovery

The *Lost Packet Recovery (LPR)* algorithm uses *Forward Error Correction (FEC)* to create additional packets that contain recovery information. These additional packets are used to reconstruct packets that are lost, for whatever reason, during transmission. *Dynamic Bandwidth Allocation (DBA)* is used to allocate the bandwidth needed to transmit the additional packets.

Lost Packet Recovery Guidelines

- *LPR* is supported in H.323 networking environments only.
- In *LPR*-enabled *Continuous Presence* conferences:
 - Both *LPR*-enabled and non *LPR*-enabled endpoints are supported.
 - The *LPR* process is not applied to packet transmissions from non *LPR*-enabled H.323, SIP and H.320 endpoints.
- In *LPR*-enabled *Video Switched* conferences:
 - SIP and H.320 endpoints are not supported.
 - Cascaded links to MGC are not supported.
 - Non H.323 participants cannot be created, added or moved to *LPR*-enabled *Video Switched* conferences.
- When connecting via an *Entry Queue*:
 - A participant using an *LPR*-enabled endpoint cannot be moved to a non *LPR*-enabled conference.
 - SIP and H.320 participants cannot be moved to *LPR*-enabled *Video Switched* conferences.
- If packet loss is detected in the packet transmissions of either the video or Content streams:
 - *LPR* is applied to both the video and Content streams.
 - *DBA* allocates bandwidth from the video stream for the insertion of additional packets containing recovery information.

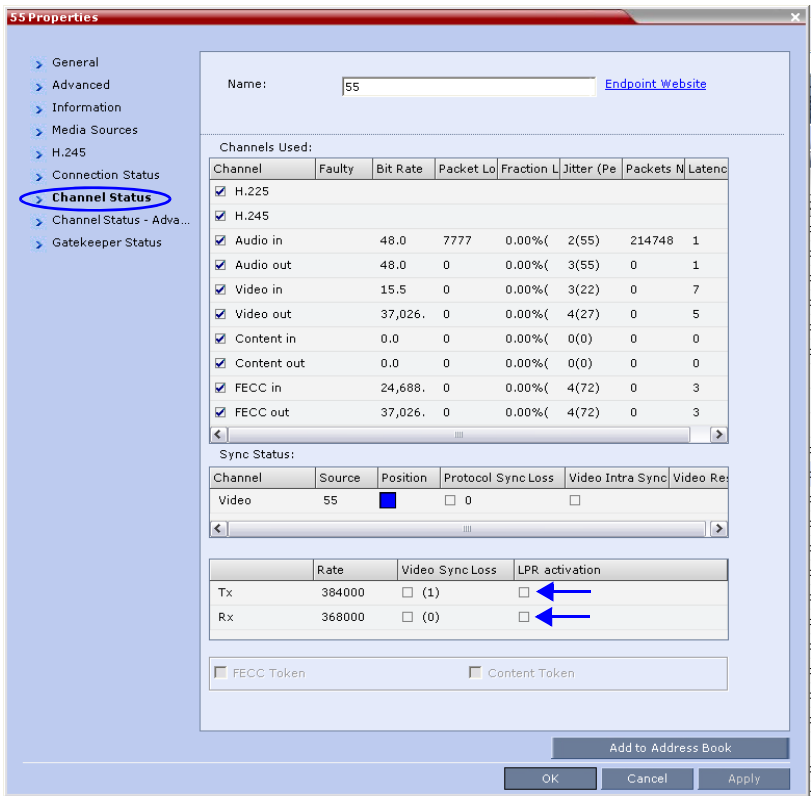
Enabling Lost Packet Recovery

LPR is enabled or disabled in the *Conference Profile* dialog box.

- **CP Conferences** – *LPR* is enabled by default in the *New Profile – General* dialog box.
- **HD VSW Conferences** – If *High Definition Video Switching* is selected, the *LPR* check box is automatically cleared and *LPR* is disabled. *LPR* can be enabled for HD VSW conferences but H.320 and SIP participants will not be able to connect.

For more information, see "*Defining Profiles*" on page 1-8.

In the *Participant Properties – Channel Status* tab, check box indicators show *LPR* activation in the local and remote (transmit and receive) channels.



Telepresence Mode

RMX 2000 supports the Telepresence Mode allowing multiple participants to join a telepresence conference from RPX and TPX high definition rooms as well as traditional, standard definition video conferencing systems.

TPX (Telepresence) and RPX (Realpresence) room systems are configured with high definition cameras and displays that are set up to ensure that all participants share a sense of being in the same room.



Figure 8-1 Realpresence Participants using two RPX HD 400 Room Systems

The following are examples of situations where an RMX is needed for *Telepresence* configurations:

- RPX - TPX
- RPX 2-cameras/screens – RPX 4-cameras/screens
- 3 or more RPXs
- 3 or more TPXs

RMX 2000 Telepresence Mode Guidelines

System Level

- The RMX system must be licensed for *Telepresence Mode*.
- The system must be activated with a *Telepresence* enabled license key.

Conference Level

- If the RMX is not licensed for *Telepresence Mode*, the *Telepresence* option is not displayed in the *New Profile* dialog box
- A *Telepresence* conference must have *Telepresence Mode* enabled in its profile.
- When *Telepresence* mode is selected in a conference profile, the following options are disabled:
 - borders
 - site names
 - speaker indication
 - skins
 - same layout
 - presentation mode
 - auto layout
 - lecture mode
- The master (center) camera is used for video, audio and content.
- *Conference Templates* can be used to simplify the setting up *Telepresence* conferences where precise participant layout and video forcing settings are crucial. *Conference Templates*:
 - Save the conference Profile.
 - Save all participant parameters including their *Personal Layout* and *Video Forcing* settings.
- An ongoing *Telepresence* conference can be saved to a *Conference Template* for later re-use.

For more information see "*Conference Templates*" on page **6-1**.

Room (Participant/Endpoint) Level

- To the RMX, each camera in a *Telepresence* room is considered to be an endpoint and is configured as a participant.
- The *Telepresence Mode* field is always displayed in the *New Participant* dialog box. If the system is not licensed for *Telepresence* this field is automatically set to None.
- *Telepresence* participants (endpoints) must be specified as:
 - RPX – transmitting 4:3 video
 - or
 - TPX – transmitting 16:9 video

RPX and TPX Video Layouts

Additional video layouts have been created to give *Telepresence* operators more video layout options when configuring TPX and RPX room systems. These additional video layout options are only available when *Telepresence* is selected in the conference profile.

Table 8-8 TPX / RPX – Additional Video Layouts


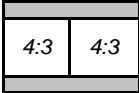
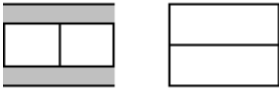
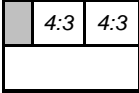
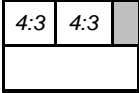
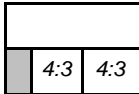
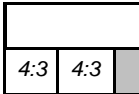
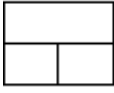
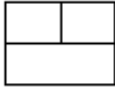
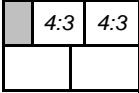
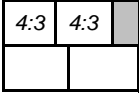
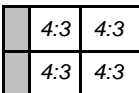
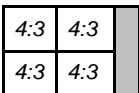
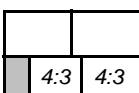
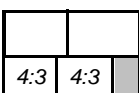
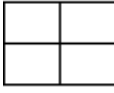
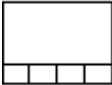
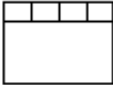
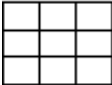
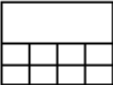

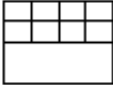
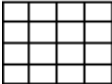
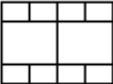
Number of Endpoints	Layouts	
	TPX	RPX
1		
2		
3	   	 
4	     	

Table 8-8 TPX / RPX – Additional Video Layouts (Continued)

Number of Endpoints	Layouts	
	TPX	RPX
5		 
9		   
10+		 

The following example illustrates the use of standard and additional RMX *Telepresence* layouts when connecting four Room Systems as follows:

- Two TPX Room Systems
 - 2 active cameras
 - 6 screens
- Two RPX Room Systems
 - 8 cameras
 - 8 screens

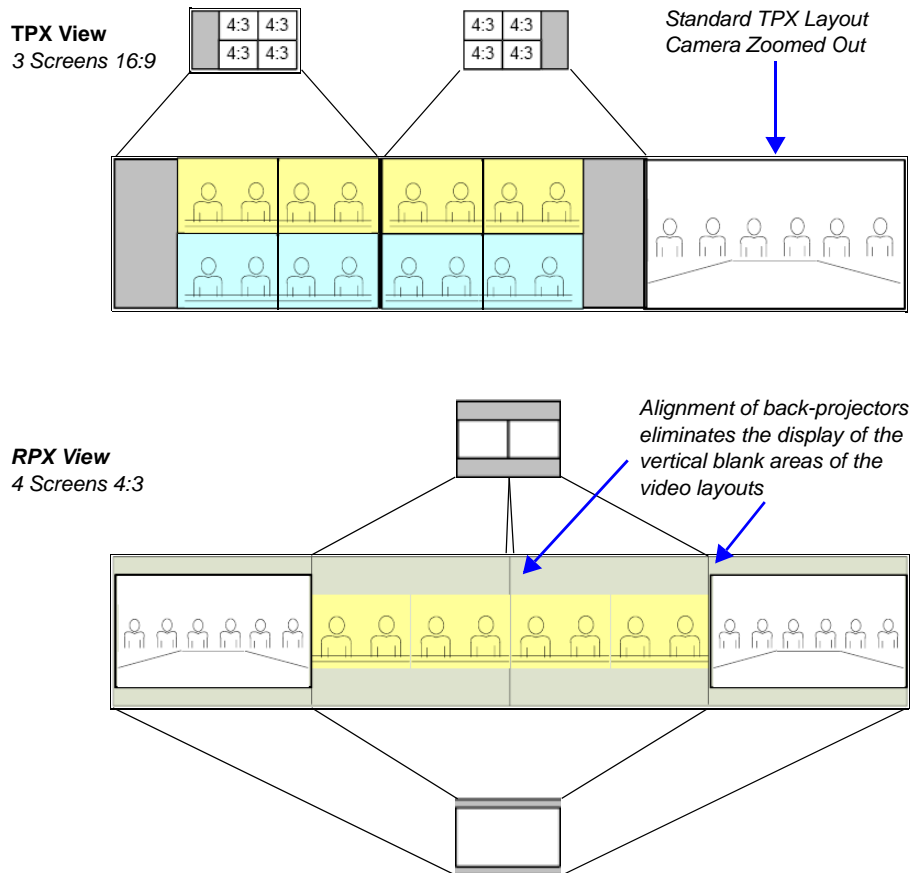


Figure 8-2 RPX and TPX Room System connected using RMX 2000

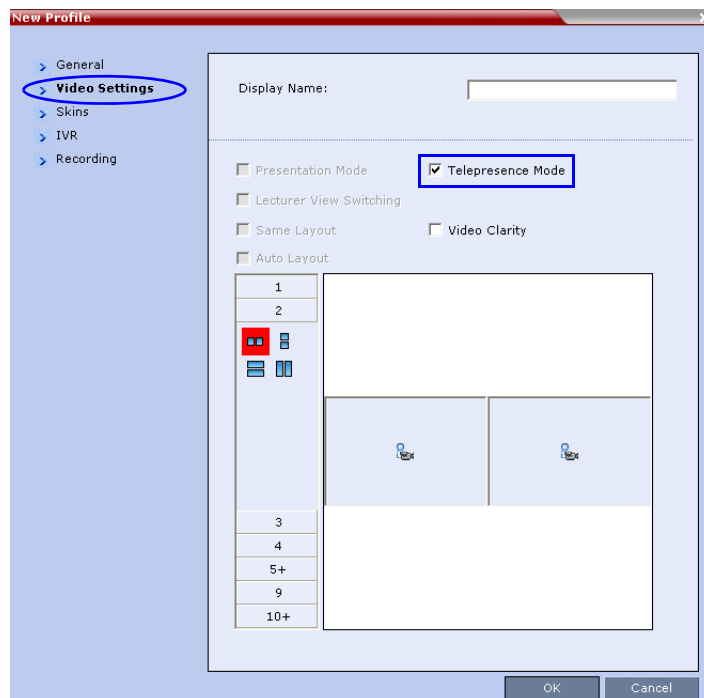
Enabling Telepresence

Conference Level

Telepresence Mode must be configured in a new or existing Conference Profile.

To enable Telepresence in a new or existing Conference Profile:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click **Conference Profiles**.
- 2 Click the **New Profiles** (📁+) button or open an existing *Conference Profile*.
- 3 Define the fields of the profile and click the **Video Settings** tab.
For more information on defining Profiles, see the *RMX 2000 Administrator's Guide*, "Defining Profiles" on page 1-8.
- 4 Select **Telepresence Mode** to enable the feature in the *Conference Profile*.



- 5 Select the required video layout.




When Telepresence Mode is enabled, the Skin options are disabled as the system uses a black background and the frames and speaker indication are disabled.

- 6 Click OK.

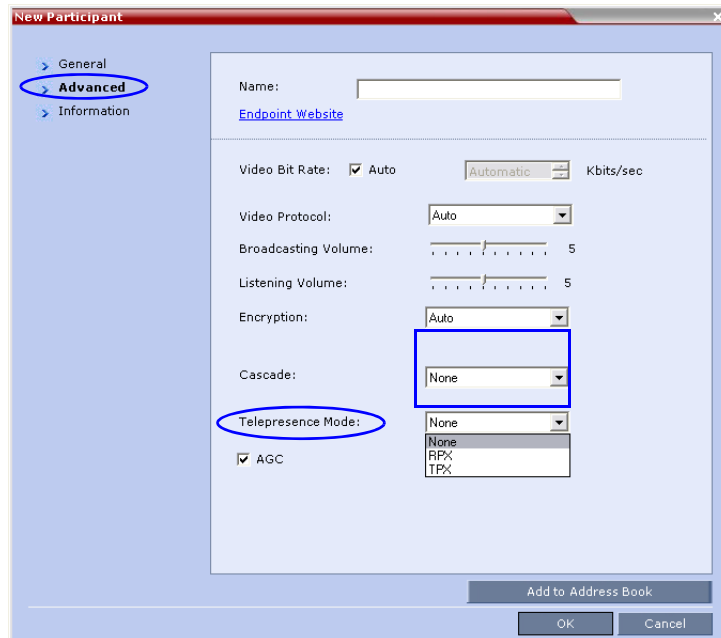
Room (Participant/Endpoint) Level

Setting the participant/endpoint *Telepresence Mode* configures the RMX to receive the video format of the RPX or TPX room endpoints.

To configure a participant/endpoint for Telepresence:

- 1 In the *Address Book* pane, click **New Participant** () or double-click an existing *Telepresence* endpoint.

The *New Participant* or *Participant Properties - General* dialog box is displayed.



New Participant

- > General
- > **Advanced**
- > Information

Name:

[Endpoint Website](#)

Video Bit Rate: ☒ Auto Kbits/sec

Video Protocol:

Broadcasting Volume: 5

Listening Volume: 5

Encryption:

Cascade:

Telepresence Mode:

☒ AGC

- 2 If defining a new participant, enter the required information in the *New Participant - General* dialog box for the participant.

For more information, see the *RMX 2000 Administrator's Guide*, "Adding a new participant to the Address Book" on page 4-4.

- 3 Click the **Advanced** tab.
- 4 Select the *Telepresence Mode* for the participant:

Table 8-9 New Participant – Telepresence Mode

Mode	Description
<i>RPX</i>	Select this option for room endpoints that transmit 4:3 video format.
<i>TPX</i>	Select this option for room endpoints that transmit 16:9 video format.
<i>None</i>	Select this option for endpoints that are neither RPX or TPX room endpoints.

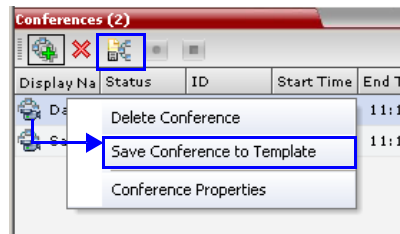
- 5 Click OK.

Saving an Ongoing Conference as a Template

Any conference that is ongoing can be saved as a template.

To save an ongoing conference as a template:

- 1 In the *Conferences List*, select the conference you want to save as a Template.
- 2 Click the **Save Conference** (📄) button.
or
Right-click and select **Save Conference**.



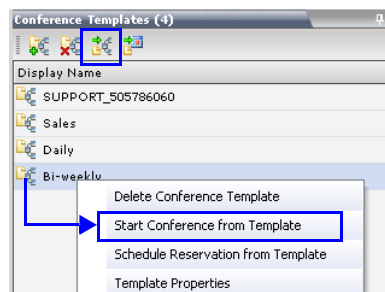
The conference is saved to a template whose name is taken from the ongoing conference *Display Name*.

Starting an Ongoing Conference From a Template

An ongoing conference can be started from any Template saved in the *Conference Templates* list.

To start an ongoing conference from a Template:

- 1 In the *Conference Templates* list, select the Template you want to start as an ongoing conference.
- 2 Click the **Start Ongoing Conference** (🔗🗣️) button.
or
Right-click and select **Start Ongoing Conference**.



The conference is started.

The name of the ongoing conference in the *Conferences* list is taken from the Template display name of the template.

Cascading Conferences - Star Topology

Cascading enables administrators to connect one conference directly to another conference using an H.323 connection, creating one large conference. The conferences can run on the same MCU or different MCUs. There are many reasons for cascading conferences, the most common are:

- Connecting two conferences on different MCUs at different sites.
- Utilizing the connection abilities of different MCUs, for example, different communication protocols, such as, serial connections, ISDN, etc....

The link between the two conferences is created when a participant that is defined as a dial-out cascaded link in one conference (Conference A) connects to the second conference (Conference B) via a special cascaded Entry Queue (EQ). When MCU A dials out to the cascaded link to connect it to conference A, it actually dials out to the cascaded Entry Queue defined on MCU B.

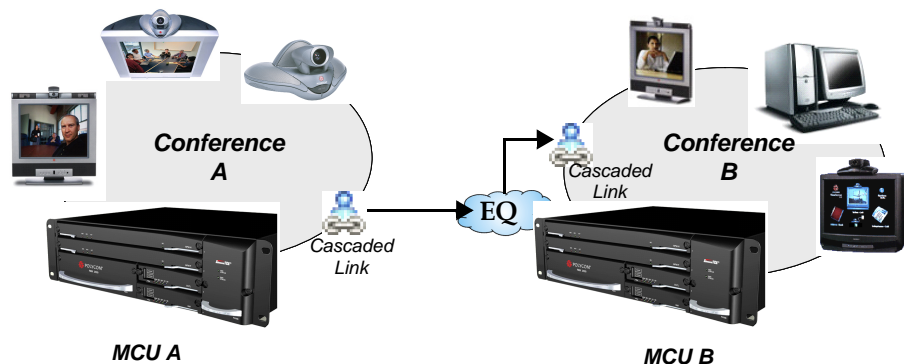


Figure 8-3 Cascaded Conferences - Star Topology

Though the process of cascading conferences mentioned in this section refers to conferences running on two different RMX units, it is possible to cascade conferences running between RMX units and other MCUs.

Simple cascade links are treated as endpoints in CP conferences and are allocated resources according to Table 8-3 on page 8-7. Cascaded links in 1x1 video layout are in SD resolution.

In HD Video Switching, simple cascade links behave like HD endpoints if all HD prerequisites are met - if not, the link is audio only.

When cascading two conferences, the video layout displayed in the cascaded conference is determined by the selected layout in each of the two conferences. Each of the two conferences will inherit the video layout of the other conference in one of their windows.

In order to avoid cluttering in the cascaded window, it is advised to select appropriate video layouts in each conference before cascading them.

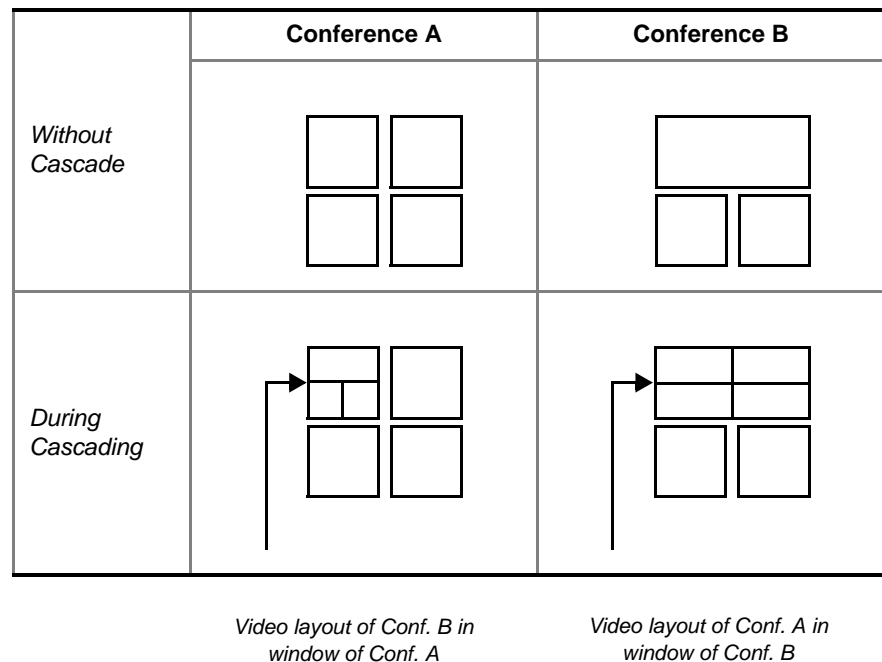


Figure 8-4 Video Layouts in Cascaded Conferences

The following features are not supported by the cascaded link and therefore are not supported in the combined conference:

- **DTMF** codes are enabled in cascaded conference, but only in their local conference. The operations executed via DTMF codes are not forwarded between linked conferences.
- **FECC** (Far End Camera Control) will only apply to conferences running in their local MCU).

Enabling Cascading

Cascading two conferences requires that the following procedures are implemented:

- **Creating the cascade-enabled Entry Queue**

A cascade-enabled Entry Queue must be created in the MCU hosting the destination conference (Conference B). The cascade-enabled Entry Queue is used to establish the dial-in link between the destination conference and the linked conference and bypassing standard Entry Queue, IVR prompt and video slide display.

- **Creating a cascade-enabled Dial-out link**

The creation of a cascade-enabled dial-out link (participant) in the linked conference (Conference A). This dial-out participant functions as the link between the two conferences.

- (Optional) Enabling the cascaded linked participant to connect to the linked conference (Conference A) without entering the conference password. This can be done by modifying the default settings of the relevant system flag.

Creating the Cascade-enabled Entry Queue

The cascade-enabled Entry Queue maintains the correct behavior of the cascaded link when it dials into it.



The cascade-enabled Entry Queue should be used only to connect cascaded links and should not be used to connect standard participants to conferences.

When cascading High Definition (HD) conferences, the cascade-enabled Entry Queue must have the same settings as both cascaded conferences and the participants in both conferences must use the same line rate and HD capabilities as set for the conferences and Entry Queue.

To define a Cascade-Enabled Entry Queue:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click the **Entry Queues** button.

The *Entry Queues* list pane is displayed.

- 2 Click the **New Entry Queue**  button.

The *New Entry Queue* dialog box is displayed.

- 3 Define the standard Entry Queue parameters (as described in Chapter 3).
- 4 In the *Cascade* field, select **Master** or **Slave** depending on the Master/Slave relationship.
 - Set this field to **Master** if:
 - The Entry Queue is defined on the MCU that is at the center of the topology and other conferences dial into it (acting as the Master).
 - Set this field to **Slave** if the Entry Queue is defined on the MCU acting as a Slave, that is, to which the link from the Master MCU (MCU at the center of the topology) is dialing.

The screenshot shows the 'New Entry Queue' dialog box with the following fields and values:

- Display Name:** SUPPORT_1962535415
- Routing Name:** (empty)
- Profile:** Factory_Video_Profile
- ID:** (empty)
- Entry Queue IVR Service:** Entry Queue IVR Service
- Ad Hoc:** ☐
- Cascade:** (dropdown menu open, showing 'None', 'Master', and 'Slave')
- Enable ISDN/PSTN Access:** ☐
- ISDN/PSTN Network Service:** [Default Service]
- Dial-in Number (1):** (empty)
- Dial-in Number (2):** (empty)

If you are defining an HD cascaded Entry Queue, it is recommended to select the same Profile that is selected for both conferences.


- 5 Click **OK**.

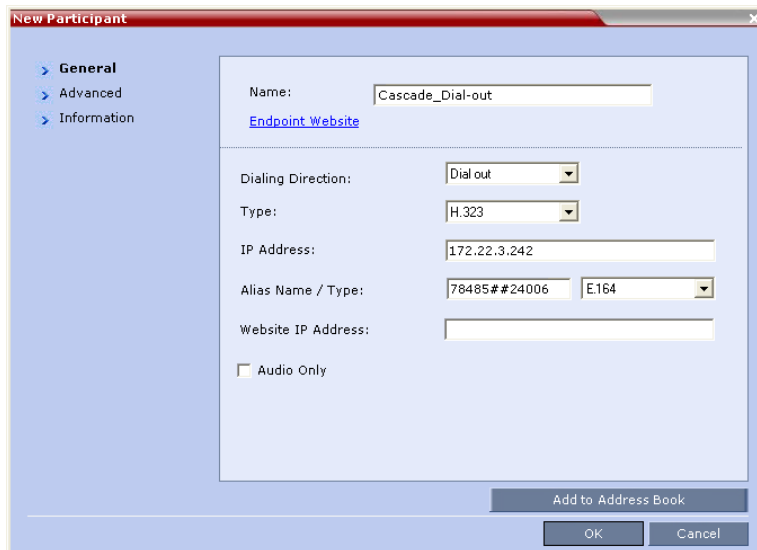
The new Entry Queue enabling cascading is created.

Creating the Dial-out Cascaded Link

The dial-out link (participant) is created or added in the linked conference (Conference A). The dial-out string defined for the participant is the dialing string required to connect to the destination conference (Conference B) Entry Queue defined on the MCU hosting the destination cascaded conference. The dial-out participant can be defined in the Address Book and added to the conference whenever using the same cascade-enabled Entry Queue and a destination conference (with the same ID and Password).

To define the Dial-out Cascaded Link:

- 1 Display the list of participants in the linked conference (Conference A).
- 2 In the *Participant List* pane, click the **New Participant**  button. The *New Participant - General* dialog box is displayed.



New Participant

- > General
- > Advanced
- > Information

Name: Cascade_Dial-out

[Endpoint Website](#)

Dialing Direction: Dial out

Type: H.323

IP Address: 172.22.3.242

Alias Name / Type: 78485##24006 E164

Website IP Address:

☐ Audio Only

Add to Address Book

OK Cancel

- 3 In the *Name* field, enter a participant name.
- 4 In the *Dialing Direction* field, select **Dial-out**.
- 5 In the *Type* list field, verify that **H.323** is selected.

- 6 There are two methods to define the dialing string:
- A** Using the MCU's IP Address and the Alias string.
 - B** Using only the Alias string (requires a gatekeeper).

Method A (If no gatekeeper is used):

In the *IP Address* field, enter the IP address of the **Signaling Host** of the MCU hosting the destination conference (in the example, MCU B).

In the *Alias Name/Type* field, enter the ID of the cascade-enabled Entry Queue (EQ), the Conference ID and Password of the destination conference (MCU B) as follows:

EQ ID#Destination Conference ID#Password (Password is optional).

For Example: 78485#24006#1234

Cascade-enabled
EQ ID
Destination
Conference ID
Password (optional)

Method B (Using a gatekeeper):

In the *Alias Name* field, enter the Prefix of MCU B, EQ ID, Destination Conference ID, and Password, as follows:

MCU Prefix EQ ID#Conference ID#Password (Password is optional)

For Example: 92578485#24006#1234

MCU Prefix as
registered in the
gatekeeper
Cascade-enabled
EQ ID
Conference ID
Password (optional)

- 7 Click the **Advanced** tab.

- 8 In the *Cascade* field, select:
- **Slave**, if the participant is defined in a conference running on a Slave MCU and will connect to the Master MCU (in the center of the topology).
 - **Master**, if the participant is defined in a conference running on the Master MCU (in the center of the topology) dialing from the Master MCU to the Slave MCU.

The screenshot shows the 'New Participant' dialog box with the 'Advanced' tab selected. The 'Name' field contains 'Jenny'. The 'Endpoint Website' field is empty. The 'Video Bit Rate' is set to 'Auto' with a dropdown menu showing 'Automatic'. The 'Video Protocol' is set to 'Auto'. The 'Broadcasting Volume' and 'Listening Volume' are both set to 5. The 'Encryption' is set to 'Auto'. The 'Cascade' field is highlighted with a blue box, and its dropdown menu is open, showing 'None'. The 'Telepresence Mode' is set to 'None'. There is an unchecked checkbox for 'AGC'. At the bottom right, there are buttons for 'Add to Address Book', 'OK', and 'Cancel'.

- 9 Click **OK**.
- The cascade-enabled dial-out link is created and the system automatically dials out to connect the participant to the linked conference, as well as the destination conference.

Enabling Cascaded Conferences without Password

If a password is assigned to the linked conference, cascaded links will be prompted for a password when connecting to it (Conference A). Administrators have the option of altering the MCU settings to enable cascaded links to connect without a password.

To enable cascaded links to connect without a password:

- 1** In the RMX web client connected to MCU A (where the linked conference is running), click **Setup>System Configuration**. The *System Flags* dialog box opens.
- 2** Set the `ENABLE_CASCADED_LINK_TO_JOIN_WITHOUT_PASSWORD` flag to **YES**.
- 3** Click **OK**.

For more information, see "*System Configuration*" on page [14-10](#).

- ➡ Reset the MCU for flag changes to take effect.

Monitoring Cascaded Conferences

To monitor both conferences at the same time, two instances of the RMX Web Clients must be opened (one for each MCU) by entering the IP Address of each MCU. If both conferences are running on the same MCU, only one RMX Web Client window is required.

When conferences are cascaded, the *Participant* list pane of each of the two conferences will display a linked icon (👤); a dial-in linked icon in the destination conference (Conference B) and a dial-out linked icon in the linked conference (Conference A).

The *Conferences* list panes in each of the two conferences will display a cascaded conference icon (🔄) indicating that a conference running on the MCU is presently cascading with another conference running on the same or another MCU. The cascaded conference icon will be displayed for a short period of time and then disappear.

Conference A (Linked Conference)

Dial-out Linked Participant

Name	Status	ID	Start Time	End Time
Conf.A		41881	8:01 AM	9:39
Cascaded_		40021	8:05 AM	9:39

Name	Status	Role	IP Address	Alias Na	Network	Dialing Dire	Audio	Video	Encr
Singa	conn		172.21.		H.323	Dial out			
123	conn		171.22.		H.323	Dial out			
POLY	conn		172.22.	rmx	H.323	Dial out			
singa	conn		172.21.		H.323	Dial in			

Name	Status	ID	Start Time	End Time
Conf.B		58012	8:03 AM	9:39
Cascaded_		40021	8:05 AM	9:39

Name	Status	Role	IP Address	Alias Na	Network	Dialing Dire	Audio	Video	Encr
Mum	conn		172.22.		H.323	Dial out			
Singa	conn		172.21.		H.323	Dial out			
Dial-	conn		172.22.	40021#	H.323	Dial in			

Conference B (Destination Conference)

EQ created Dial-in Linked Participant

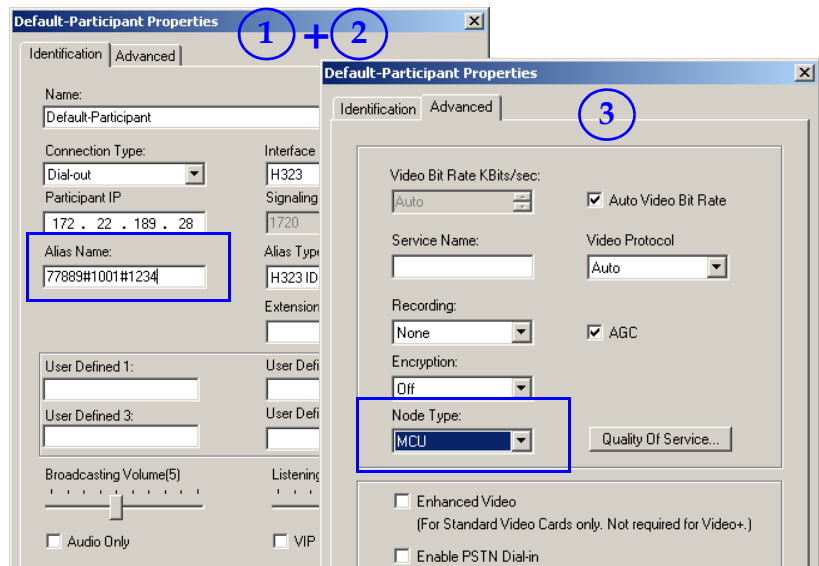
Cascaded conference icon

Creating the Dial-out Link from a Conference Running on the MGC to the Conference Running on the RMX

In the same way that the dial-out cascaded link is created in the RMX, you can create a dial-out participant in the MGC.

In the MGC Manager application, define a new participant as follows:

- 1 In the *Participant Properties* dialog box, enter a **Participant Name**, select **Dial-out** and **H.323**.
- 2 Define the **dialing string** as described in step 6 on page 8-45 (both methods are applicable).
- 3 In the *Advanced* tab's *Node Type* field, select **MCU**.



- 4 Click OK.

Cascading Conferences - H.239-enabled MIH Topology

H.239 Multi-Hierarchy (MIH) cascading is available to RMX users enabling them to run very large conferences on different MCUs in multiple levels of Master-Slave relationships using an H.323 connection.

Multi-Hierarchy (MIH) Cascading is implemented where the cascaded MCUs reside on different networks, whereas *Star Topology Cascading* requires that all cascaded MCUs reside on the same network.

MIH Cascading allows:

- Ability to open and use a content channel (H.239) during conferencing.
- Full management of extremely large, distributed conferences.
- Connecting conferences on different MCUs at different sites.
- Utilizing the connection abilities of different MCUs, for example, different communication protocols, such as, serial connections, ISDN, etc.
- Significant call cost savings to be realized by having participants call local MCUs which in turn call remote MCUs, long distance. .



Although participants in MIH Cascading conferences can connect using H.323, SIP and ISDN, the MIH Cascading Links must connect via H.323.

MIH Cascading Levels

The cascading hierarchy topology can extend to four levels (Figure 8-5) and should be deployed according to the following guidelines:

- If an *RMX 2000* is deployed on level 1:
 - Only *RMX 2000* can be used on level 2, and *DST MCS 4000* and other MCUs can be deployed on levels 3 and 4.
- If an *MGC* is deployed on level 1:
 - *MGC* or *RMX 2000* can be used on level 2, and *DST MCS 4000* and other MCUs can be deployed on levels 3 and 4.

- *DST MCS 4000 MCUs connect as endpoints to the RMXs or MGCs on higher levels.*

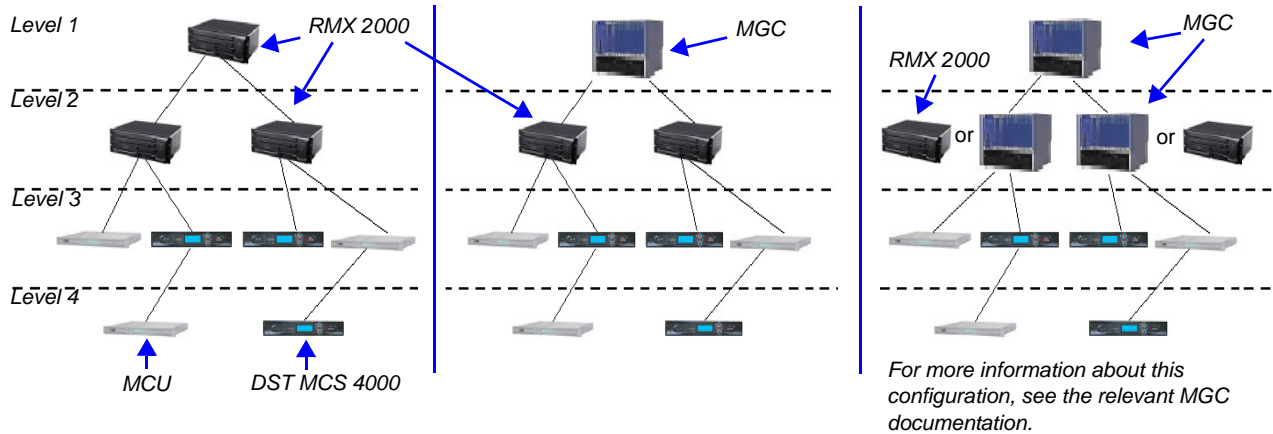


Figure 8-5 MIH Cascade Levels

MIH Cascading Guidelines

Master and Slave Conferences

- In *MIH Cascading* conferences, although there are multiple levels of Master and Slave relationships between conferences, the conference that runs on the MCU on level 1 of the hierarchy must be the Master for the entire cascading session. When an MGC is part of the cascading topology, it must be set as Level 1 MCU.
- Conferences running on MCUs on levels 2 and 3 and can be both Masters and Slaves to conferences running on MCUs on levels above and below them.
- All conferences running on MCUs on level 4 are Slave conferences.
- When the DST MCS 4000 is on level 3 and acting as slave to level 2, the RMX 2000 on level 2 must dial out to it in order for the DST MCS 4000 to be identified as slave. The link between the two MCU (dial out participant) is defined as a standard participant and not as a cascading link.

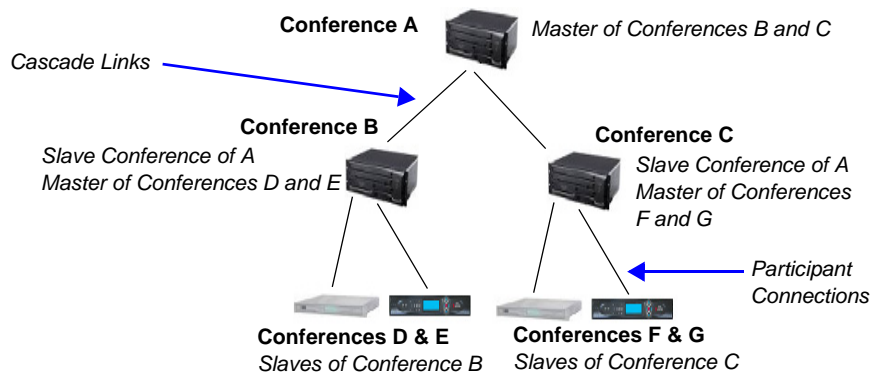


Figure 8-6 MIH Cascading – Master-Slave Relationship

Video Session Mode, Line Rate and Video Settings

The types of MCUs, their position in the cascade topology and the endpoint capabilities (HD/CIF and H.263/H.264) determine the *Video Session Mode* of the *MIH Cascading* conference.

- When creating a cascading link between two RMXs:
 - The RMXs operate in CP (Continuous Presence) mode.
- When creating a cascading link between MGCs and RMXs:
 - If there are no MGCs on level 2, the MGCs can operate in either in CP or VSW (Video Switching) mode.
 - If there are MGCs on level 2, the MGCs can only operate in VSW mode.
- When creating a cascading link between two MGCs:
 - The MGCs must be configured to operate in VSW mode.

For more details about the MGC to MGC connection, see the *MGC Manager User's Guide, Volume II, Chapter 1, "Ad Hoc Auto Cascading and Cascading Links"*.

To enable the connection of the links between cascaded conferences, they must run at the same line rate.

The following table summarizes *Video Session Modes* line rate options that need to be selected for each conference in the cascading hierarchy according to the cascading topology:

Table 8-10 *MIH Cascading – Video Session Mode and Line Rate*

Topology	MCU Type	Video Session Mode	Line Rate	Endpoint
Level 1	RMX 2000	CP - HD	1.5Mb/s, 1Mb/s, 2Mb/s	HDX
Level 2	RMX 2000			
Level 1	RMX 2000	CP - CIF	768Kb/s, 2Mb/s	VSX
Level 2	RMX 2000			
Level 1	MGC	CP - CIF 263	768Kb/s, 2Mb/s	HDX, VSX
Level 2	RMX 2000	CP - CIF 264		
Level 1	MGC	VSW - HD	1.5Mb/s	HDX
Level 2	RMX 2000	VSW HD		
Level 2	RMX 2000	CP/VSW -HD	1.5Mb/s, 1Mb/s, 2Mb/s	HDX
Level 3	MCS 4000			
Level 2	RMX 2000	CP - CIF	768Kb/s, 2Mb/s	HDX, VSX
Level 3	MCS 4000			

H.239 Content Sharing

Content sharing is controlled by means of a token. The *Content Token* is allocated to participants by the highest level master conference.

- The *Content Token* must be released by the participant that is currently holding it before it can be re-allocated.
- After release, the *Content Token* is allocated to the participant that most recently requested it.
- The *Content Token* can be withdrawn from a conference participant by using the RMX web client only if the highest level master conference is running on the RMX unit.

- The following table lists the bit rate allocated to the Content channel from the video channel in each of the three Content modes:

Table 8-11 *Bit Rate Allocation to Content Channel*

Conf Kbps / Mode	64/96	128	256	384	512	768	1024	1472	1920
Graphics	0	64	64	128	128	256	256	256	256
Hi-res Graphics	0	64	128	192	256	384	384	512	512
Live Video	0	64	128	256	384	512	768	768	768

Setting up MH Cascading Conferences

The cascading topology, the master/slave relationship and the dialing direction determines the set-up procedure:

- RMX to RMX
- MGC to RMX
- MGC to MGC

For more details about the MGC to MGC connection, see the *MGC Manager User's Guide, Volume II, Chapter 1, "Ad Hoc Auto Cascading and Cascading Links"*.

RMX to RMX Cascading

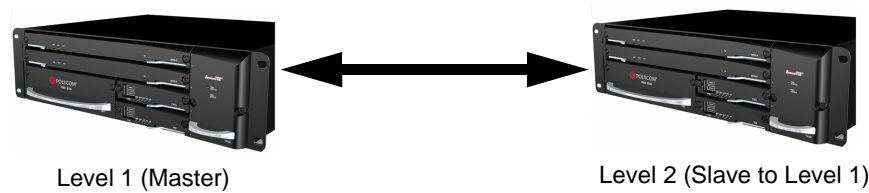


Figure 8-7 *Dialing Direction*

To establish the links between two RMXs requires the following procedures be performed:

- Establish the Master-Slave relationships between the cascaded conferences by defining the dialing direction.

- Create a cascade-enabled *Entry Queue* for dial-in connections (you create it once for all cascading links using the same line rate).
- Create the Master and Slave conferences, defining the appropriate line rate and whether it is a CP conference or HD Video Switching conference
- Create a cascade-enabled *Dial-out Participant* link in the Master or the Slave conference (depending on the dialing direction).

Establish the Master-Slave relationships and the dialing direction

MIH Cascading conferences are linked in a master-slave relationship with each other according to the dialing direction. It determines the definition of the cascaded links and the Entry Queues. Dialing directions can be top-down or bottom-up or up from level 4 to level 3 and from level 3 to level 2 and down from level 1 to level 2.



It is recommended to select one dialing direction (usually bottom up) for the entire hierarchy to simplify the setup procedure.

Table 8-12 Set up Procedures according to the Dialing Direction

Dialing Direction	RMX 2000 Level 1	RMX 2000 Level 2
RMX 2000 Level 1 to RMX 2000 Level 2		Define the cascade-enabled Entry Queue, defining it as Slave .
	Define the conference line rate and if required to HD Video Switching to be the same as the one set on the RMX 2000 Level 2.	Define the conference line rate and if required to HD Video Switching to be the same as the one set on the RMX 2000 Level 1.
	Define the dial-out participant (Cascaded Link) to the conference running on the RMX 2000 on Level 2, setting it as Master .	

Table 8-12 Set up Procedures according to the Dialing Direction

Dialing Direction	RMX 2000 Level 1	RMX 2000 Level 2
RMX 2000 Level 2 to RMX 2000 Level 1	Define the cascade-enabled Entry Queue, setting it as Master .	
	Define the conference line rate and Video Session Mode to be the same as the one set on RMX Level 2.	Define the conference line rate and Video Session Mode to be the same as the one set on RMX Level 1.
		Define the dial-out participant (Cascaded Link) to the conference running on the RMX 2000 on Level 2, setting it as Slave .



- When cascading between a DST MCS 4000 on level 3 and the RMX 2000 on level 2, the RMX 2000 must dial out to the MCS 4000 to establish the Master-Slave relationship (the RMX 2000 is the Master).
- If the RMX 2000 on level 2 is being dialed from both Level 1 and Level 3 and it is acting as both Slave to level 1 and Master to Level 3, two Cascade-enabled Entry Queues must be defined: one defined as Slave (for dial in from conferences running on MCU Level 1) and the other defined as Master (for dial in from conferences running on MCU Level 3).


Creating a Cascade Enabled Entry Queue

Cascade-enabled Entry Queues do not play IVR prompts and video slide displays associated with standard Entry Queues.

Depending on the dialing direction, a cascade-enabled Entry Queue is defined either on the MCU on level 1 or on level 2. (See Appendix 8, "Dialing Direction").

The definition of the Entry Queue as Master or Slave is done accordingly.

To define a Cascade-Enabled Entry Queue:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click **Entry Queues**.
The *Entry Queues* list pane is displayed.
- 2 Click the **New Entry Queue**  button.

The *New Entry Queue* dialog box is displayed.

- 3 Define the Entry Queue parameters as for a standard Entry Queue. For more information about Entry Queue parameters, see the *RMX 2000 Administrator's Guide, Entry Queues* on page 3-1.
- 4 In the *Cascade* field, select **Master** or **Slave** depending on the Master/Slave relationship.
 - Set this field to **Master** if:
 - The Entry Queue is defined on the MCU on level 1 and the dialing is done from level 2 to level 1.
 - The Entry Queue is defined on the MCU on level 2 and the dialing is done from level 3 to level 2.
 - Set this field to **Slave** if the Entry Queue is defined on the MCU on level 2 (Slave) and the dialing is done from MCU level 1 to level 2.
- 5 Click **OK**.



Cascade-enabled Entry Queues should not be used to connect standard participants to conferences.

Creating the Cascaded Conferences

The table below lists the line rates that should be used when defining the conference Profiles for cascaded conferences on the RMX 2000 on both Level 1 and Level 2. The video settings will be automatically selected by the system, however, if HD Video Switching is used, it must be selected in the conference Profiles.

Table 8-13 Recommended Conference Line Rates for Cascaded Conferences

Topology	Video Session Mode	Conference Line Rate
RMX 2000 ↓ RMX 2000	CP-HD	1.5Mb/s, 1Mb/s, 2Mb/s
	CP-CIF	768Kb/s, 2Mb/s


Creating a Cascade Enabled Dial-out Participant Link

The connection between two cascaded conferences is established by a cascade enabled dial-out participant, acting as a cascades link.

The dialing direction determines whether the dial-out participant is defined in the conference running on the Master MCU or the Slave MCU. For example, if the dialing direction is from level 1 to level 2, and the Master conference is on level 1, the dial -out participant is defined in the conference running on the MCU on level 1 (connecting to an Entry Queue defined as Slave running on the MCU on level 2.

If the cascade-enabled dial-out participant always connects to the same destination conference via the same cascade-enabled Entry Queue on the other (second) MCU, the participant properties can be saved in the Address Book of the MCU for future repeated use of the cascaded link.

To define the dial-out cascade participant link:

- 1** In the *Conferences* pane, select the conference.
- 2** In the *Participants* pane, click **New Participant** (.

The *New Participant - General* dialog box is displayed.

New Participant

- > General
- > Advanced
- > Information

Name:

[Endpoint Website](#)

Dialing Direction:

Type:

IP Address:

Alias Name / Type:

Website IP Address:

☐ Audio Only

- 3 Define the following parameters:

Table 8-14 *New Participant – Dial-out Cascade Link*

Field	Description
<i>Display Name</i>	Enter the participant name
<i>Dialing Direction</i>	Select Dial-out .
<i>Type</i>	Select H.323 .
<i>IP Address</i>	Enter the IP address of the Signaling Host of the MCU running the other (second) conference, where the cascade enabled Entry Queue is defined.

Table 8-14 *New Participant – Dial-out Cascade Link (Continued)*

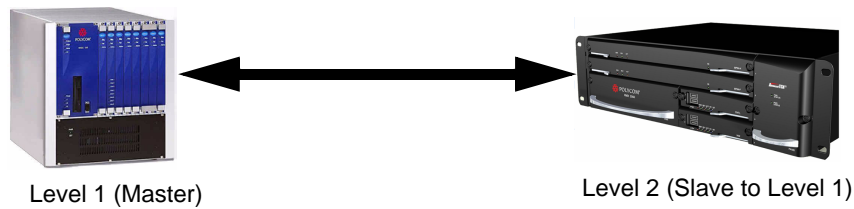
Field	Description
<i>Alias Name</i>	<p>If you are using the target MCU IP address, enter the dial string made up of the ID of the cascade enabled Entry Queue and the Conference ID as follows:</p> <p><Cascade_Enabled_Entry_Queue_ID> ## <Conference_ID></p> <p>For example: 78485##24006</p> <p>If a gatekeeper is used, you can enter the prefix of the target MCU, registered with the gatekeeper, instead of the IP address, as part of the dialing string.</p> <p><Gatekeeper_Prefix><Cascade_Enable_Entry_Queue_ID>##<Conference_ID></p> <p>For example: 92578485##24006</p> <p>If the conference has a password and you want to include the password in the dial string, append the password to in the dial string after the Conference ID.</p> <p>For example: 78485##24006##1234</p> <p>If the conference has a password and you do not want to include the password in the dial string, set the</p> <p>ENABLE_CASCADED_LINK_TO_JOIN_WITHOUT_PASSWORD</p> <p>flag to YES.</p> <p>For more information see the <i>RMX2000 Administrator's Guide</i>, "Modifying System Flags" on page 11-5.</p>
<i>Alias Type</i>	Select E.164 (digits 0-9, *, #).

- 4 Click the *Advanced* tab.

The screenshot shows the 'New Participant' dialog box with the 'Advanced' tab selected. The 'Name' field contains 'Cascade_Dial-out'. The 'Endpoint Website' field is empty. The 'Video Bit Rate' is set to 'Auto' with a unit of 'Kbits/sec'. The 'Video Protocol' is set to 'Auto'. The 'Broadcasting Volume' and 'Listening Volume' are both set to 5. The 'Encryption' is set to 'Auto'. The 'Cascade' field is set to 'Slave'. The 'Telepresence Mode' is set to 'None'. There is an 'AGC' checkbox which is unchecked. An 'Add to Address Book' button is at the bottom right.

- 5 In the *Cascade* field, select:
- **Slave**, if the participant is defined in a conference running on a Slave MCU.
 - **Master**, if the participant is defined in a conference running on the Master MCU.
- 6 Click **OK**.

MGC to RMX 2000 Cascading



MGC is always on level 1 and must be set as the Master MCU. If the cascading topology includes additional MGCs as well as RMXs it is recommended to define Video Switching conferences for all the cascading conferences in the topology.

Depending on the dialing direction, the following procedures must be performed:

Table 8-15 Set up Procedures according to the Dialing Direction

Dialing Direction	MGC Level 1	RMX 2000 Level 2
MGC to RMX 2000	Set the appropriate flags (done once only).	Set the appropriate flags (done once only).
		Define the cascade-enabled Entry Queue, setting it as Slave .
	Define the conference setting and its line rate to be the same as the one set on the RMX 2000.	Define the conference setting and its line rate to be the same as the one set on the MGC.
	Define the dial-out participant (Cascaded Link) to the conference running on the RMX 2000.	

Table 8-15 Set up Procedures according to the Dialing Direction

Dialing Direction	MGC Level 1	RMX 2000 Level 2
RMX 2000 to MGC	Set the appropriate flags (done once only)	Set the appropriate flags (done once only)
	Define the cascade-enabled Entry Queue.	
	Define the conference setting and its line rate to be the same as the one set on the RMX 2000.	Define the conference setting and its line rate to be the same as the one set on the MGC.
		Define the dial-out participant (Cascaded Link) to the conference running on the MGC, setting the participant Cascade parameter to Slave .

Setting the flags in the MGC

Flag setting is required to ensure the correct MCU behavior for cascading conferences. It is performed once per MCU.

- 1 In the MGC Manager, right-click the *MCU icon* and then click **MCU Utils>Edit "system.cfg"**.
- 2 In the **H264 Section**, ensure that the following flags are set to:
 - **ENABLE_HD_SD_IN_FIXED_MODE=YES**
Setting this flag to YES enables H.264 Standard Definition (SD), High Definition (HD) and VSX 8000 (Version 8.0) support in Video Switching conferences.
 - **H264_VSW_AUTO=NO**
Setting this flag to NO disables the highest common mechanism in H.264 and enables the selection of H.264 Video Protocol in

fixed mode in Dual Stream Video Switching cascading conferences

— **ENABLE_H239_ANNEX_T=YES**

This flag should be set to the same value (YES/NO) as the settings of the RMX flag H263_ANNEX_T



To use MIH Cascade in the MGC, the Conference Numeric ID routing mode must be used. It is determined when the system.cfg flag in the GREET AND GUIDE/IVR section is set to QUICK_LOGIN_VIA_ENTRY_QUEUE=NO.

3 Click **OK**.

4 If you changed the flags, reset the MCU.

Defining the Cascading Entry Queue in the MGC

The Entry Queue definition on the MGC is required if the dialing is done from the RMX 2000 to the MGC.

1 In the MGC Manager, expand the *MCU tree*.

2 Right-click the *Meeting Rooms, Entry Queues and SIP Factories* icon and click **New Entry Queue**.

- 3 In the *New Entry Queue* dialog box, set the Entry Queue parameters and select the **Cascade** check box.

Entry Queue Properties (Product Management)

Entry Queue Settings

Name: Entry Queue Service:

Numeric ID: ☒ Cascade ☐ VTX 1000

☐ Ad Hoc

Profile:

Target Conferences

☐ Audio Only

☐ IP Only

☐ Encryption

☒ Video Switching

☐ Transcoding

☐ Continuous Presence

Target Conference Settings

Audio Alg:

Video Format:

Frame Rate:

Video Protocol:

☐ Annex N ☐ Annex P ☐ Annex F

Line Rate: ☐ Restricted

Service Name	Dial-in Number (1)	Dial-in Number (2)

For more details on the definition of new Entry Queues refer to the *MGC Manager User's Guide, Volume II, Chapter 1, "Ad Hoc Auto Cascading and Cascading Links"*.

- 4 Click OK.

Creating the Dial-out Link between the Conference Running on the MGC and the Conference Running on the RMX

If the dialing is done from the MGC to the RMX, you need to define the cascaded link (dial-out participant) in the conference running on the MGC.

The dial-out string defined for the participant is the dialing string required to connect to the destination conference via the Cascade-enabled Entry Queue defined on the RMX hosting the destination cascaded conference. The dial-out participant can be defined on the MGC as template or assigned to the Meeting Room.

In the MGC Manager application, define a new participant as follows:

- 1** In the *Participant Properties - Identification* dialog box, enter a **Participant Name**
- 2** In the *Connection Type* field, select **Dial-out**.
- 3** In the *Interface Type* list field, select **H.323**.
- 4** There are two methods to define the dialing string to the other conference:
 - a** Using the MCU's IP Address and the Alias string.
 - b** Using only the Alias string (requires a gatekeeper).

Method A (If no gatekeeper is used):

In the *IP Address* field, enter the IP address of the **Signaling Host** of the RMX 2000 hosting the destination conference.

In the *Alias Name/Type* field, enter the ID of the cascade-enabled Entry Queue (EQ), the Conference ID and Password of the destination conference as follows:

EQ ID##Destination Conference ID##Password (Password is optional).

For Example: 1002##12001##1234

Cascade-enabled
EQ ID
Destination
Conference ID
Password (optional)

Method B (Using a gatekeeper):

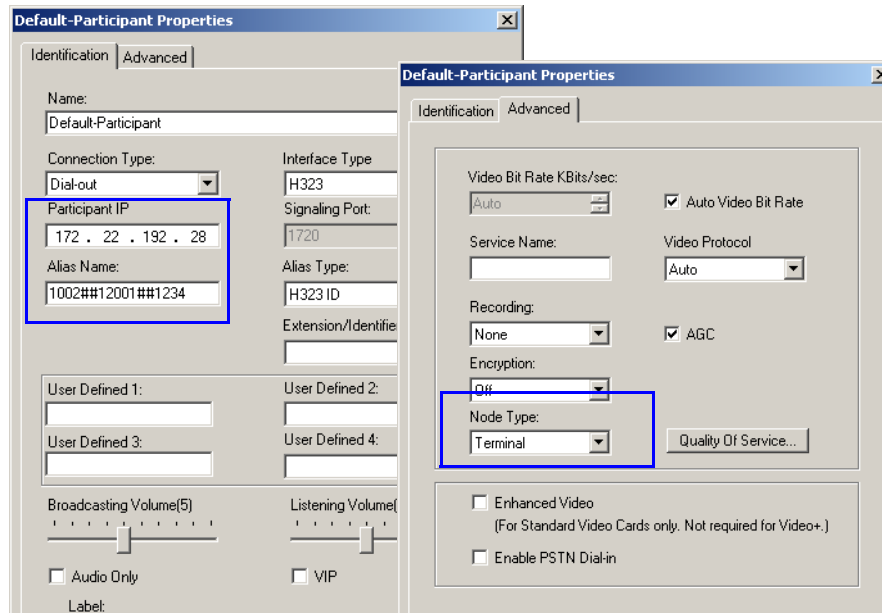
In the *Alias Name* field, enter the Prefix of MCU B, EQ ID, Destination Conference ID, and Password, as follows:

MCU Prefix EQ ID##Conference ID##Password (Password is optional)

For Example: 9251002##12001##1234

MCU Prefix as
registered in the
gatekeeper
Cascade-enabled
EQ ID
Conference ID
Password (optional)

- 5 Click the *Advanced* tab and in the *Node Type* field, select **Terminal**.



- 6 Click **OK**.

Setting the Flags on the RMX 2000

When running conferences in mixed environment (RMX 2000 and MGC) there may be small differences between the line rates each MCU is sending. In the RMX 2000, several flags must be set to ensure that these differences will not cause the cascaded link to connect as Secondary and that Content flows correctly between the cascaded conferences. This procedure is performed once per RMX.

- 1 In the RMX Web Client menu, click **Setup>System Configuration**.
- 2 In the *System Flags* dialog box, add the following new flags and values:
 - **MIX_LINK_ENVIRONMENT=YES**
Setting this flag to YES will adjust the line rate of HD Video Switching conferences run on the RMX 2000 from 1920Kbps to 17897Kbps to match the actual rate of the HD Video Switching

conference running on the MGC. In such case, the conference can include IP and ISDN participants.

— **IP_ENVIRONMENT_LINK=NO**

Setting this flag to YES will adjust the line rate of HD Video Switching conferences run on the RMX 2000 from 1920Kbps to 18432Kbps to match the actual rate of the IP Only HD Video Switching conference running on the MGC. In such case, the conference can include IP Only participants.



If the flag `MIX_LINK_ENVIRONMENT` is set to YES, the `IP_LINK_ENVIRONMENT` flag must be set to NO.

If the flag `MIX_LINK_ENVIRONMENT` is set to NO, the `IP_LINK_ENVIRONMENT` flag must be set to YES.

— **H263_ANNEX_T=YES (default)**

This flag enables/ disables the use of Annex T with H263. Set it to NO if the endpoints connecting to the conference do not support this mode. In such a case, you must also change the MGC flag `ENABLE_H239_ANNEX_T` setting to NO.

— **FORCE_1X1_LAYOUT_ON_CASCADED_LINK_CONNECTION=YES (default).**

Set this flag to NO If the MGC is functioning as a Gateway and participant layouts on the other network are not to be forced to 1X1.

- 3** If the MGC is dialing the RMX and the cascaded link connects to the conference via the Cascade-enabled Entry Queue without being prompted for the conference password, set the flag to YES as follows:

— **ENABLE_CASCADED_LINK_TO_JOIN_WITHOUT_PASSWORD=YES**

- 4** Click OK.

- 5** Reset the MCU to apply the changes.

Defining the Cascade Enabled Entry Queue on the RMX 2000

If the dialing is done from the conference running on the MGC that is the Master MCU, a Cascade-enabled Entry Queue must be defined on the RMX 2000 setting it as **Slave**.

For more details, see the *RMX 2000 to RMX 2000 Cascading*.

Defining the cascading conferences

The table below lists the line rates and the video settings that should be used when defining the conferences on the MGC. The same line rates should be selected when defining the Conference Profiles on the RMX 2000, as well as whether the conference is HD Video Switching. However, the video settings will be automatically selected by the system.


Table 8-16 Recommended Conference Line Rates for Cascaded Conferences

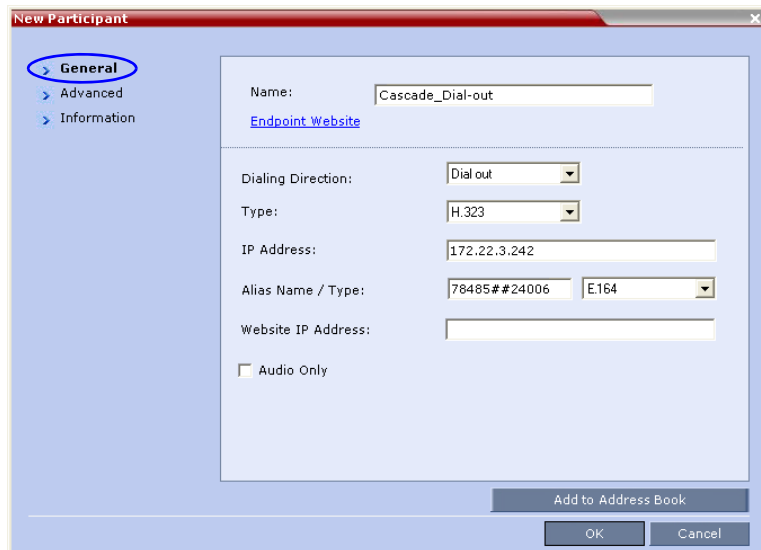
Topology	Video Session Mode	Conference Line Rate
MGC ↓ RMX 2000	MGC - CIF 263 RMX2000 - CIF 264 CP	768Kb/s, 2Mb/s
	MGC - HD VSW RMX2000 - HD VSW	1.5Mb/s

In addition, the conference running on the MGC should be set as **Meet Me Per Conference** and select the **H.239** option in the *Dual Stream Mode* field. For more details on conference definition on the MGC, refer to the *MGC Manager User's Guide, Volume I, Chapter 5*.

Defining the dial-out participant on the RMX 2000

If the dialing is done from a conference running on the RMX 2000 to the conference running on the MGC, the dial-out participant is defined in the conference running on the RMX, setting the *Cascade* field to **Slave**. This participant dials the Cascade-enabled Entry Queue defined on the MGC.

- 1 Display the list of participants in the linked conference (Slave conference).
- 2 In the *Participant List* pane, click the **New Participant** () button. The *New Participant - General* dialog box is displayed.



The image shows a screenshot of the 'New Participant' dialog box, specifically the 'General' tab. The dialog box has a title bar with 'New Participant' and a close button. On the left, there is a sidebar with three tabs: 'General' (selected and circled in blue), 'Advanced', and 'Information'. The main area contains several fields: 'Name' with the value 'Cascade_Dial-out', a link for 'Endpoint Website', 'Dialing Direction' set to 'Dial out', 'Type' set to 'H.323', 'IP Address' set to '172.22.3.242', 'Alias Name / Type' with '78485##24006' and a dropdown set to 'E164', and 'Website IP Address' which is empty. There is an 'Audio Only' checkbox which is unchecked. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Add to Address Book', 'OK', and 'Cancel'.

- 3 In the *Name* field, enter a participant name.
- 4 In the *Dialing Direction* field, select **Dial-out**.
- 5 In the *Type* list field, verify that **H.323** is selected.

- 6 There are two methods to define the dialing string:
- A** Using the MCU's IP Address and the Alias string.
 - B** Using only the Alias string (requires a gatekeeper).

Method A (If no gatekeeper is used):

In the *IP Address* field, enter the IP address of the MGC hosting the destination conference (Master conference).

In the *Alias Name/Type* field, enter the ID of the cascade-enabled Entry Queue (EQ), the Conference ID and Password of the destination conference (Master Conference) as follows:

EQ ID##Destination Conference ID##Password (Password is optional).

For Example: 1005##20006##1234

*Cascade-enabled
EQ ID*
*Destination
Conference ID*
Password (optional)

Method B (Using a gatekeeper):

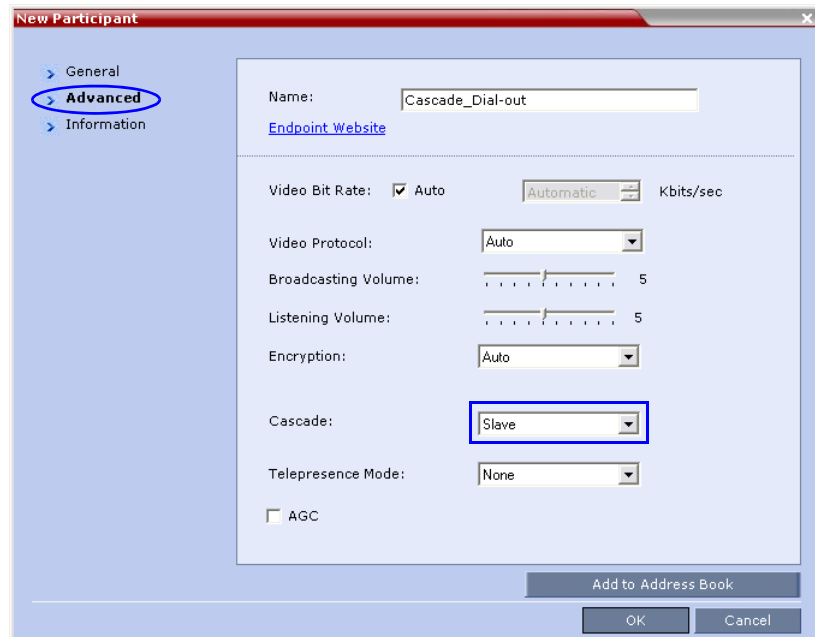
In the *Alias Name* field, enter the MGC Prefix as registered in the gatekeeper, EQ ID, Destination Conference ID, and Password, as follows:

MGC Prefix EQ ID##Conference ID##Password (Password is optional)

For Example: 9251005##20006##1234

*MCU Prefix as
registered in the
gatekeeper*
*Cascade-enabled
EQ ID*
Conference ID
Password (optional)

- 7 Click the *Advanced* tab and in the *Cascade* field, select the **Slave** option.



The screenshot shows the 'New Participant' dialog box with the 'Advanced' tab selected. The 'Name' field contains 'Cascade_Dial-out'. The 'Endpoint Website' field is empty. The 'Video Bit Rate' is set to 'Auto' with a dropdown menu showing 'Automatic' and 'Kbits/sec'. The 'Video Protocol' is set to 'Auto'. The 'Broadcasting Volume' and 'Listening Volume' are both set to 5. The 'Encryption' is set to 'Auto'. The 'Cascade' field is set to 'Slave' and is highlighted with a blue box. The 'Telepresence Mode' is set to 'None'. There is an unchecked checkbox for 'AGC'. At the bottom right, there are buttons for 'Add to Address Book', 'OK', and 'Cancel'.

- 8 Click **OK**.
The cascade-enabled dial-out link is created and the system automatically dials out to connect the participant to the local conference, as well as the destination conference on the MGC.

Starting and Monitoring MIH Cascading Conferences



MIH cascading conferences are started in the same way as standard conferences.

- Cascade enabled dial-out link participants on RMX 2000 MCUs are connected automatically.
- Cascade enabled dial-out link participants on MGC MCUs must be connected manually.

For more information on connecting cascade enabled dial-out participant links on other MCU's, refer to their respective operating manuals.

Monitoring Participants in an MIH Cascaded Conference

Once connection between two or more conferences is established, *RMX Web Client* users are able to monitor the following:

- Master and slave conferences
- Active cascade enabled entry queues – designated with an icon () in the *Role* field of the *Participants List*.
- Cascade enabled dial-out participants (links) – designated with an icon () in the *Display Name* field of the *Conferences List*.

This indicator is displayed during the connection process and is then removed from the *Conferences List*.

To monitor cascading enabled conferences:

- In the *Conferences List* pane, select all the *MIH Cascading* enabled conferences.

All the *MIH Cascading* conference participants are displayed:

Conferences List Pane with all MIH Cascading Enabled Conferences and Cascade Enabled Entry Queues Selected

Conferences List Pane

Display Name	Status	ID	Start Time	End Time
Conf.A		41881	0:01 AM	9:39 AM
Master1		11154	9:53 AM	1:53 PM
M-Slave2		67791	9:57 AM	1:57 PM
M-Slave3		43088	9:58 AM	10:58 AM
Slave4		90607	10:00 AM	2:00 PM
Slave5		05325	10:01 AM	1:01 PM
Slave6		58060	10:02 AM	2:02 PM
Slave7		40280	10:02 AM	2:02 PM
eq4(31)		4444	10:06 AM	11:06 AM
EQ(32)		3333	10:16 AM	11:16 AM

Participants (17)

Name	Status	Role	IP Address	Alias Name/SIP Addr	Network	Dialing Direction
Bridget Jones	Conn		172.22.		H.323	Dial out
Henry Grahams	Conn		172.22.		H.323	Dial out
Joel Hanson	Conn		172.22.		H.323	Dial out
Bridget Jones	Conn		172.22.		H.323	Dial out
Henry Grahams	Conn		172.22.		H.323	Dial out
Dial-out_MS2_2_M1	Conn		172.22.	3333#11154	H.323	Dial out
Peter Resnik	Conn		172.22.		H.323	Dial out
Joel Hanson	Conn		172.22.		H.323	Dial out
Dial-out_MS3_2_M1	Conn		172.22.	3333#11154	H.323	Dial out
Peter Resnik	Conn		172.22.		H.323	Dial out
Dial-out_S4_2_MS2	Conn		172.22.	4444#67791	H.323	Dial out
Joel Hanson	Conn		172.22.		H.323	Dial out
Dial-out_S7_2_MS3	Conn		172.22.	4444#43088	H.323	Dial out
Bridget Jones	Conn		172.22.		H.323	Dial out
Dial-out_S5_2_MS2	Conn		172.22.	4444#67791	H.323	Dial out
Dial-out_S6_2_MS3	Conn		172.22.	4444#43088	H.323	Dial out

Annotations:

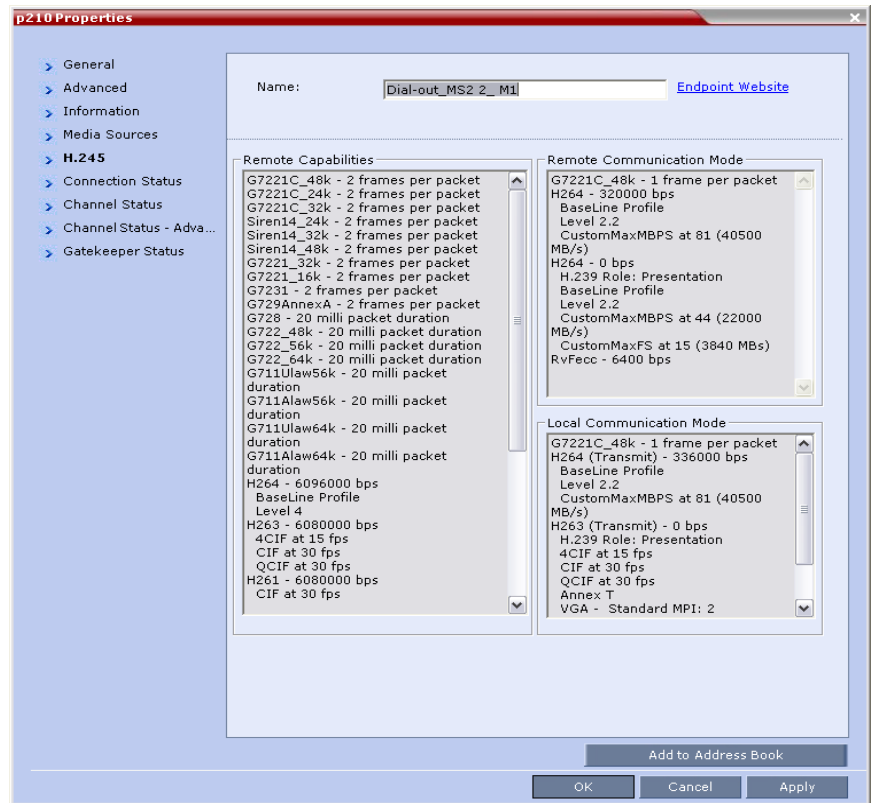
- All Participants
- Cascade Enabled Entry Queue (ID 4444) to Conference ID 43088
- Cascade Enabled Dial-out Participants (Links)

Viewing Participant Properties

Viewing *Participant Properties* enables RMX Web Client users to view the connection capabilities and status of the link.

To view the linked Participant Properties:

- In the *Participants List* pane, double-click or right-click and select **Participant Properties** of the desired Dial-out linked participant. The Participant Properties dialog box is displayed.



For more information see the *RMX 2000 Administrator's Guide*, "Participant Level Monitoring" on page 7-10.

Recording Conferences

The RMX enables audio and video recording of conferences using Polycom RSS 2000 recording system.

The recording system can be installed at the same site as the conferencing MCU or at a remote site. Several MCU's can share the same recording system.

Recording conferences is enabled via a Recording Link, which is a dial-out connection from the conference to the recording system.

Recording can start automatically, when the first participant connects to a conference, or on request, when the RMX user or conference chairperson initiates it.

Configuring the RMX to enable Recording

To make recording possible, you must set up the following components on the conferencing RMX unit:

- Recording Link – defines the connection between the conference and the recording system.
- Recording-enabled Conference IVR Service – recording DTMF codes and messages must be set in the Conference IVR Service to enable “recording-related” voice messages to be played and to allow the conference chairperson to control the recording process using DTMF codes.
- Recording-enabled Profile – recording must be enabled in the Conference Profile assigned to the recorded conference.

Defining the Recording Link

The Recording Link is defined once and can be updated when the H.323 alias or the IP address (of the recording system) is changed. Only one Recording Link can be defined in the RMX and its type must be H.323.

To define a Recording Link:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click **Recording Links** (🔍📁).
- 2 In the *Recording Links* list, click the **New Recording Link** (📁➕) button.
The *New Recording Link* dialog box is displayed.

The screenshot shows a 'New Recording Link' dialog box. It contains a 'Name' field with the value 'Recording Link'. Below this is a section titled 'H323' which includes an 'Alias' field with the value 'RSS', an 'IP Address' field with the value '172.22.89.132', and an 'Alias Type' dropdown menu currently set to 'H.323 ID'. The dialog box has 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

- 3 Define the following parameters:

Table 9-1 Recording Link Parameters


Parameter	Description
<i>Name</i>	Displays the default name that is assigned to the Recording Link. This field is disabled and cannot be modified.
<i>IP Address</i>	Enter the IP address of the recording system. Users may either enter the IP Address or Alias or both.
<i>Alias Name / Type</i>	If you are using the endpoint's alias and not the IP address, first select the type of alias and then enter the endpoint's alias: (H.323 ID, E.164, E-mail ID, Participant Number).

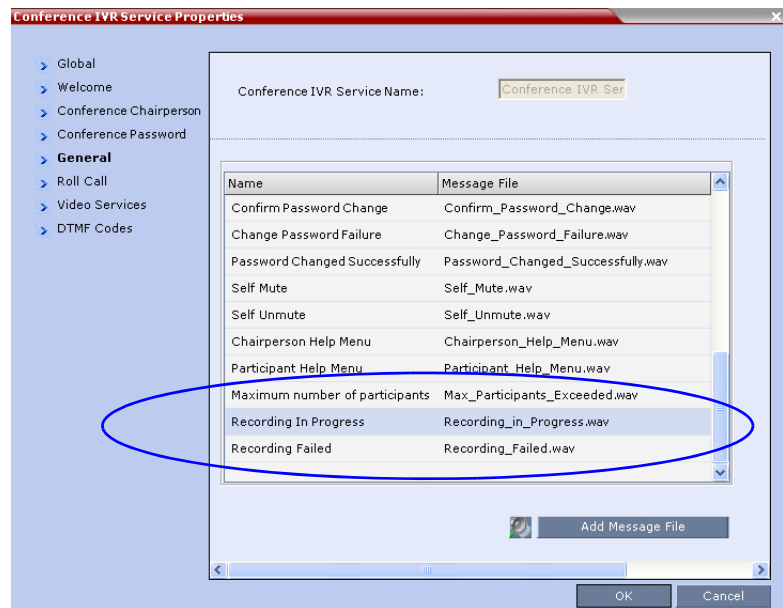
- 4 Click **OK**.
The Recording Link is added to the RMX unit.

Enabling the Recording Features in a Conference IVR Service

In order to record a conference, a Conference IVR Service in which the recording messages and DTMF codes are activated must be assigned to the conference. The default Conference IVR Service shipped with the RMX includes the recording-related voice messages and default DTMF codes that enable the conference chairperson to control the recording process from the endpoint. You can modify these default settings.

To modify the default recording settings for an existing Conference IVR Service:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click the **IVR Services**  button.
The IVR Services are listed in the *IVR Services* list pane.
- 2 To modify the default recording settings, double-click the Conference IVR Service or right-click and select **Properties**.
The *Conference IVR Service Properties* dialog box is displayed.
- 3 To assign voice messages other than the default, click the **General** tab and scroll down the list of messages to the recording messages.



- 4 Select the *Recording In Progress* message, and then select the appropriate message file (by default, *Recording_in_Progress.wav*) from the file list to the right of the field.
- 5 Select the *Recording Failed* message, and then select the appropriate message file (by default, *Recording_Failed.wav*) from the file list to the right of the field.
- 6 To modify the default DTMF codes, click the **DTMF Codes** tab.
- 7 To modify the DTMF code or permission for a recording function:
 - a Select the desired DTMF name (Start, Stop or Pause Recording), click the DTMF code entry and type a new code.

Table 9-2 Default DTMF Codes assigned to the recording process


Recording Operation	DTMF Code	Permission
<i>Start or Resume Recording</i>	*73	Chairperson
<i>Stop Recording</i>	*74	Chairperson
<i>Pause Recording</i>	*75	Chairperson

- b In the *Permission* entry, select whether this function can be used by all conference participants or only the chairperson.
- 8 Click OK.


Enabling the Recording in the Conference Profile

To be able to record a conference, the recording options must be enabled in the Conference Profile assigned to it. You can add recording to existing Profiles by modifying them.

To enable recording for a conference:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click the **Conference Profiles** () button.

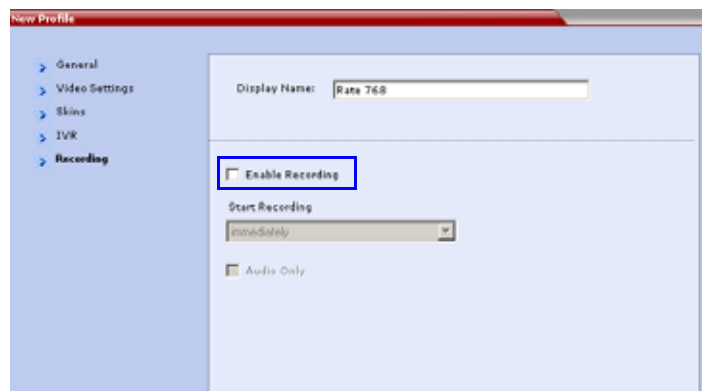
The *Conference Profiles* list is displayed.

- 2 Create a new profile by clicking the **New Profile** ( button or modify an existing profile by double-clicking or right-clicking an existing profile and then selecting **Profile Properties**.



If creating a new profile, complete the conference definition. For more information on creating Profiles see the *RMX Administrators Guide, Defining Profiles* on page 1-8.

- 3 In the *Profile Properties* dialog box, click the **Recording** tab.
- 4 Select the **Enable Recording** check box.



- 5 Define the following parameters:

Table 9-3 Conference Profile Recording Parameters

Parameter	Description
<i>Start recording</i>	Select one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Immediately – conference recording is automatically started upon connection of the first participant. Upon Request – the operator or chairperson must initiate the recording (manual).
<i>Audio only</i>	Select this option to record only the audio channel of the conference.

- 6 Click **OK**.
Recording has been enabled for the Conference Profile.

Managing the Recording Process

When a conference is started and recording is enabled in its Profile, the system will automatically start the recording if the *Start Recording* parameter is set to *immediately*. If it is set to *Upon Request*, the system waits for the chairperson or RMX user's request. Once the recording is initiated for a conference, the MCU connects to the Recording device (RSS 2000) using the default Recording Link. The connection that is created between the conference and the recording device is represented as a special participant (Recording) whose name is the Recording Link. Once the recording has started, the recording process can be stopped and restarted from the Chairperson's endpoint (using DTMF codes) or from the RMX Web Client. After the recording process has finished, the recording can be identified in the RSS 2000 by its RMX conference name.



A conference participant and the Recording Link cannot have identical names, otherwise the recording process will fail.

Using the RMX Web Client to Manage the Recording Process

To manage the recording process using the right-click menu:

- ➔ Right-click the *Recording* participant in the conference and select from one of the following options:

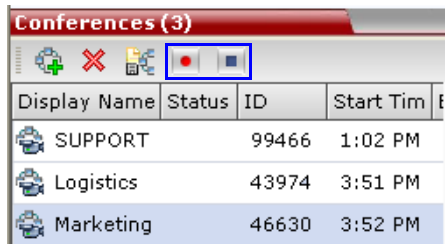
Name	Status	Role	IP Address	Alias Name	Network	Dialing	Audio	Video
Logistics (5 participants)								
Recording	Conn		172.22.	Recordi	H.323	Dial		
Bill Watson	Conn		172.22.		H.323	Dial		
Brad Peterson	Conn		172.22.		H.323	Dial		
Holly Bramson	Conn		172.22.		H.323	Dial		
Maria Vallance	Conn		192.22.		H.323	Dial		

Table 9-4 Recording Participant Right-click Options

Name	Description
<i>Start</i>	Starts recording. When recording has started, this option toggles with the <i>Pause</i> option.
<i>Pause</i>	Pauses the recording of the conference without disconnecting. When the Recording is Paused, this option toggles with the <i>Start</i> option.
<i>Resume</i>	Resumes the recording of the conference. The Resume option toggles with the <i>Pause</i> option when it is used.
<i>Stop</i>	Stops the recording. Note: The Stop button is only enabled when the Recording is <i>Started</i> or <i>Paused</i> .
<i>Suspend Video</i>	The Suspend Video option prevents the incoming video of the recording link participant to be part of the conference layout. The Recording Link participant is set by default to Suspend Video. The Suspend Video option toggles with the Resume Video option.
<i>Resume Video</i>	The Resume Video option enables the incoming video of the recording link participant to be part of the conference layout. This feature may be used to play back previously recorded video or audio feeds in the conference layout. For more information, see the RSS 2000 User Guide.
<i>Participant Properties</i>	The Participant Properties option displays viewing only information for monitoring, e.g. communication capabilities and channels used to connect to the conference. Users will not be able to perform any functional requests from this window, i.e. disconnect, change layout and mute.




To manage the recording process using the Conference toolbar:

- ➔ In the *Conferences* pane, click one of the following buttons in the Conference toolbar.



The recording buttons will only be displayed in the conference toolbar for a conference that is recording-enabled.

Table 9-5 *Conferences List - Recording Toolbar buttons*

Button	Description
	Start/Resume recording. This button toggles with the <i>Pause</i> button.
	Stop recording.
	Pause recording. This button toggles with the <i>Start/Resume</i> button.

Using DTMF Codes to Manage the Recording Process

By entering the appropriate DTMF code on the endpoint, the chairperson can **Stop** the recording (*74), **Pause** it (*75), or **Start/Resume** the recording (*73). For more information on managing the recording process via DTMF codes, see the *RSS 2000 User's Guide*.

Conference Recording with Codian IP VCR

Conference recording is available with Codian VCR 2210, VCR 2220 and VCR 2240.

Recording between the RMX and the Codian VCR is enabled by adding an IP participant to the recorded conference that acts as a link between the conference and the recording device. This participant is identified as a recording link to the Codian VCR according to the product ID sent from the VCR during the connection phase, in the call setup parameters.

The video channel between the conference and the recording device is unidirectional where the video stream is sent from the conference to the recorder.

If the Codian VCR opens a video channel to the conference - this channel is excluded from the conference video mix.

To record a conference running on the RMX using Codian recorder:

- ➔ In the conference, define or add a dial-out participant using the Codian VCR IP address as the address for dialing.

Once added to the conference, the MCU automatically connects the participant (the link to Codian VCR) and the recording is automatically started on the Codian VCR.

A connection can also be defined on the Codian VCR, dialing into the recorded conference using the MCU prefix and the conference ID as for any other dial-in participant in the conference.

Monitoring the recording participant:

This connection is monitored as any other participant in the conference. The connection can also be monitored in the Codian VCR web client.

Users, Connections and Notes

RMX Web Clients users are defined in the User's table and can connect to the MCU to perform various operations.

The RMX supports four user authorization levels:

- Chairperson
- Operator
- Administrator
- Auditor

The authorization level dictates a user's capabilities within the system.

A **Chairperson** can only manage ongoing conferences and participants. The Chairperson does not have access to the RMX configurations and utilities.

An **Operator** can perform all the RMX tasks a Chairperson does. In addition, Operators can manage Meeting Rooms, Profiles, Entry Queues, and SIP Factories, and can also view the RMX configurations, but cannot change them.

An **Administrator** can perform all the tasks of Chairpersons and Operator users. In addition, Administrators can define and delete other users, and perform all configuration and maintenance tasks.

An **Auditor** can only view *Auditor Files* and audit the system.

Administrator and Operator users can verify which users are defined in the system. Neither of them can view the user passwords, but an Administrator can change a password.

The *Users* pane lists the currently defined users in the system and their authorization levels. The pane also enables the administrators to add and delete users.

The RMX is shipped with a default Administrator user called POLYCOM, whose password is POLYCOM. However, once you have defined other authorized Administrator users, it is recommended to remove the default user.

A maximum of 100 users can be defined per RMX.

Listing Users

You can view the list of users that are currently defined in the system.

To view the users currently defined in the system:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click the **Users** () button.

The *Users* pane appears.



Users (3)	
User Name	Authorization Level
POLYCOM	Administrator
chair	Chairperson
SUPPORT	Administrator

The list includes two columns: User Name and Authorization Level. The User name is the login name used by the user to connect to the RMX.

Adding a New User

Administrators can add new users to the system.



The User Name and Password must be in ASCII.

To add a new user to the system:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click the **Users** (👤) button.
- 2 The *Users* pane appears.
- 3 Click the **New User** (👤➕) button or right-click anywhere in the pane and then click **New User**.

The *New User Properties* dialog box opens.



- 4 In the *User Name* text box, enter the name of the new user. This is the login name used by the user when logging into the system.
- 5 In the *Password* text box, enter the new user's password. This will be the user's password when logging into the system.
- 6 In the *Authorization Level* list, select the user type: **Administrator**, **Operator**, **Chairperson** or **Auditor**.
- 7 Click **OK**.

The *User Properties* dialog box closes and the new user is added to the system.

Deleting a User



To delete a user, you must have Administrator authorization. The last remaining Administrator in the *Users* list cannot be deleted.

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click the **Users** () button.
- 2 Select the user and click the **Delete** () button or right-click the user and then click **Delete User**.

The system displays a confirmation message.

- 3 In the *confirmation* dialog box, select **Yes** to confirm or **No** to cancel the operation.

If you select **Yes**, the user name and icon are removed from the system.

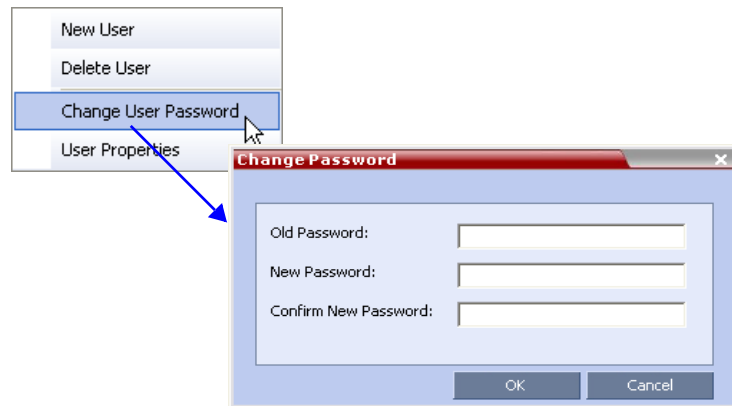
Changing a User's Password

Users with Administrator authorization can change their own password and other users' passwords. Users with Operator authorization can change their own password.

To change a user's password:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click the **Users** (👤) option.
- 2 Right-click the user and click **Change User Password**.

The *Change Password* dialog box opens.



- 3 Enter the *Old Password* (current), *New Password* and *Confirm the New Password*.



The Password must be in ASCII.

- 4 Click **OK**.
The user's password is changed.

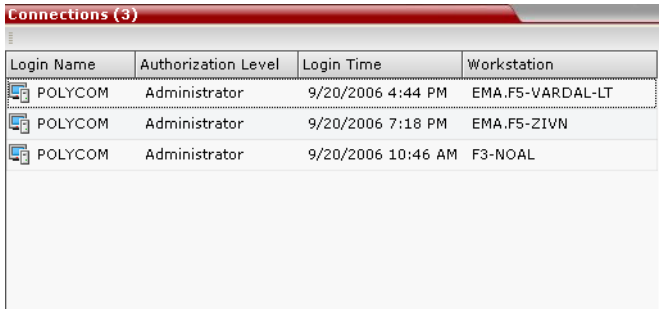
Connections

The RMX enables you to list all connections that are currently logged into the MCU, e.g. users, servers or API users. The MCU issues an ID number for each login. The ID numbers are reset whenever the MCU is reset. A maximum of 50 users can be concurrently logged in to the RMX.

Viewing the Connections List

To list the users who are currently connected to the MCU:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click the **Connections** (🖥️) button. A list of connected users appears in the *Connections* pane.



The screenshot shows a window titled "Connections (3)" with a table of active users. The table has four columns: Login Name, Authorization Level, Login Time, and Workstation. There are three rows of data, all for users named "POLYCOM" with the "Administrator" authorization level.

Login Name	Authorization Level	Login Time	Workstation
POLYCOM	Administrator	9/20/2006 4:44 PM	EMA.F5-VARDAL-LT
POLYCOM	Administrator	9/20/2006 7:18 PM	EMA.F5-ZIVN
POLYCOM	Administrator	9/20/2006 10:46 AM	F3-NOAL

The information includes:

- The user’s login name.
- The user’s authorization level (Chairperson, Operator, Administrator or Auditor).
- The time the user logged in.
- The name/identification of the computer used for the user’s connection.

Notes

Notes are the electronic equivalent of paper sticky notes. You can use notes to write down questions, important phone numbers, names of contact persons, ideas, reminders, and anything you would write on note paper. *Notes* can be left open on the screen while you work.

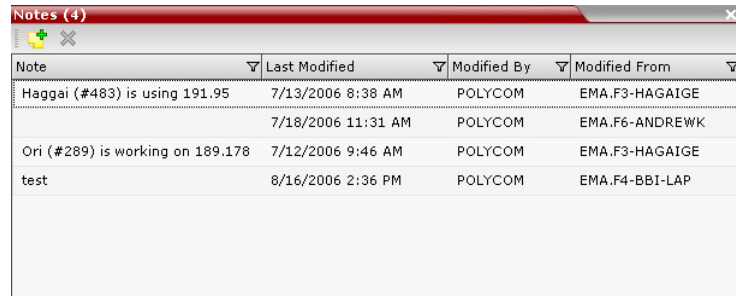
Notes can be read by all RMX Users concurrently connected to the MCU. Notes that are added to the *Notes* list are updated on all workstations by closing and re-opening the *Notes* window. Notes can be written in any Unicode language.

Using Notes


To create a note:

- 1 On the *RMX* menu, click **Administration > Notes**.

The *Notes* window opens.



Note	Last Modified	Modified By	Modified From
Haggai (#483) is using 191.95	7/13/2006 8:38 AM	POLYCOM	EMA.F3-HAGAIGE
	7/18/2006 11:31 AM	POLYCOM	EMA.F6-ANDREWK
Ori (#289) is working on 189.178	7/12/2006 9:46 AM	POLYCOM	EMA.F3-HAGAIGE
test	8/16/2006 2:36 PM	POLYCOM	EMA.F4-BBI-LAP

- 2 In the *Notes* toolbar, click the **New Note** () button, or right-click anywhere inside the *Notes* window and select **New Note**.
- 3 In the *Note* dialog box, type the required text and click **OK**.

The new note is saved and closed. The *Notes* list is updated, listing the new note and its properties:

- **Note** – The beginning of the note's text.
- **Last Modified** – The date of creation or last modification.
- **Modified By** – The *Login Name* of the user who last modified the note.

- **Modified From** – The *Client Application* and *Workstation* from which the note was created or modified.

Note	Last Modified	Modified By	Modified From
Haggai (#483) is using 191.95	7/13/2006 8:38 AM	POLYCOM	EMA.F3-HAGAIGE


Toolbar Handle User Name Client Application Workstation

To open or edit a note:

- ➔ Double-click the entry to edit, or right-click the entry and select **Note Properties**.

The note opens for viewing or editing.

To delete a note:

- 1 In the *Notes* list, select the entry for the note to delete and click the **Delete Note** button (), or right-click the entry and select **Delete Note**.

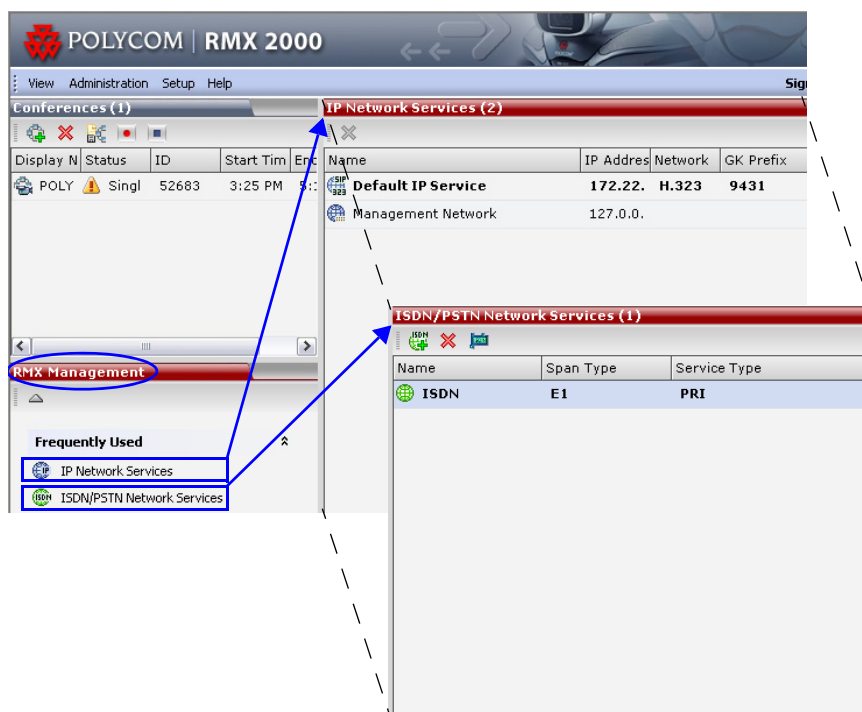
A *delete confirmation* dialog box is displayed.

- 2 Click **OK** to delete the note, or click **Cancel** to keep the note.

Network Services

To enable the RMX to function within IP and ISDN/PSTN network environments, network parameters must be defined for both the *IP Network Services* and *ISDN/PSTN Network Services*. The IP Network Service must be defined for the RMX, while the ISDN/PSTN Network Service definition is optional and is done when the RTM ISDN cards are installed in the MCU.

The configuration dialog boxes for both these network services are accessed via the *RMX Management* pane of the *RMX Web Client*.



IP Network Services

Two *IP Services* are defined for the RMX:

- **Management Network**
- **Default IP Service (Conferencing Service)**

Management Network (Primary)

The *Management Network* is used to control the RMX, mainly via the *RMX Web Client* application. The *Management Network* contains the network parameters that connect between the RMX and the *RMX Web Client*.

Management Network parameters include the IP address of the *Control Unit*. This IP address can be used by the administrator or service personnel to connect to the *Control Unit* should the RMX become corrupted or inaccessible. For more information, see *Appendix F, "Alternate Management Network"* on page **H-1**.

During *First Time Power-up*, the *Management Network* parameters can be set either via a *USB key* or by using a cable to create a private network. For more information, see the *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide, "Procedure 3: First-time Power-up and Connection to MCU"* on page **2-9**.

Default IP Service (Conferencing Service)

The *Default IP Service (Conferencing Service)* is used to configure and manage communications between the RMX and conferencing devices such as endpoints, gatekeepers, SIP servers, etc.

The *Default IP Service* contains parameters for:

- Signaling Host IP Address
- MPM boards (media processors)
- External conferencing devices

Calls from all external IP entities are made to the *Signaling Host*, which initiates call set-up and assigns the call to the appropriate *MPM board*.

Conferencing related definitions such as environment (H.323 or SIP) are also defined in this service.

Most of the *Default IP Service* is configured by the *Fast Configuration Wizard*, which runs automatically should the following occur:

- First time power-up
- *Default IP Service* is deleted, followed by an RMX reset.

For more information, see the *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide*, "Procedure 3: First-time Power-up and Connection to MCU" on page 2-9.



Changes made to any of these parameters only take effect when the RMX unit is reset. An *Active Alarm* is created when changes made to the system have not yet been implemented and the MCU must be reset.

Modifying the Management Network

The *Management Network* parameters need to be modified if you want to:

- Connect directly to the MCU from a workstation
- Modify routes
- Modify DNS information
- Modify the speed of LAN 2 port

To view or modify the Management Network Service:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click the **IP Network Services** (🌐) button.
- 2 In the *IP Network Services* list pane, double-click the **Management Network** (🖥️) entry.

The *Management Network Properties - IP* dialog box opens.

Management Network Properties

> **IP**

> Routers

> DNS

> LAN Ports

Network Service Name: Management Network

Control Unit IP Address: 127.0.0.1

Shelf Management IP Address: 0.0.0.0

Subnet Mask: 255.255.248.0

☐ Secured Communication

OK Cancel

3 View or modify the following fields:

Table 11-1 Management Network Properties – IP Parameters

Field	Description
Network Service Name	Displays the name of the Management Network. This name cannot be modified. Note: The field is displayed in all Management Network Properties tabs.
Control Unit IP Address	The IP address of the RMX Control Unit. This IP address is used by the RMX Web Client to connect to the RMX.
Shelf Management IP Address	The IP Address of the server that manages the RMX hardware shelf.
Subnet Mask	The subnet mask of the Control Unit.

4 Click the **Routers** tab.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Management Network Properties" with a sidebar on the left containing a tree view with the following items: IP, **Routers** (highlighted with a blue circle), DNS, and LAN Ports. The main content area of the window is divided into sections. The first section is "Network Service Name:" with a text box containing "Management Network:". The second section is "Default Router IP Address:" with a text box containing "0.0.0.0". The third section is "Static Routes:" followed by a table with four columns: "Router IP Address", "Remote IP Address", "Subnet Mask", and "Remote Type". The table contains five rows of data, all with "0.0.0.0" in the first three columns and "Network" in the last column.

Router IP Address	Remote IP Address	Subnet Mask	Remote Type
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	Network
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	Network
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	Network
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	Network
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	Network

At the bottom right of the window are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

5 View or modify the following fields:

Table 11-2 Management Network Properties – Routes Parameters

Field	Description
<i>Default Router IP Address</i>	Enter the IP address of the default router. The default router is used whenever the defined static routers are not able to route packets to their destination. The default router is also used when host access is restricted to one default router.
<i>Static Routes Table</i>	<p>The system uses <i>Static Routes</i> to search other networks for endpoint addresses that are not found on the local LAN. Up to five routers can be defined in addition to the Default Router. The order in which the routers appear in the list determines the order in which the system looks for the endpoints on the various networks. If the address is in the local subnet, no router is used.</p> <p>To define a static route (starting with the first), click the appropriate column and enter the required value.</p>
<i>Router IP Address</i>	Enter the IP address of the router.
<i>Remote IP Address</i>	<p>Enter the IP address of the entity to be reached outside the local network. The <i>Remote Type</i> determines whether this entity is a specific component (Host) or a network.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If Host is selected in the <i>Remote Type</i> field, enter the IP address of the endpoint. • If Network is selected in the <i>Remote Type</i> field, enter of the segment of the other network.
<i>Remote Subnet Mask</i>	Enter the subnet mask of the remote network.
<i>Remote Type</i>	<p>Select the type of router connection:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Network – defines a connection to a router segment in another network. • Host – defines a direct connection to an endpoint found on another network.

6 Click the **DNS** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'ManagementNetwork Properties' dialog box with the 'DNS' tab selected. The left sidebar contains a tree view with 'IP', 'Routers', 'DNS' (selected), and 'LAN Ports'. The main area contains the following fields:

- Network Service Name: Management Network
- MCU Host Name: Who_are_you
- Shelf Management Host Name: (empty)
- DNS: Off (dropdown menu)
- ☐ Register Host Names Automatically to DNS Servers
- Local Domain Name: (empty)
- DNS Servers Addresses:
 - Primary Server: 0.0.0.0
 - Secondary Server: 0.0.0.0
 - Tertiary Server: 0.0.0.0

At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

7 In the *DNS* field, select **Specify** to define the DNS parameters.

8 View or modify the following fields:

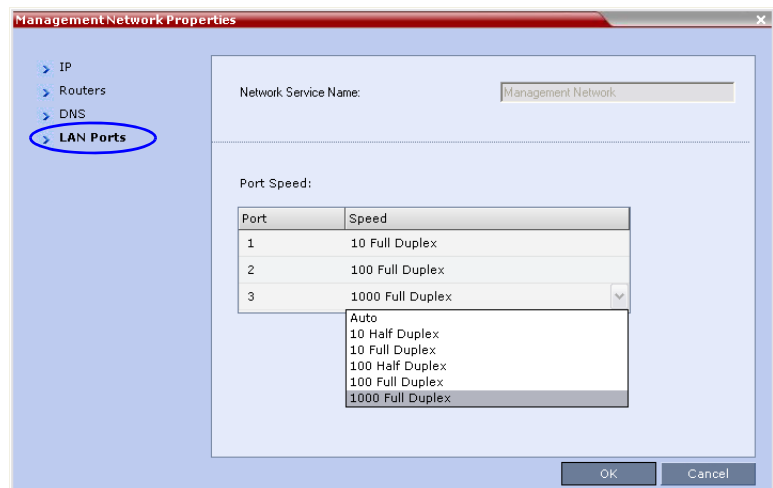
Table 11-3 Management Network Properties – DNS Parameters

Field	Description
<i>MCU Host Name</i>	Enter the name of the MCU on the network. Default name is RMX
<i>Shelf Management Host Name</i>	Displays the name of the entity that manages the RMX hardware. The name is derived from the MCU host name. Default is RMX_SHM.
<i>DNS</i>	Select: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Off – if DNS servers are not used in the network.• Specify – to enter the IP addresses of the DNS servers. Note: The IP address fields are enabled only if Specify is selected.

Table 11-3 Management Network Properties – DNS Parameters
(Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Register Host Names Automatically to DNS Servers</i>	Select this option to automatically register the MCU Signaling Host and Shelf Management with the DNS server.
<i>Local Domain Name</i>	Enter the name of the domain where the MCU is installed.
DNS Servers Addresses:	
<i>Primary Server</i>	The static IP addresses of the DNS servers. A maximum of three servers can be defined.
<i>Secondary Server</i>	
<i>Tertiary Server</i>	

9 Click the **LAN Ports** tab.



- 10 View or modify the following fields:

Table 11-4 *Management Network Properties – LAN Ports Parameters*

Field	Description	
<i>Port Speed</i>	The RMX has 3 LAN ports. The administrator can set the speed and transmit/receive mode manually for LAN 2 Port only.	
	<i>Port</i>	The LAN port number: 1, 2 or 3. Note: Do not change the automatic setting of Port 1 and Port 3. Any change to Port 1 speed will not be applied.
	<i>Speed</i>	Select the speed and transmit/receive mode for each port. Default: Auto – Negotiation of speed and transmit/receive mode starts at 1000 Mbits/second Full Duplex, proceeding downward to 10 Mbits/second Half Duplex. Note: To maximize conferencing performance, especially in high bit rate call environments, a 1Gb connection is recommended.





- 11 Click **OK**.
- 12 If you have modified the *Management Network Properties*, reset the MCU.

Modifying the Default IP Network Service

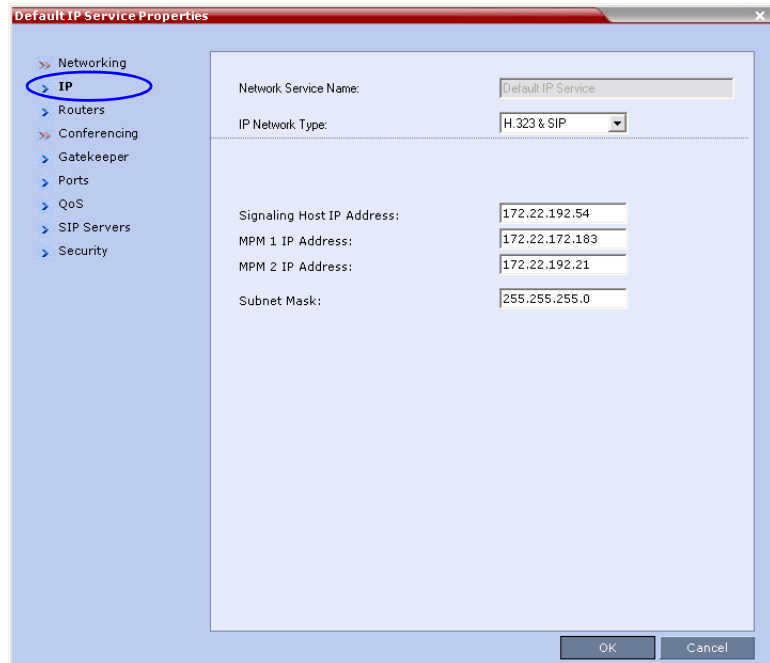
The *Default IP Service* parameters need to be modified if you want to change the:

- Network type that the RMX connects to
- IP address of the RMX Signaling Host
- IP addresses of the RMX Media boards
- Subnet mask of the RMX's IP cards
- Gatekeeper parameters or add gatekeepers to the Alternate Gatekeepers list
- SIP server parameters

To view or modify the Default IP Service:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click **IP Network Services** ().
- 2 In the *Network* list pane, double-click the **Default IP Service** ( ,  , or ) entry.

The *Default IP Service - Networking IP* dialog box opens.



- 3 View or modify the following fields:

Table 11-5 *Default IP Service – Networking – IP Parameters*

Field	Description
<i>Network Service Name</i>	<p>The name <i>Default IP Service</i> is assigned to the IP Network Service by the Fast Configuration Wizard. This name can be changed.</p> <p>Note: This field is displayed in all IP Signaling dialog boxes and can contain character sets that use Unicode encoding.</p>

Table 11-5 Default IP Service – Networking – IP Parameters (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>IP Network Type</i>	<p>Displays the network type selected during the First Entry configuration. The Default IP Network icon indicates the selected environment.</p> <p>You can select:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • H.323: For an H.323-only Network Service. • SIP: For a SIP-only Network Service. • H.323 & SIP: For an integrated IP Service. Both H.323 and SIP participants can connect to the MCU using this service. <p>Note: This field is displayed in all Default IP Service tabs.</p>
<i>Signaling Host IP Address</i>	<p>Enter the address to be used by IP endpoints when dialing in to the MCU.</p> <p>Dial out calls from the RMX are initiated from this address.</p> <p>This address is used to register the RMX with a Gatekeeper or a SIP Proxy server.</p>
<i>MPM 1 IP Address</i>	<p>Enter the IP address(es) of the media card (s) (MPM/MPM+ 1 and MPM/MPM+ 2 (if installed)) as provided by the network administrator. Endpoints connect to conferences and transmit call media (video, voice and content) via these addresses.</p>
<i>MPM 2 IP Address</i>	
<i>Subnet Mask</i>	<p>Enter the subnet mask of the MCU.</p> <p>Default value: 255.255.255.0.</p>

- 4 If required, click the **Routers** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Default IP Service Properties' dialog box. On the left, a tree view has 'Routers' selected and circled in blue. The main panel contains the following fields and table:

Network Service Name:

IP Network Type:

Default Router IP Address:

Static Routes:

Router IP Address	Remote IP Address	Subnet Mask	Remote Type
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	Network
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	Network
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	Network
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	Network
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	Network

At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- 5 View or modify the fields in the *Routers* tab.

The field definitions of the *Routers* tab are the same as for the *Management Network*.

For more information, see Table 11-2 - "*Management Network Properties – Routes Parameters*" on page 11-5.

6 If required, click the **Gatekeeper** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Default IP Service Properties' dialog box with the 'Gatekeeper' tab selected. The left sidebar contains a tree view with 'Gatekeeper' highlighted. The main area contains the following fields:

- Network Service Name: Default IP Service
- IP Network Type: H.323 & SIP
- Gatekeeper: Specify (dropdown)
- Primary Gatekeeper IP Address or Name: (text field)
- Alternate Gatekeeper IP Address or Name: (text field)
- MCU Prefix in Gatekeeper: 9431
- ☐ Register as Gateway
- Service Mode: Board Hunting (dropdown)
- Refresh Registration every: 120 seconds
- Aliases table:

Alias	Type
pizzaUri23	H.323 ID
test@email.co	Email ID
	None
	None
	None

OK Cancel

7 View or modify the following fields:

Table 11-6 Default IP Service – Conferencing – Gatekeeper Parameters

Field	Description
Gatekeeper	Select Specify to enable configuration of the gatekeeper IP address. When Off is selected, all gatekeeper options are disabled.
Primary Gatekeeper IP Address or Name	Enter either the gatekeeper’s host name as registered in the DNS or IP address.

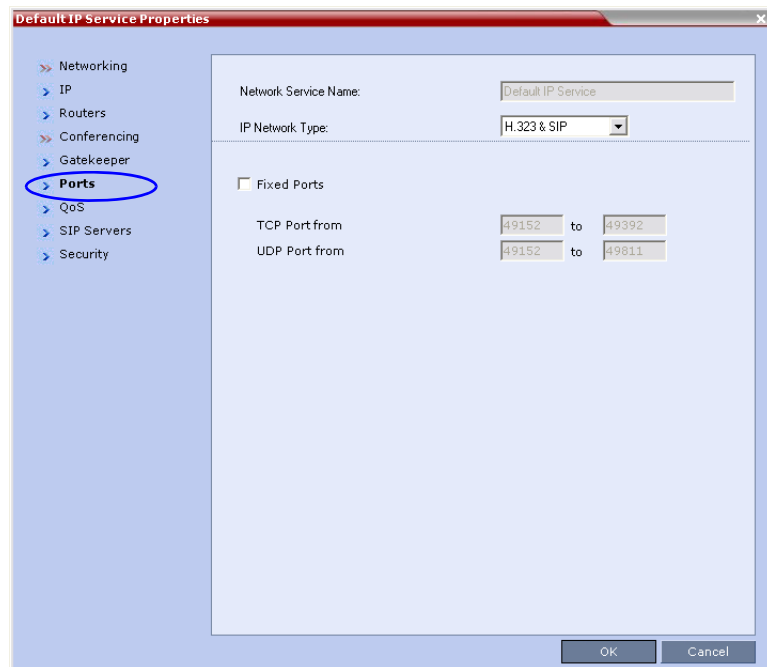
Table 11-6 Default IP Service – Conferencing – Gatekeeper Parameters
(Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Alternate Gatekeeper IP Address or Name</i>	Enter the DNS host name or IP address of the gatekeeper used as a fallback gatekeeper used when the primary gatekeeper is not functioning properly.
<i>MCU Prefix in Gatekeeper</i>	Enter the number with which this Network Service registers in the gatekeeper. This number is used by H.323 endpoints as the first part of their dial-in string when dialing the MCU. When PathNavigator or SE200 is used, this prefix automatically registers with the gatekeeper. When another gatekeeper is used, this prefix must also be defined in the gatekeeper.
<i>Register as Gateway</i>	Select this check box if the RMX unit is to be seen as a gateway, for example, when using a Cisco gatekeeper. Note: Do not select this check box when using Polycom ReadManager/CMA 5000 or a Radvision gatekeeper.
<i>Refresh Registration every ___ seconds</i>	The frequency with which the system informs the gatekeeper that it is active by re-sending the IP address and aliases of the IP cards to the gatekeeper. If the IP card does not register within the defined time interval, the gatekeeper will not refer calls to this IP card until it re-registers. If set to 0, re-registration is disabled. Note: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is recommended to use default settings. This is a re-registration and not a 'keep alive' operation – an alternate gatekeeper address may be returned.
Aliases:	

Table 11-6 *Default IP Service – Conferencing – Gatekeeper Parameters (Continued)*

Field	Description
<i>Alias</i>	<p>The alias that identifies the RMX's Signaling Host within the network. Up to five aliases can be defined for each RMX.</p> <p>Note: When a gatekeeper is specified, at least one prefix or alias must be entered in the table.</p>
<i>Type</i>	<p>The type defines the format in which the card's alias is sent to the gatekeeper. Each alias can be of a different type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• H.323 ID (alphanumeric ID)• E.164 (digits 0-9, * and #)• Email ID (email address format, e.g. abc@example.com)• Participant Number (digits 0-9, * and #) <p>Note: Although all types are supported, the type of alias to be used depends on your gatekeeper's capabilities.</p>

8 To view or modify fixed port settings, click the **Ports** tab.



Settings in the Ports tab allow specific ports in the firewall to be allocated to multimedia conference calls.

The port range recommended by IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority) is 49152 to 65535. The MCU uses this recommendation along with the number of licensed ports to calculate the port range.

- 9 To modify the default settings select the **Fixed Ports** check box.

Table 11-7 Default IP Service – Conferencing – Ports Parameters

Field	Description
<i>Fixed Ports</i>	<p>Leave this check box clear if you are defining a Network Service for local calls that do not require configuring the firewall to accept calls from external entities.</p> <p>When un-checked, the system uses the default port range. Select this option to enable other port ranges or to limit the number of ports to be left open.</p>

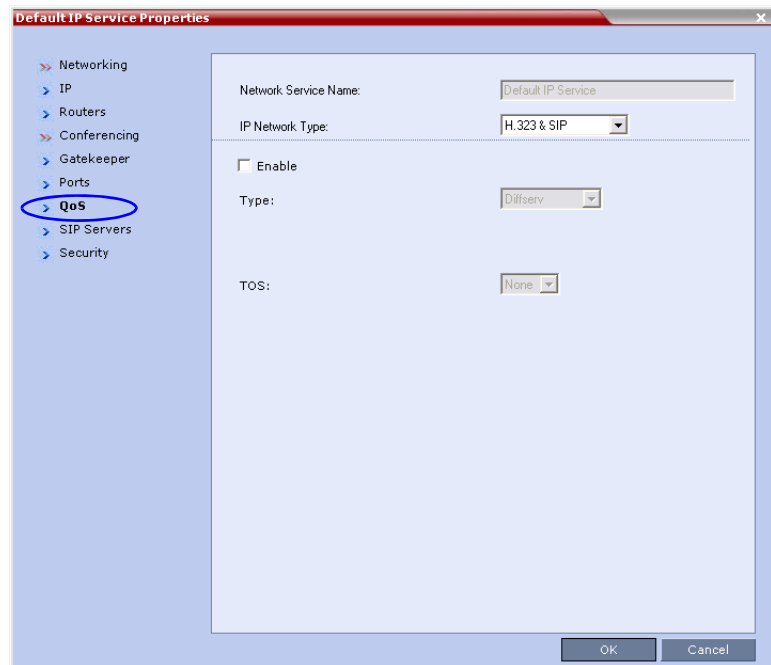
Table 11-7 *Default IP Service – Conferencing – Ports Parameters
(Continued)*

Field	Description
<i>TCP Port from - to</i>	Displays the default settings for port numbers used for signaling and control. To modify the number of TCP ports, enter the first and last port numbers in the range. The number of ports is calculated as follows: Number of simultaneous calls x 2 ports (1 signaling + 1 control).
<i>UDP Port from - to</i>	Displays the default settings for port numbers used for audio and video. To modify the number of UDP ports, enter the first and last port numbers in the range. The number of ports is calculated as follows: Number of simultaneous calls x 6 ports (2 audio + 4 video).



If the network administrator does not specify an adequate port range, the system will accept the settings and issue a warning. Calls will be rejected when the MCU's ports are exceeded.

10 If required, click the **QoS** tab.



Quality of Service (QoS) is important when transmitting high bandwidth audio and video information. *QoS* can be measured and guaranteed in terms of:

- Average delay between packets
- Variation in delay (jitter)
- Transmission error rate

DiffServ and *Precedence* are the two *QoS* methods supported by the RMX. These methods differ in the way the packet's priority is encoded in the packet header.

RMX's implementation of *QoS* is defined per Network Service, not per endpoint.

11 View or modify the following fields:**Table 11-8** Default IP Service – Conferencing – QoS Parameters

Field	Description
<i>Enable</i>	Select to enable configuration of the QoS settings. When un-checked, the system uses the default QoS settings.
<i>Type</i>	<p>DiffServ and Precedence are two methods for encoding packet priority. The priority set here for audio and video packets should match the priority set in the router.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• DiffServ: Select when the network router uses DiffServ for priority encoding. The default priority is 4 for both audio and video packets. Note: If you select DiffServ but your router does not support this standard, IP packets queue on the same communication links with data packets. This non-prioritized queuing greatly increases the latency and jitter in their delivery.• Precedence: Select when the network router uses Precedence for priority encoding, or when you are not sure which method is used by the router. Precedence should be combined with None in the TOS field. Note: Precedence is the default mode as it is capable of providing priority services to all types of routers, as well as being currently the most common mechanism.
<i>Audio / Video</i>	You can prioritize audio and video IP packets to ensure that all participants in the conference hear and see each other clearly. Select the desired priority. The scale is from 0 to 5, where 0 is the lowest priority and 5 is the highest. The recommended priority is 4 for audio and 4 for video to ensure that the delay for both packet types is the same and that audio and video packets are synchronized and to ensure lip sync.

Table 11-8 *Default IP Service – Conferencing – QoS Parameters*
(Continued)

Field	Description
TOS	<p>Select the type of Service (TOS) that defines optimization tagging for routing the conferences audio and video packets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Delay: The recommended default for video conferencing; prioritized audio and video packets tagged with this definition are delivered with minimal delay (the throughput of IP packets minimizes the queue sequence and the delay between packets).• None: No optimization definition is applied. This is a compatibility mode in which routing is based on Precedence priority settings only. Select None if you do not know which standard your router supports.

12 To view or modify *SIP* server settings, click the **SIP Servers** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Default IP Service Properties' dialog box with the 'SIP Servers' tab selected. The left sidebar contains a tree view with 'SIP Servers' highlighted. The main area contains the following fields and controls:

- Network Service Name: Default IP Service
- IP Network Type: H.323 & SIP
- SIP Server: Specify
- Register:
 - ☒ Ongoing Conferences
 - ☒ Meeting Rooms
 - ☒ Entry Queues
 - ☒ SIP Factories
- Refresh Registration every: 3600 seconds
- Transport Type: UDP
- SIP Servers table:

Parameter	Primary	Alternate Server
Server I	172.22.	
Server	172.22.	
Port	5060	
- Outbound Proxy Servers table:

Parameter	Primary Server
Server I	172.22.188.150
Port	5060

OK and Cancel buttons are at the bottom right.

13 View or modify the following fields:

Table 11-9 Default IP Service – Conferencing – SIP Servers Parameters

Field	Description
<i>SIP Server</i>	Select: <ul style="list-style-type: none">Specify – to manually configure SIP servers.Off – if SIP servers are not present in the network.

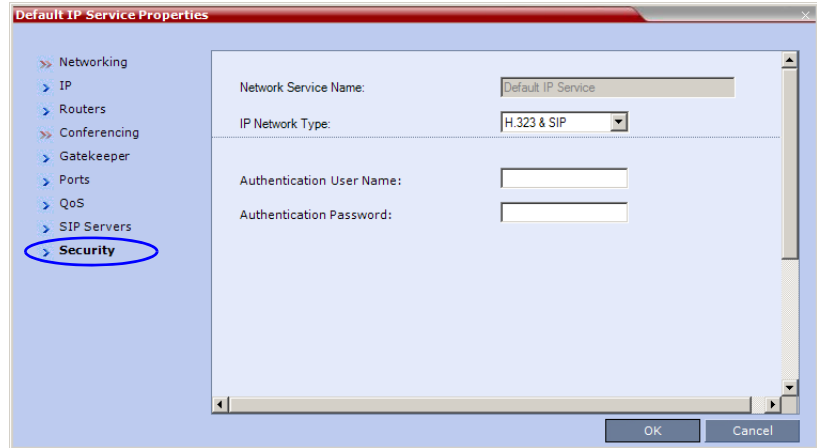
Table 11-9 Default IP Service – Conferencing – SIP Servers Parameters
(Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Register: On going Conferences/ Meeting Rooms/ Entry Queues & SIP Factories</i>	Select the conferencing elements to register with the SIP server. Registering all the conferences and Meeting Rooms with the SIP proxy loads the proxy as the registration is constantly refreshed. It is therefore recommended to register only the Entry Queues and SIP Factories, and use the Entry Queue for conference access.
<i>Refresh Registration every __ seconds</i>	Enter the frequency in which the system informs the SIP proxy that it is active by re-sending the details of all registered conferencing elements to the server. If the registration is not renewed within the defined time interval, the SIP server will not refer calls to the conferencing entity until it reregisters. If timeout is set to 0, re-registration is disabled. The default value is 3600 seconds (60 minutes).
<i>Transport Type</i>	Select the protocol that is used for signaling between the MCU and the SIP Server or the endpoints according to the protocol supported by the SIP Server: UDP – Select this option to use UDP for signaling. TCP – Select this option to use TCP for signaling. TLS – The <i>Signaling Host</i> listens on secured port 5061 only and all outgoing connections are established on secured connections. Calls from SIP clients or servers to non secured ports are rejected. The following protocols are supported: TLS 1.0, SSL 2.0 and SSL 3.0.
SIP Servers: Primary / Alternate Server	
<i>Server IP Address</i>	Enter the IP address of the preferred SIP server.

Table 11-9 Default IP Service – Conferencing – SIP Servers Parameters
(Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Server Domain Name</i>	<p>Enter the name of the domain that you are using for conferences, for example: user_name@domain name</p> <p>The domain name is used for identifying the SIP server in the appropriate domain according to the host part in the dialed string.</p> <p>For example, when a call to EQ1@polycom.com reaches its outbound proxy, this proxy looks for the SIP server in the polycom.com domain, to which it will forward the call.</p> <p>When this call arrives at the SIP server in polycom.com, the server looks for the registered user (EQ1) and forwards the call to this Entry Queue or conference.</p>
<i>Port</i>	<p>Enter the number of the TCP or UDP port used for listening. The port number must match the port number configured in the SIP server.</p> <p>Default port is 5060.</p>
Outbound Proxy Servers: Primary / Alternate Server	
<i>Server IP Address</i>	<p>By default, the Outbound Proxy Server is the same as the SIP Server. If they differ, modify the IP address of the Outbound Proxy and the listening port number (if required).</p>
<i>Port</i>	<p>Enter the port number the outbound proxy is listening to.</p> <p>The default port is 5060.</p>

- 14** To view or modify *Security* settings (SIP Digest), click the **Security** tab.



SIP Digest authentication is established by both SIP entities transmitting an MD5 (Message-Digest Algorithm 5) encrypted, shared password to each other without having to send a password in plain text over the network.

A SIP Server may require the RMX to authenticate itself during registration of SIP URIs such as Conferences, Meeting Rooms, Entry Queues and SIP factories, or when the RMX is trying to establish dial-out call via the SIP server.

- 15** View or modify the following fields:

Table 11-10 Default IP Service – Security (*SIP Digest*)


Field	Description
<i>Authentication User Name</i>	Enter the conference, Entry Queue or Meeting Room name as registered with the proxy. This field can contain up to 20 ASCII characters.
<i>Authentication Password</i>	Enter the conference, Entry Queue or Meeting Room password as defined in the proxy. This field can contain up to 20 ASCII characters.

If the *Authentication User Name* and *Authentication Password* fields are left empty, the SIP Digest authentication request is rejected. For registration without authentication, the RMX must be registered as a trusted entity on the SIP server.

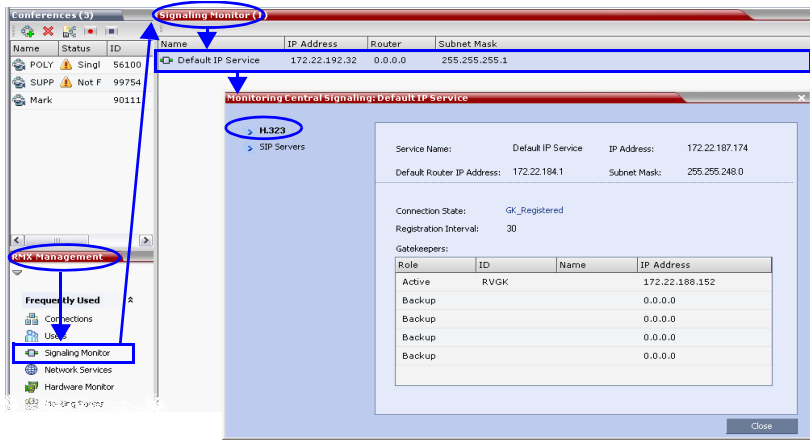
IP Network Monitoring

Central Signaling is the RMX entity used for monitoring the status of external network entities such as the gatekeeper, DNS, SIP proxy and Outbound proxy and their interaction with the MCU.

To monitor Central Signaling status:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click **Signaling Monitor** ().
- 2 In the *Central Signaling* pane, double-click **Default IP Service**.

The *Monitoring Central Signaling* dialog box opens.

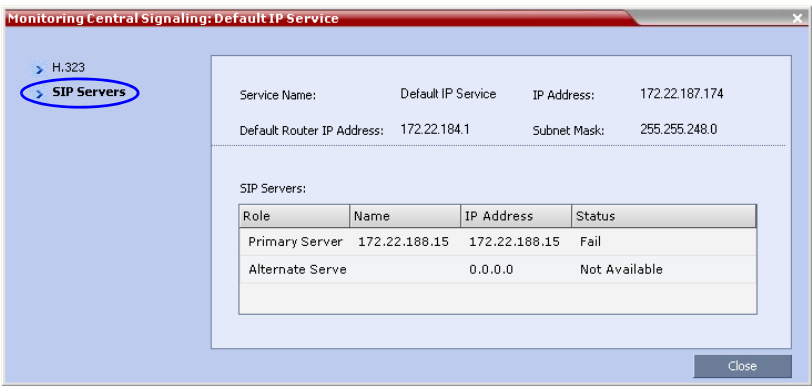


The *Monitoring Central Signaling – H.323* dialog box displays the following fields:

Table 11-11 *Monitoring Central Signaling – H.323 Parameters*

Field	Description
<i>Connection State</i>	<p>The state of the connection between the Signaling Host and the gatekeeper:</p> <p>Discovery - The Signaling Host is attempting to locate the gatekeeper.</p> <p>Registration - The Signaling Host is in the process of registering with the gatekeeper.</p> <p>Registered - The Signaling Host is registered with the gatekeeper.</p> <p>Not Registered - The registration of the Signaling Host with the gatekeeper failed.</p>
<i>Registration Interval</i>	<p>The interval in seconds between the Signaling Host's registration messages to the gatekeeper. This value is taken from either the IP Network Service or from the gatekeeper during registration. The lesser value of the two is chosen.</p>
<i>Role</i>	<p>Active - The active gatekeeper.</p> <p>Backup - The backup gatekeeper that can be used if the connection to the preferred gatekeeper fails.</p>
<i>ID</i>	The gatekeeper ID retrieved from the gatekeeper during the registration process.
<i>Name</i>	The gatekeeper's host's name.
<i>IP Address</i>	The gatekeeper's IP address.

3 Click the **SIP Servers** tab.



The *Monitoring Central Signaling – SIP Servers* dialog box displays the following fields:

Table 11-12 *Monitoring Central Signaling – SIP Servers Parameters*

Field	Description
<i>Role</i>	Active -The default SIP Server is used for SIP traffic. Backup -The SIP Server is used for SIP traffic if the preferred proxy fails.
<i>Name</i>	The name of the SIP Server.
<i>IP</i>	The SIP Server's IP address.
<i>Status</i>	The connection state between the SIP Server and the Signaling Host. Not Available - No SIP server is available. Auto - Gets information from DHCP, if used.

ISDN/PSTN Network Services

To enable ISDN and PSTN participants to connect to the MCU, an ISDN/PSTN Network Service must be defined. A maximum of two ISDN/PSTN Network Services, of the same *Span Type* (E1 or T1) can be defined for the RMX. Each Network Service can attach spans from either or both cards.

Most of the parameters of the first *ISDN/PSTN Network Service* are configured in the *Fast Configuration Wizard*, which runs automatically if an RTM ISDN card is detected in the RMX during first time power-up. For more information, see the *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide*, "Procedure 3: First-time Power-up and Connection to MCU" on page 2-9.

Supported Capabilities and Conferencing Features:

- ISDN video is supported only in *Continuous Presence* (CP) conferences.
- Only BONDING (using multiple channels as a single, large bandwidth channel) is supported.
- Simple audio negotiation.
- Supported video resolutions are the same as for IP.
- Supported video Protocols are the same as for IP: H.261, H.263, H.264.
- H.239 for content sharing.
- Lecture Mode.
- DTMF codes.
- Securing of conferences.

Non Supported Capabilities and Conferencing Features:

- NFAS (Non-Facility Associated Signaling)
- Leased line usage
- Restricted Channel mode
- Aggregation of channels
- V.35 serial standards
- Primary and secondary clock source configuration (they are automatically selected by the system)
- Auto detection of *Audio Only* setting at endpoint
- Auto re-negotiation of bit rate
- Additional network services (two currently supported)

- Change of video mode (capabilities) from remote side during call
- Audio algorithms G.729 and G.723.1
- FECC
- H.243 Chair Control
- Encryption
- T.120 data sharing protocol
- H.261 Annex D
- Cascading using an ISDN connection as cascade link

Adding/Modifying ISDN/PSTN Network Services

The system administrator can use the *RMX Management – ISDN/PSTN Network Services* section of the *RMX Web Client* to add a second ISDN/PSTN Network Service or modify the first ISDN/PSTN Network Service.



A new ISDN/PSTN Network Service can be defined even if no RTM ISDN card is installed in the system.

Obtaining ISDN/PSTN required information

Before configuring the ISDN/PSTN Network Service, obtain the following information from your ISDN/PSTN Service Provider:

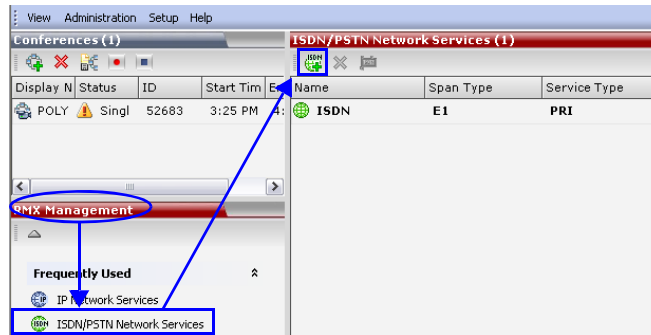
- Switch Type
- Line Coding and Framing
- Numbering Plan
- Numbering Type
- Dial-in number range



If the RMX is connected to the public ISDN Network, an external CSU or similar equipment is needed.

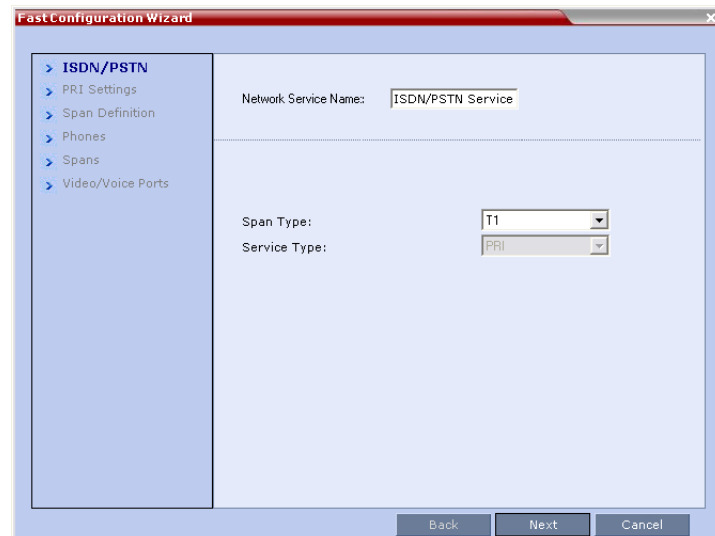
To Add an ISDN/PSTN Network Service:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click **ISDN/PSTN Network Services** (ISDN).



- 2 In the *ISDN/PSTN Network Services* list menu, click the **New ISDN/PSTN Service** button (ISDN) or right-click anywhere in the *ISDN/PSTN Network Services* list and select **New ISDN/PSTN Service**.

The *Fast Configuration Wizard* sequence begins with the *ISDN/PSTN* dialog box:



3 Define the following parameters:**Table 11-13** ISDN Service Settings

Field	Description
<i>Network Service Name</i>	<p>Specify the service provider's (carrier) name or any other name you choose, using up to 20 characters. The Network Service Name identifies the ISDN/PSTN Service to the system.</p> <p>Default name: ISDN/PSTN Service</p> <p>Note: This field is displayed in all ISDN/PSTN Network Properties tabs and can contain character sets that use Unicode encoding.</p>
<i>Span Type</i>	<p>Select the type of spans (ISDN/PSTN) lines, supplied by the service provider, that are connected to the RMX. Each span can be defined as a separate Network Service, or all the spans from the same carrier can be defined as part of the same Network Service.</p> <p>Select either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• T1 (U.S. – 23 B channels + 1 D channel)• E1 (Europe – 30 B channels + 1 D channel) <p>Default: T1</p>
<i>Service Type</i>	<p>PRI is the only supported service type. It is automatically selected.</p>

4 Click **Next**.

The *PRI Settings* dialog box is displayed:

Fast Configuration Wizard

- > ISDN/PSTN
- > **PRI Settings**
- > Span Definition
- > Phones
- > Spans
- > Video/Voice Ports

Network Service Name:

Default Num Type:

Num Plan:

Net Specific:

Dial-out Prefix:

Back Next Cancel

- 5 Define the following parameters:

Table 11-14 *PRI Settings*

Field	Description
<i>Default Num Type</i>	<p>Select the Default Num Type from the list.</p> <p>The Num Type defines how the system handles the dialing digits. For example, if you type eight dialing digits, the Num Type defines whether this number is national or international.</p> <p>If the PRI lines are connected to the RMX via a network switch, the selection of the Num Type is used to route the call to a specific PRI line. If you want the network to interpret the dialing digits for routing the call, select Unknown.</p> <p>Default: Unknown</p> <p>Note: For E1 spans, this parameter is set by the system.</p>

Table 11-14 PRI Settings (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Num Plan</i>	Select the type of signaling (Number Plan) from the list according to information given by the service provider. Default: ISDN Note: For E1 spans, this parameter is set by the system.
<i>Net Specific</i>	Select the appropriate service program if one is used by your service provider (carrier). Some service providers may have several service programs that can be used. Default: None
<i>Dial-out Prefix</i>	Enter the prefix that the PBX requires to dial out. Leave this field blank if a dial-out prefix is not required. The field can contain be empty (blank) or a numeric value between 0 and 9999 . Default: Blank

6 Click Next.

The *Span Definition* dialog box is displayed:

Fast Configuration Wizard

> ISDN/PSTN
 > PRI Settings
 > **Span Definition**
 > Phones
 > Spans
 > Video/Voice Ports

Network Service Name: ISDN/PSTN Service

Framing: ESF
 Side: User side
 Line Coding: B&ZS
 Switch Type: AT&T 4ESS

Back Next Cancel

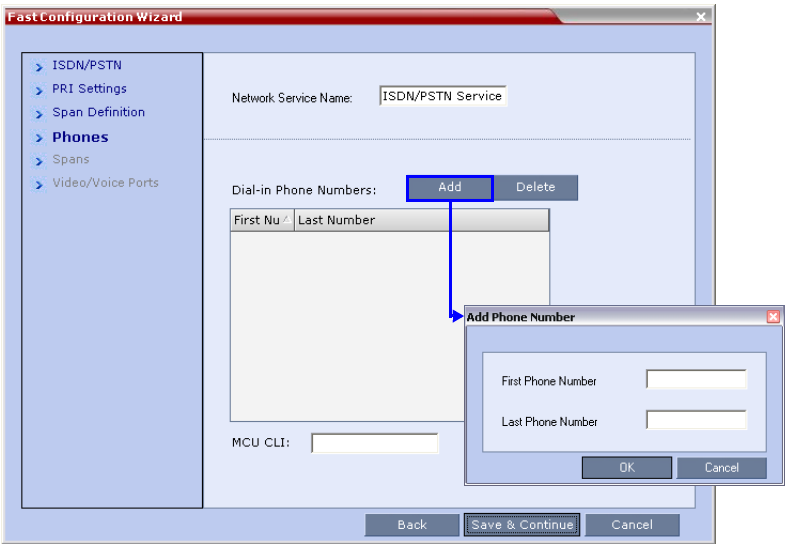
Table 11-15 *Span Definition*

Field	Description
<i>Framing</i>	Select the Framing format used by the carrier for the network interface from the list. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For T1 spans, default is SFBSF. For E1 spans, default is FEBSF.
<i>Side</i>	Select one of the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> User side (default) Network side Symmetric side <p>Note: If the PBX is configured on the network side, then the RMX unit must be configured as the user side, and vice versa, or both must be configured symmetrically.</p>

Table 11-15 Span Definition (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Line Coding</i>	Select the PRI line coding method from the list. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• For T1 spans, default is B8ZS.• For E1 spans, default is HDB3.
<i>Switch Type</i>	Select the brand and revision level of switch equipment installed in the service provider's central office. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• For T1 spans, default is AT&T 4ESS.• For E1 spans, default is EURO ISDN.

- 7** Click **Next**.
- The *Phones* dialog is displayed.
- 8** To define dial-in number ranges click the **Add** button.
- 9** The *Add Phone Number* dialog box opens.



10 Define the following parameters:**Table 11-16** Phones Settings

Field	Description
<i>First Number</i>	The first number in the phone number range.
<i>Last Number</i>	The last number in the phone number range.



- A range must include at least two dial-in numbers.
- A range cannot exceed 1000 numbers.

11 Click **OK**.

The new range is added to the *Dial-in Phone Numbers* table.

12 Optional. Repeat steps 8 to 10 to define additional dial-in ranges.**13** Enter the *MCU CLI* (Calling Line Identification).

In a dial-in connections, the *MCU CLI* indicates the MCU's number dialed by the participant. In a dial-out connection, indicates the MCU (CLI) number as seen by the participant

14 Click **Save & Continue**.

After clicking **Save & Continue**, you cannot use the **Back** button to return to previous configuration dialog boxes.

The ISDN/PSTN Network Service is created and confirmed.

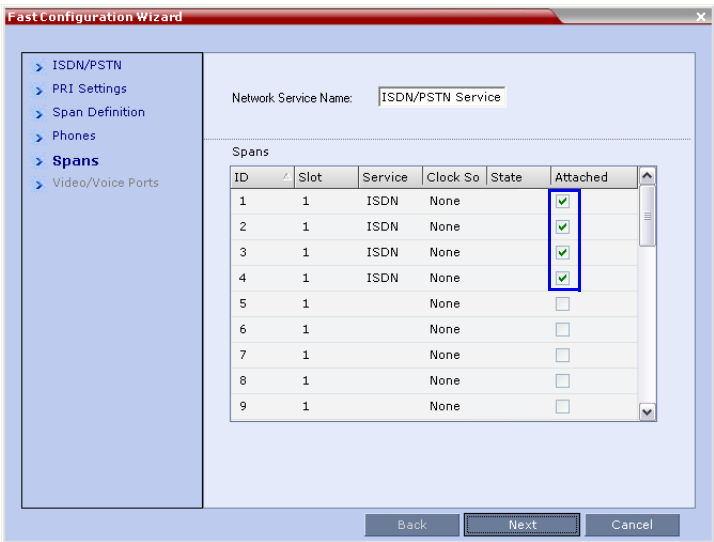
15 Click **OK** to continue the configuration.

The *Spans* dialog box opens displaying the following read-only fields:

- **ID** – The connector on the ISDN/PSTN card (PRI1 - PRI12).
- **Slot** – The MPM board that the ISDN/PSTN card is connected to (1 or 2)
- **Service** – The Network Service to which the span is assigned, or blank if the span is not assigned to a Network Service
- **Clock Source** – Indicates whether the span acts as a clock source, and if it does, whether it acts as a Primary or Backup clock source. The first span to synchronize becomes the primary clock source.
- **State** – The type of alarm: No alarm, yellow alarm or red alarm.

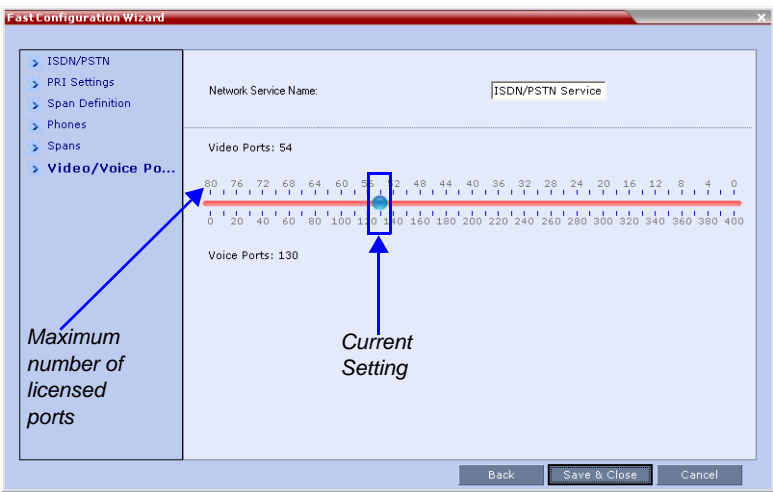
- 16** Attach spans to existing Network Services, by marking the appropriate check boxes in the *Attached* field.

Each ISDN/PSTN card can support 7 E1 or 9 T1 PRI lines.



- 17** Click **Next**.

The *Video/Voice Ports* dialog box opens.



Video ports can be converted to voice ports to enable maximized usage of the system's resources.

The conversion ratio is 1:5, up to a maximum of 400 (80 x 5) voice ports. The voice ports are used to connect VoIP and PSTN participants.



If the system runs out of voice ports, voice endpoints cannot connect to available video ports. Conversely, video endpoints cannot connect to available voice ports.

18 Move the slider to the required setting.



The maximum number of video ports displayed in the dialog box is taken from the license key. Only this number can be converted into voice ports.

The slider moves in multiples of two, converting video ports to voice ports in groups of two, with each video port converting to five voice ports. The minimum number of voice ports that can be allocated is 10 (2 video ports x 5 voice ports/video port).

All available ports are initially allocated as video ports at CIF resolution.

19 Click **Save & Close**.

20 In the *Reset Confirmation* dialog box, click **Yes**.

21 Click **Yes** to complete the *Fast Configuration Wizard* and reset the RMX.



Changes made to any of these parameters only take effect when the RMX unit is reset. An *Active Alarm* is created when changes made to the system have not yet been implemented and the MCU must be reset.

Modifying an ISDN/PSTN Network Service

To Modify an ISDN/PSTN Network Service:

- 1** In the *RMX Management pane*, click the **ISDN/PSTN Network Services** (ISDN) icon.
- 2** In the *ISDN/PSTN Network Services* list, double-click the **ISDN** or right-click the **ISDN** entry and select **Properties**.

The *ISDN Properties* dialog boxes are displayed. They are similar to the *Fast Configuration Wizard's* dialog boxes. For more information see "To Add an ISDN/PSTN Network Service:" on page [11-27](#).

The following *ISDN Properties* can be modified:

- PRI Settings
 - *Net Specific*
 - *Dial-out Prefix*
- **Span Definition**
 - *Framing*
 - *Side*
 - *Line Coding*
 - *Switch Type*
- **Phones**
 - *Dial-in Phone Numbers*
 - *MCU CLI*
- **Spans**
 - *Attached*

All other *ISDN Properties* can only be modified only by deleting the ISDN/PSTN network service and creating a new PSTN service using the *Fast Configuration Wizard*. For more information, see "*To Add an ISDN/PSTN Network Service:*" on page [11-27](#).

IVR Services

Interactive Voice Response (IVR) is an application that allows participants to communicate with the conferencing system via their endpoint's input device (such as a remote control). The IVR Service includes a set of voice prompts and a video slide used to automate the participants connection to a conference or Entry Queue. It allows customization of menu driven scripts and voice prompts to meet different needs and languages.

The IVR module includes two types of services:

- Conference IVR Service that is used with conferences
- Entry Queue IVR Service that is used with Entry Queues

The system is shipped with one default Conference IVR Service and one default Entry Queue IVR Service. Both services include voice messages and video slides in English.

To customize the IVR messages and video slide perform the following operations:

- Record the required voice messages and create a new video slide. For more information, see "*Creating a Welcome Video Slide*" on page [12-37](#).
- Optional. Add the language to the list of languages supported by the system
- Upload the voice messages to the MCU (This can be done as part of the language definition or during the IVR Service definition)
- Create the Conference IVR Service and upload the video slide, and if required any additional voice messages
- Optional. Create the Entry Queue IVR Service and upload the required video slide and voice messages

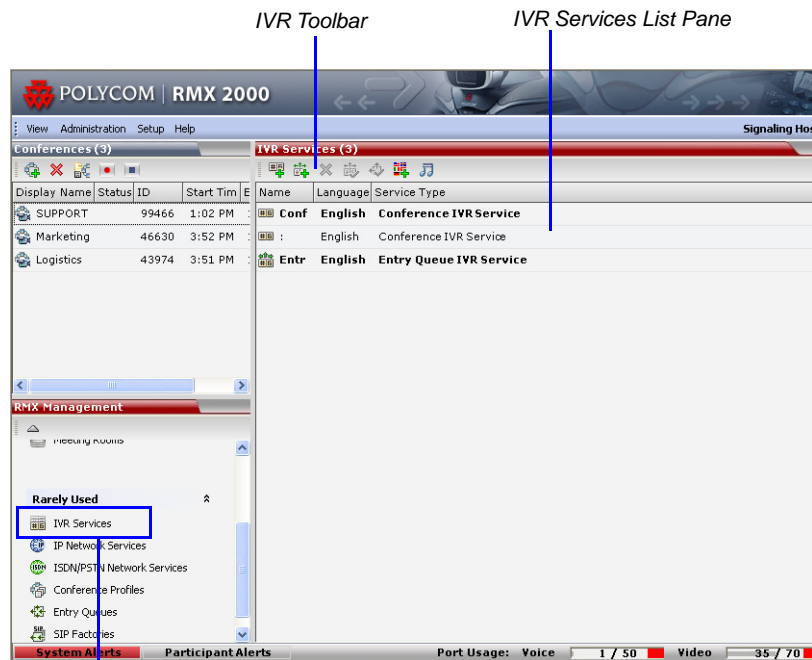
IVR Services List

You can view the currently defined Conference IVR and Entry Queue IVR Services in the *IVR Services* list pane.

To view the **IVR Services** list:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, expand the *Rarely Used* list.
- 2 Click the **IVR Services** (📁) entry.

The list pane displays the *Conference IVR Services* list and the total number of IVR services currently defined in the system.










Access to IVR Services
list and customization

IVR Services Toolbar

The IVR Services toolbar provides quick access to the IVR Service definitions as follows:

Table 12-1 *IVR Toolbar buttons*

Button	Button Name	Descriptions
	<i>New Conference IVR Service</i>	To create a new Conference IVR Service.
	<i>New Entry Queue IVR Service</i>	To create a new Entry Queue IVR Service.
	<i>Delete Service</i>	Deletes the selected IVR service(s).
	<i>Set Default Conference IVR Service</i>	Sets the selected Conference IVR Service as default. When creating a new conference Profile the default IVR Service is automatically selected for the Profile (but can be modified).
	<i>Set Default Entry Queue IVR Service</i>	Sets the selected Entry Queue IVR Service as default. When creating a new Entry Queue the default Entry Queue IVR Service is automatically selected.
	<i>Add Supported Languages</i>	Adds languages to the IVR module, enabling you to download voice prompts and messages for various languages.
	<i>Replace/Change Music File</i>	To replace the currently loaded music file that is used to play background music, the MCU is shipped with a default music file.

Adding Languages

You can define different sets of audio prompts in different languages, allowing the participants to hear the messages in their preferred language.

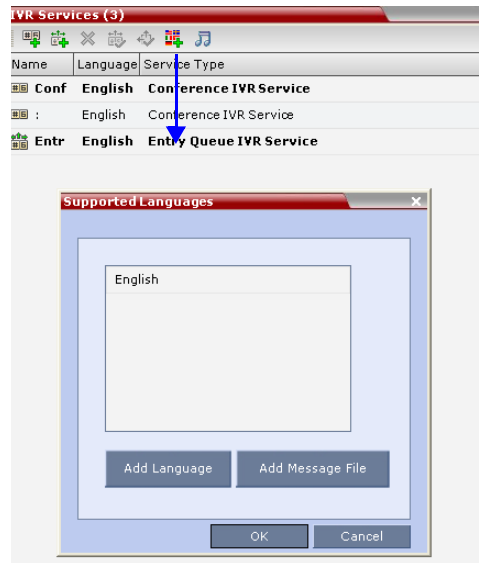
The RMX is shipped with a default language (English) and all the prompts and messages required for the default IVR Services, conference and Entry Queues shipped with the system.

You can add languages to the list of languages for which different messages are downloaded to the MCU and IVR Services are created. This step is required before the creation of additional IVR messages using languages that are different from English, or if you want to download additional voice files to existing files in one operation and not during the IVR service definition.

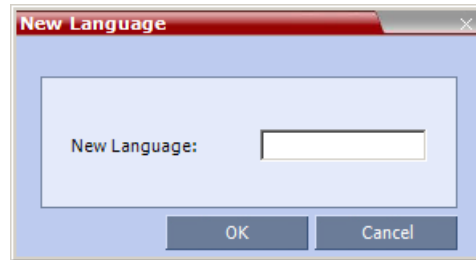
To add a language:

- 1** In the *RMX Management* pane, expand the **Rarely Used** list.
- 2** Click the **IVR Services** (📁) entry.
- 3** In the *Conference IVR Services* list, click the **Add Supported Languages** (🌐) button.

The *Supported Languages* dialog box opens.



- 4 Click the **Add Language** button.
The *New Language* dialog box opens.



- 5 In the *New Language* box, enter the name of the new language. The language name can be typed in Unicode and cannot start with a digit. Maximum field length is 31 characters.
- 6 Click **OK**.
The new language is added to the list of *Supported Languages*.

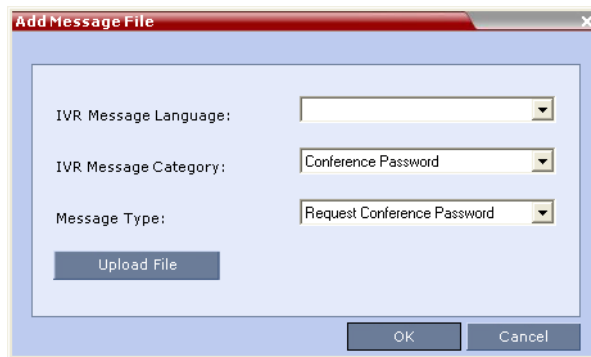
To upload messages to the MCU:

You can upload audio files for the new language or additional files for an existing language now, or you can do it during the definition of the IVR Service. In the latter case, you can skip the next steps.



- Voice messages should not exceed 3 minutes.
- It is not recommended to upload more than 1000 audio files to the MCU memory.

- 1 To upload the files to the MCU, in the *Supported Languages* dialog box, click the **Add Message File** button.
- 2 The *Add Message File* dialog box opens.



Audio files are uploaded to the MCU one-by-one.

- 3** In the *IVR Message Language* list, select the language for which the audio file will be uploaded to the MCU.
- 4** In the *IVR Message Category* list, select the category for which the audio file is uploaded.
- 5** In the *Message Type* list, select the message type for which the uploaded message is to be played. You can upload several audio files for each Message Type. Each file is downloaded separately. Table 12-2 lists the Message Types for each category:

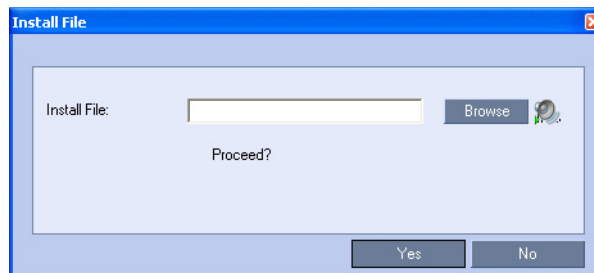
Table 12-2 *IVR Message Types by Message Category*

Message Category	Message Type	Message
<i>Conference Password</i>	Request Conference Password	Requests the participant to enter the conference password.
	Request Conference Password Retry	A participant who enters an incorrect password is requested to enter it again.
	Request Digit	Requests the participant to enter any digit in order to connect to the conference. Used for dial-out participants to avoid answering machines in the conference.
<i>Welcome Message</i>	Welcome Message	The first message played when the participant connects to the conference or Entry Queue.
<i>Conference Chairperson</i>	Request Chairperson Identifier	Requests the participants to enter the chairperson identifier key.
	Request Chairperson Password	Requests the participant to enter the chairperson password.
	Request Chairperson Password Retry	When the participant enters an incorrect chairperson password, requests the participant to enter it again.


Table 12-2 IVR Message Types by Message Category (Continued)

Message Category	Message Type	Message
<i>General</i>		Messages played for system related event notifications, for example, notification that the conference is locked. Upload the files for the voice messages that are played when an event occurs during the conference. For more information, see "Conference IVR Service Properties - General Voice Messages" on page 12-16.
<i>Billing Code</i>		Requests the chairperson to enter the conference Billing Code.
<i>Roll Call</i>		Roll call related messages, such as the message played when a participant joins the conference. Messages are listed in the <i>Conference IVR Service - Roll Call</i> dialog box.
<i>Conference ID</i>		Requests the participant to enter the required Conference ID to be routed to the destination conference.

- 6 Click **Upload File** to upload the appropriate audio file to the MCU. The *Install File* dialog box opens.



- 7 Enter the file name or click the **Browse** button to select the audio file to upload. The *Select Source File* dialog box opens.
- 8 Select the appropriate *.wav audio file, and then click the **Open** button. The name of the selected file is displayed in the *Install* field in the *Install File* dialog box.

- 9** Optional. You can play a .wav file by selecting the *Play* button ().
- 10** Click **Yes** to upload the file to the MCU.
The system returns to the *Add Message File* dialog box.
- 11** Repeat step 6 to 10 for each additional audio file to be uploaded to the MCU.
- 12** Once all the audio files are uploaded to the MCU, close the *Add Message File* dialog box and return to the *Add Language* dialog box.
- 13** Click **OK**.

Defining a New Conference IVR Service


The RMX is shipped with a default Conference IVR Service and all its audio messages and video slide. You can define new Conference IVR Services or modify the default Conference IVR Service.



Up to 40 IVR Services (Conference IVR Services and Entry Queue IVR Services) can be defined for a single RMX unit.

Defining a New Conference IVR Service

To define a new Conference IVR Service:

- 1 On the *IVR Services* toolbar, click the **New Conference IVR Service** () button.

The *New Conference IVR Service - Global* dialog box opens.

- 2 Define the following parameters:

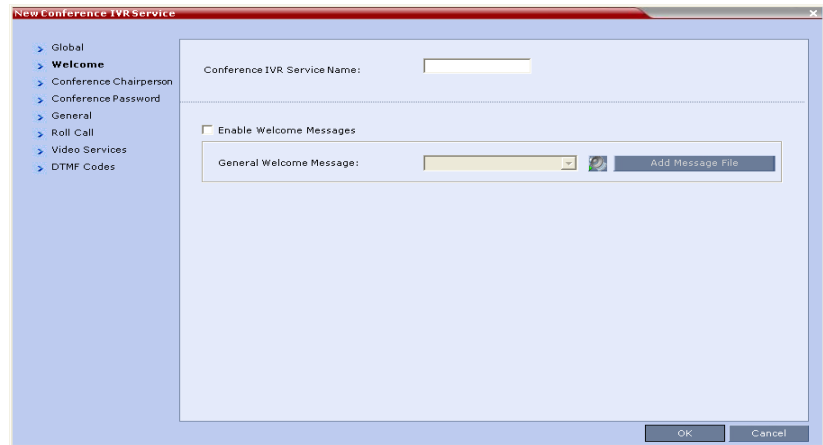
Table 12-3 *Conference IVR Service Properties - Global Parameters*

Field/Option	Description
<i>Conference IVR Service Name</i>	Enter the name of the Conference IVR Service. The maximum field length is 20 characters and may be typed in Unicode.

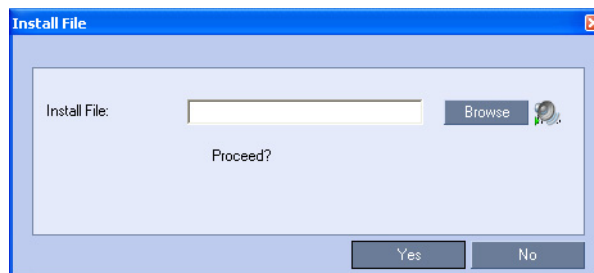
Table 12-3 Conference IVR Service Properties - Global Parameters
(Continued)

Field/Option	Description
<i>Language For IVR</i>	Select the language of the audio messages and prompts from the list of languages defined in the <i>Supported languages</i> . The default language is English. For more information, see "Adding Languages" on page 12-4.
<i>External Server Authentication</i>	<p>You can configure the IVR Service to use an external database application to verify a participant's right to join the conference. For more information, see <i>Appendix D: "Conference Access with External Database Authentication"</i> on page D-6.</p> <p>Select one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Never – The participant's right to join the conference will not be verified with an external database application (default). • Always – Any participant request to join the conference is validated with the external database application using a password. • Upon Request – Only the participant request to join the conference as chairperson is validated with the external database application using a password. The validation process occurs only when the participant enters the chairperson identifier key.
<i>Number of User Input Retries</i>	Enter the number of times the participant will be able to respond to each menu prompt before being disconnected from the conference. Range is between 1-4, and the default is 3.
<i>Timeout for User Input (Sec)</i>	Enter the duration in seconds that the system will wait for the participant's input before prompting for another input. Range is between 1-10, and the default value is 5 seconds.
<i>DTMF Delimiter</i>	Enter the key that indicates the last input key. Possible values are the pound (#) and star (*) keys. The default is #.


- 3 Click the **Welcome** tab.
The *New Conference IVR Service - Welcome* dialog box opens.

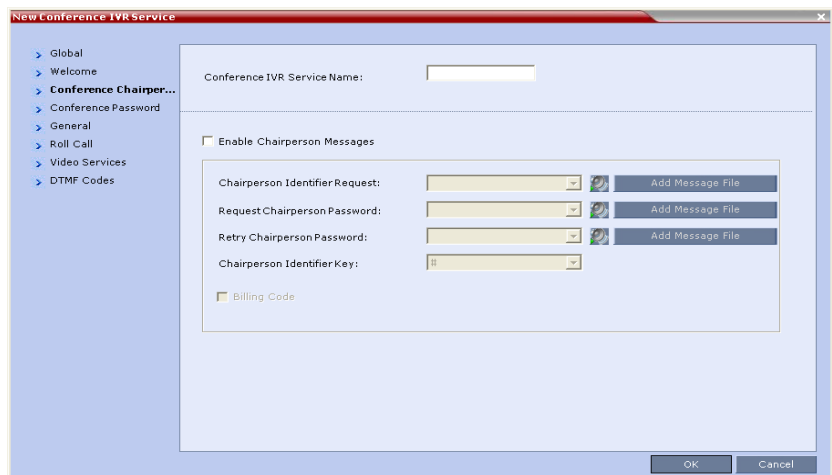


- 4 Select the **Enable Welcome Messages** check box to define the system behavior when the participant enters the Conference IVR queue. When participants access a conference through an Entry Queue, they hear messages included in both the Entry Queue Service and Conference IVR Service. To avoid playing the Welcome Message twice, disable the Welcome Message in the Conference IVR Service.
- 5 Select the **General Welcome Message**, to be played when the participant enters the conference IVR queue.
- 6 To upload an audio file for an IVR message, click **Add Message File**. The *Install File* dialog box opens.






The RMX unit is bundled with default audio IVR message files. To upload a customized audio file, see "*Creating Audio Prompts and Video Slides*" on page [12-33](#).

- a Click the **Browse** button to select the audio file (*.wav) to upload. The *Select Source File* dialog box opens.
 - b Select the appropriate *.wav audio file and then click the **Open** button.
 - c Optional. You can play a .wav file by selecting the *Play* button ().
 - d In the *Install File* dialog box, click **Yes** to upload the file to the MCU memory. The *Done* dialog box opens.
 - e Once the upload is complete, click **OK** and return to the *IVR* dialog box. The new audio file can now be selected from the list of audio messages.
- 7 Click the **Conference Chairperson** tab. The *New Conference IVR Service - Conference Chairperson* dialog box opens.



The screenshot shows the 'New Conference IVR Service' dialog box with the 'Conference Chairperson' tab selected. The dialog box has a sidebar on the left with a tree view containing the following items: Global, Welcome, Conference Chairperson (selected), Conference Password, General, Roll Call, Video Services, and DTMF Codes. The main area of the dialog box contains the following fields and controls:

- Conference IVR Service Name:
- ☐ Enable Chairperson Messages
- Chairperson Identifier Request: 
- Request Chairperson Password: 
- Retry Chairperson Password: 
- Chairperson Identifier Key:
- ☐ Billing Code

At the bottom right of the dialog box are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- 8 Select the **Enable Chairperson Messages** check box to enable the chairperson functionality. If this feature is disabled, participants are not able to connect as the chairperson.

- 9 Select the various voice messages and options for the chairperson connection.



If the files were not uploaded prior to the definition of the IVR Service or if you want to add new audio files, click **Add Message File** to upload the appropriate audio file to the RMX.

Table 12-4 *New Conference IVR Service Properties - Conference Chairperson Options and Messages*

Field/Option	Description
<i>Chairperson Identifier Request</i>	Select the audio file that requests the participants to enter the key that identifies them as the conference chairperson.
<i>Request Chairperson Password</i>	Select the audio file that prompts the participant for the chairperson password.
<i>Retry Chairperson Password</i>	Select the audio file that prompts participants to re-enter the chairperson password if they enter it incorrectly.
<i>Chairperson Identifier Key</i>	Enter the key to be used for identifying the participant as a chairperson. Possible keys are: pound key (#) or star (*).
<i>Billing Code</i>	The prompt requesting the chairperson billing code selected in the General tab.

- 10 Click the **Conference Password** tab.

The *New Conference IVR Service - Conference Password* dialog box opens.

Conference IVR Service Name: <input type="text"/>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Password Messages	
Dial-in	
<input type="radio"/> Request Password	Request Password: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Add Message File"/>
<input type="radio"/> None	
Dial-Out	
<input type="radio"/> Request Password	Retry Password: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Add Message File"/>
<input type="radio"/> None	
<input type="radio"/> Request Digit	Request Digit: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Add Message File"/>

- 11** Select the **Enable Password Messages** check box to request the conference password before moving the participant from the conference IVR queue to the conference.
- 12** Select the MCU behavior for password request for *Dial-in* and *Dial-out* participant connections.

Select the required system behavior as follows:

- **Request password** - The system requests the participant to enter the conference password.
- **None** - The participant is moved to the conference without any password request.
- **Request Digit** - The system requests the participant to enter any key. This option is used mainly for dial-out participants and to prevent an answering machine from entering the conference.

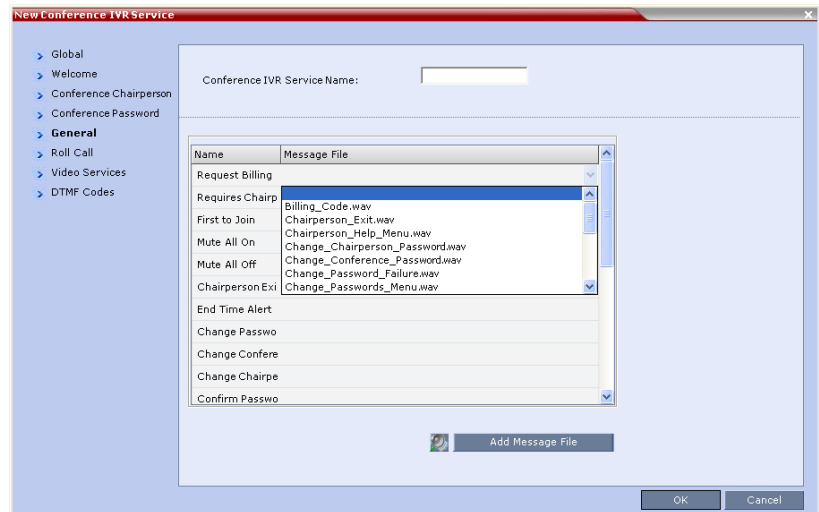
- 13** Select the various audio messages that will be played in each case.

Table 12-5 *New Conference IVR Service Properties - Conference Password Parameters*

Option	Description
<i>Request Password</i>	Select the audio file that prompts the participant for the conference password.
<i>Retry Password</i>	Select the audio file that requests the participant to enter the conference password again when failing to enter the correct password.
<i>Request Digit</i>	Select the audio file that prompts the participant to press any key when the <i>Request Digit</i> option is selected.

- 14** Click **General**.

The *New Conference IVR Service - General* dialog box opens.



The *General* dialog box lists messages that are played during the conference. These messages are played when participants or the conference chairperson perform various operations or when a change occurs.

- 15** To assign the appropriate audio file to the message type, click the appropriate table entry, in the *Message File* column. A drop-down list is enabled.
- 16** From the list, select the audio file to be assigned to the event/ indication.
- 17** Repeat steps 15 and 16 to select the audio files for the required messages.

The following types of messages and prompts can be enabled:

Table 12-6 *Conference IVR Service Properties - General Voice Messages*

Message Type	Description
<i>Request Billing Code</i>	Requests the participant to enter a code for billing purposes.
<i>Requires Chairperson</i>	The message is played when the conference is on hold and the chairperson joins the conference. For this message to be played the <i>Conference Requires Chairperson</i> option must be selected in the conference <i>Conference Profile - IVR</i> dialog box.
<i>First to Join</i>	Informs the participant that he or she is the first person to join the conference.
<i>Mute All On</i>	Informs all participants that they are muted, with the exception of the conference chairperson. Note: This message is played only when the <i>Mute All Except Me</i> option is activated.
<i>Mute All Off</i>	This message is played to the conference to inform all participants that they are unmuted (when <i>Mute All</i> is cancelled).
<i>Chairperson Exit</i>	Informs all the conference participants that the chairperson has left the conference, causing the conference to automatically terminate after a short interval. Note: This message is played only when the <i>Requires Chairperson</i> option is selected in the <i>Conference Profile - IVR</i> dialog box.
<i>End Time Alert</i>	Indicates that the conference is about to end.

Table 12-6 Conference IVR Service Properties - General Voice Messages
(Continued)

Message Type	Description
<i>Change Passwords Menu</i>	This voice menu is played when the participants requests to change the conference password. This message details the steps required to complete the procedure.
<i>Change Conference Password</i>	Requests the participant to enter a new conference password when the participant is attempting to modify the conference password.
<i>Change Chairperson Password</i>	Requests the participant to enter a new chairperson password when the participant is attempting to modify the chairperson password.
<i>Confirm Password Change</i>	Requests the participant to re-enter the new password.
<i>Change Password Failure</i>	A message played when the participant enters an invalid password, for example when a password is already in use.
<i>Password Changed Successfully</i>	A message is played when the password was successfully changed.
<i>Self Mute</i>	A confirmation message that is played when participants request to mute their line.
<i>Self Unmute</i>	A confirmation message that is played when participants request to unmute their line.
<i>Chairperson Help Menu</i>	<p>A voice menu is played upon a request from the chairperson, listing the operations and their respective DTMF codes that can be performed by the chairperson. The playback can be stopped any time.</p> <p>Note: If you modify the default DTMF codes used to perform various operations, the default voice files for the help menus must be replaced.</p>
<i>Participant Help Menu</i>	A voice menu that is played upon request from a participant, listing the operations and their DTMF codes that can be performed by any participant.

Table 12-6 *Conference IVR Service Properties - General Voice Messages (Continued)*

Message Type	Description
<i>Maximum Number of Participants Exceeded</i>	Indicates the participant cannot join the destination conference as the maximum allowed number of participants will be exceeded.
<i>Recording in Progress</i>	This message is played to participant joining a conference that is being recorded indicating the recording status of the conference.
<i>Recording Failed</i>	This message is played when the conference recording initiated by the chairperson or the participant (depending on the configuration) fails to start.
<i>Conference is Secured</i>	This message is played when the conference status changes to Secure as initiated by the conference chairperson or participant (using DTMF code *71).
<i>Conference is unsecured</i>	This message is played when the conference status changes to Unsecured as initiated by the conference chairperson or participant (using DTMF code #71).
<i>Conference is Locked</i>	This message is played to participants attempting to join a Secured conference.

18 Click the **Roll Call** tab.

The *New Conference IVR Service - Roll Call* dialog box opens.

The Roll Call feature of the Conference IVR Service is used to record the participants' names for playback when the participants join and leave a conference.

- 19** To enable the Roll Call feature, select the **Enable Roll Call** check box.

The screenshot shows the 'New Conference IVR Service' configuration window. On the left, a sidebar lists various services: Global, Welcome, Conference Chairperson, Conference Password, General, **Roll Call**, Video Services, and DTMF Codes. The 'Roll Call' service is selected. The main area shows the 'Conference IVR Service Name' field and the 'Enable Roll Call' checkbox, which is checked. Below this, a table lists message types and their corresponding audio files:

Name	Message File
Roll Call Record	Roll_Call_Record.wav
Roll Call Joined	Roll_Call_Joined.wav
Roll Call Left	Roll_Call_Left.wav
Roll Call Review	Roll_Call_Review_Names.wav

At the bottom right of the table, there is an 'Add Message File' button. The 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right of the window.

- 20** To assign the audio file to the message type, in the Message File column, click the appropriate table entry. An arrow appears in the *Message File* column.



If the Roll Call option is enabled, you must assign the appropriate audio files to all message types.

- 21** Click the arrow to open the *Message File* list and select the appropriate audio file.

Table 12-7 Conference IVR Service Properties - Roll Call Messages

Roll Call Message	Description
<i>Roll Call Record</i>	Requests participants to state their name for recording, when they connect to the conference. Note: The recording is automatically terminated after two seconds.
<i>Roll Call Joined</i>	A voice message stating that the participant has joined the conference.

Table 12-7 *Conference IVR Service Properties - Roll Call Messages (Continued)*

Roll Call Message	Description
<i>Roll Call Left</i>	A voice message stating that the participant has left the conference.
<i>Roll Call Review</i>	Played when Roll Call is requested by the chairperson, introducing the names of the conference participants in the order they joined the conference.

- 22** Click the **Video Services** tab.
The *New Conference IVR Service - Video Services* dialog box opens.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "New Conference IVR Service". On the left is a tree view with the following items: Global, Welcome, Conference Chairperson, Conference Password, General, Roll Call, **Video Services** (highlighted), and DTMF Codes. The main area of the dialog is for the "Video Services" tab. It contains a text field labeled "Conference IVR Service Name:" with an empty input box. Below this is a section with a checkbox labeled "Click&View". To the right of the checkbox is a dropdown menu labeled "Video Welcome Slide:" with a downward arrow. To the right of the dropdown is a small icon of a video screen and a button labeled "Add Slide". At the bottom right of the dialog are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

- 23** Define the following parameters:

Table 12-8 *New Conference IVR Service Properties - Video Services Parameters*

Video Services	Description
<i>Click&View</i>	Select this option to enable endpoints to run the Click&View application that enables participants to select a video layout from their endpoint.

Table 12-8 *New Conference IVR Service Properties - Video Services Parameters (Continued)*

Video Services	Description
<i>Video Welcome Slide</i>	<p>Select the video slide file to be displayed when participants connect to the conference. To view any slide, click the Preview Slide (🖼️) button.</p> <p>If the video slide file was not uploaded to the MCU prior to the IVR Service definition, click the Add Slide button. The <i>Install File</i> dialog box opens. The uploading process is similar to the uploading of audio files. For more information, see step 6 on page 12-11.</p> <p>Note: If using a default Polycom slide, the slide's resolution will be as defined in the profile, i.e. SD, HD or CIF. If using a custom slide, the resolution will be CIF.</p>

24 Click the **DTMF Codes** tab.

The *New Conference IVR Service - DTMF Codes* dialog box opens.

New Conference IVR Service

Conference IVR Service Name:

DTMF Codes

Name	DTMF Code	Permission
Mute My Line	*6	Everyone
Unmute My Line	#6	Everyone
Increase Broadcast Volume	*9	Everyone
Decrease Broadcast Volume	#9	Everyone
Mute All Except Me	*5	Chairperson
Cancel Mute All Except Me	#5	Chairperson
Change Password	*77	Chairperson
Mute Incoming Participants	*86	Chairperson
Unmute Incoming Participants	#86	Chairperson
Play Help Menu	*83	Everyone
Enable Roll Call	*32	Chairperson
Disable Roll Call	#32	Chairperson

OK Cancel

This dialog box lists the default DTMF codes for the various functions that can be performed during the conference by all participants or by the chairperson.

Table 12-9 *New Conference IVR Service Properties - DTMF Codes*

Operation	DTMF String	Permission
Mute My Line	*6	All
Unmute My Line	#6	All
Increase Broadcast Volume	*9	All
Decrease Broadcast Volume	#9	All
Mute All Except Me	*5	Chairperson
Cancel Mute All Except Me	#5	Chairperson
Change Password	*77	Chairperson
Mute Incoming Participants	*86	Chairperson
Unmute Incoming Participants	#86	Chairperson
Play Help Menu	*83	All
Enable Roll Call	*32	Chairperson
Disable Roll Call	#32	Chairperson
Roll Call Review Names	*33	Chairperson
Roll Call Stop Review Names	#33	Chairperson
Terminate Conference	*87	Chairperson
Start Click&View	**	All
Change To Chairperson	*78	All
Increase Listening Volume	*76	All
Decrease Listening Volume	#76	All
Override Mute All	Configurable	All
Start Recording	*73	Chairperson

Table 12-9 *New Conference IVR Service Properties - DTMF Codes*

Operation	DTMF String	Permission
Stop Recording	*74	Chairperson
Pause Recording	*75	Chairperson
Secure Conference	*71	Chairperson
Unsecured Conference	#71	Chairperson
Show Number of Participants	*88	Chairperson

25 To modify the DTMF code or permission:

- a** In the *DTMF Code* column, in the appropriate entry enter the new code.
- b** In the *Permission* column, select from the list who can use this feature (all or just the chairperson).



By default, the Secure, Unsecure Conference and Show Number of Participants options are enabled in the Conference IVR Service. These options can be disabled and must be disabled removing their codes from the Conference IVR Service.

- To disable the Secure Conference options, in the *DTMF Code* column, clear the DTMF codes of both Secured Conference (***71**) and Unsecured Conference (**#71**) from the table.
- To disable the Text Indication option in the DTMF Code column, clear the DTMF code (***88**) of *Show Number of Participants* from the table.

26 Click **OK** to complete the IVR Service definition.

The new Conference IVR Service is added to the *IVR Services* list.

Entry Queues IVR Service

An Entry Queue (EQ) is a routing lobby for conferences. Participants are routed to the appropriate conference according to the conference ID they enter.



An Entry Queue IVR Service must be assigned to the Entry Queue to enable the voice prompts and video slide guiding the participants through the connection process.

An Entry Queue Service is a subset of an IVR Service. You can create different Entry Queue Services for different languages and personalized voice messages.

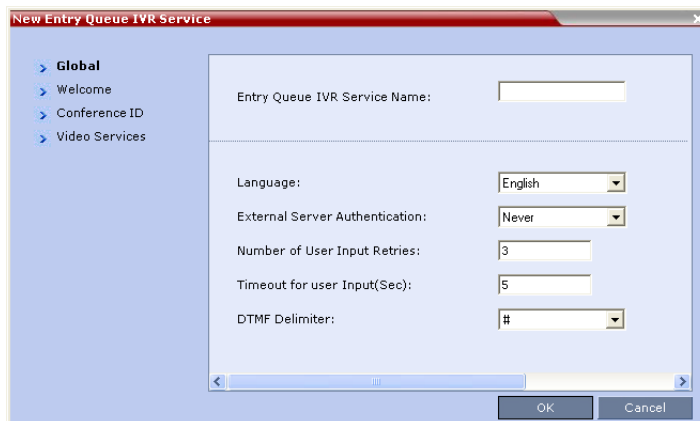
The RMX is shipped with a default Entry Queue IVR Service and all its audio messages and video slide. You can define new Entry Queue IVR Services or modify the default Entry Queue IVR Service

Defining a New Entry Queue Service

To set up a new Entry Queue Service:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click **IVR Services** ().
- 2 In the *IVR Services* list, click the **New Entry Queue IVR Service** () button.

The *New Entry Queue IVR Service - Global* dialog box opens.



- 3 Fill in the following parameters:

Table 12-10 Entry Queue IVR Service Properties - Global Parameters

Option	Description
<i>Entry Queue Service Name</i>	(Mandatory) Enter the name of the Entry Queue Service. The name can be typed in Unicode. Maximum field length is 80 ASCII characters.
<i>Language</i>	Select the language in which the Audio Messages and prompts will be heard. The languages are defined in the <i>Supported Languages</i> function.
<i>External Server Authentication</i>	<p>This option is used for Ad Hoc conferencing, to verify the participant's right to initiate a new conference. For a detailed description see <i>Appendix D: "Conference Access with External Database Authentication"</i> on page D-6.</p> <p>Select one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None to start a new conference without verifying with an external database the user right to start it. • Conference ID to verify the user's right to start a new conference with an external database application using the conference ID.
<i>Number of User Input Retries</i>	Enter the number of times the participant is able to respond to each menu prompt before the participant is disconnected from the MCU.
<i>Timeout for User Input (Sec.)</i>	Enter the duration in seconds that the system waits for input from the participant before it is considered as an input error.
<i>DTMF Delimiter</i>	The interaction between the caller and the system is done via touch-tone signals (DTMF codes). Enter the key that will be used to indicate a DTMF command sent by the participant or the conference chairperson. Possible keys are the pound key (#) or star (*).

- 4 Click the **Welcome** tab.
The *New Entry Queue IVR Service - Welcome* dialog box opens.



If the files were not uploaded prior to the definition of the IVR Service or if you want to add new audio files, click **Add Message File** to upload the appropriate audio file to the RMX.

- 5 Define the appropriate parameters. This dialog box contains options that are identical to those in the *Conference IVR Service - Welcome Message* dialog box. For more information about these parameters, see Table 12-4 on page 12-13.
- 6 Click the **Conference ID** tab.
The *New Entry Queue IVR Service - Conference ID* dialog box opens.

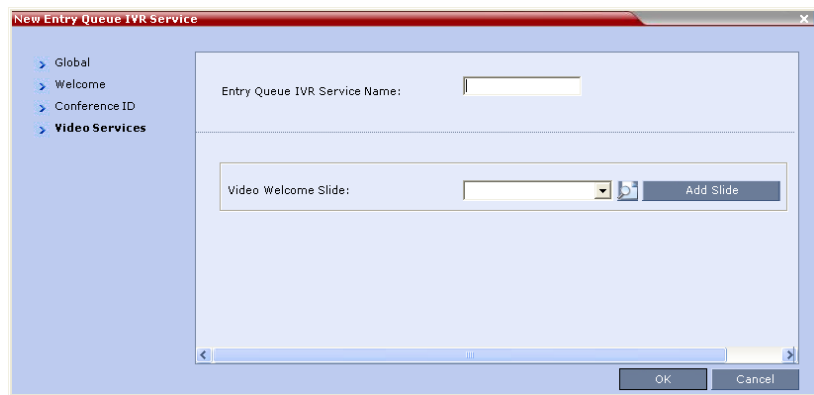
Name	Message File
Request Confer	
Retry Conferen	

- 7 Select the voice messages:

Table 12-11 *Entry Queue IVR Service Properties - Conference ID*

Field/Option	Description
<i>Request Conference ID</i>	Prompts the participant for the conference ID.
<i>Retry Conference ID</i>	When the participant entered an incorrect conference ID, requests the participant to type the ID again.

- 8 Assign an audio file to each message type, as follows:
- In the *Message File* column, click the table entry, and then select the appropriate audio message.
- 9 Click the **Video Services** tab.
The *New Entry Queue IVR Service - Video Services* dialog box opens.



- 10 In the *Video Welcome Slide* list, select the video slide that will be displayed to participants connecting to the Entry Queue. The slide list includes the video slides that were previously uploaded to the MCU memory.
- 11 To view any slide, click the **Preview Slide** (🔍) button. If the list is empty, you can upload a new slide by clicking the **Add Slide** button.

The *Install File* dialog box opens. The uploading process is similar to the uploading of audio files, see step 6 on page [12-11](#).




The video slide must be in a .jpg or .bmp file format. For more information, see "*Creating a Welcome Video Slide*" on page [12-37](#).

- 12** Click **OK** to complete the Entry Queue Service definition.
The new Entry Queue IVR Service is added to the *IVR Services* list.
For more information, see "*IVR Services List*" on page [12-2](#).

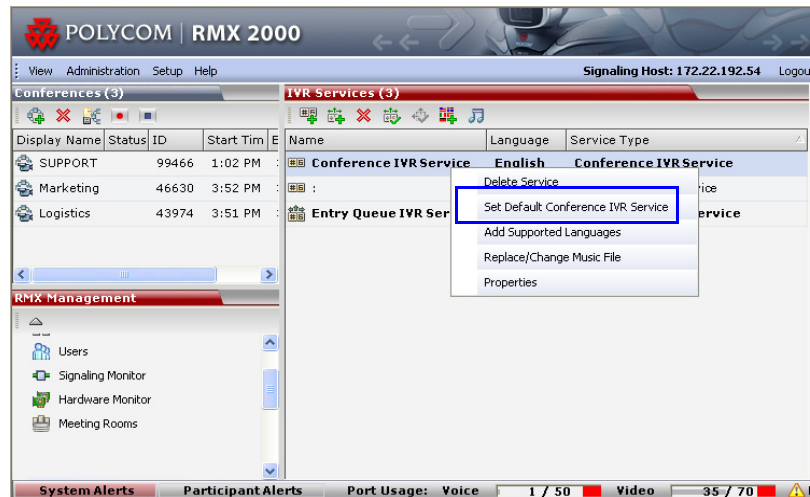
Setting a Conference IVR Service or Entry Queue IVR Service as the Default Service

The first Conference IVR Service and Entry Queue IVR Service are automatically selected by default. The IVR Services (Conference and Entry Queue) shipped with the system are also set as default. If additional Conference IVR Services and Entry Queue IVR Services are defined, you can set another service as the default for each service type.

To select the default Conference IVR Service:


- In the *IVR Services* list, select the Conference IVR Service to be defined as the default, and then click the **Set Default Conference IVR Service** () button.

Alternatively, in the *IVR Services* list, right-click the Conference IVR Service and then select *Set Default Conference IVR Service*.

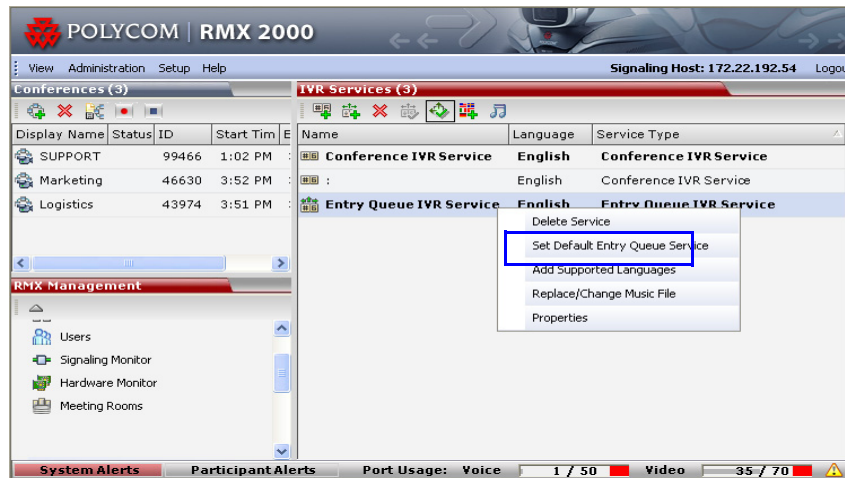


The IVR Service appears in bold, indicating that it is the current default service.

To select the Default Entry Queue IVR Service:

- In the *IVR Services* list, select the Entry Queue IVR Service to be defined as the default, and then click **Set Default Entry Queue IVR Service** () button.

Alternatively, in the *Conference IVR Services* list, right-click the *Entry Queue IVR Service* and then select *Set Default Entry Queue IVR Service*.



The default Entry Queue IVR Service appears in bold, indicating that it is the current default service.

Modifying the Conference or Entry IVR Queue Service Properties

You can modify the properties of an existing IVR Service, except the service name and language.

To modify the properties of an IVR Service:


- 1** In the *RMX Management* pane, click **IVR Services**.
- 2** In the *IVR Services* list, Click the IVR Service to modify.
For more information about the tabs and options of this dialog box, see "*Defining a New Conference IVR Service*" on page **12-9**.
- 3** Modify the required parameters or upload the required audio files.
- 4** Click **OK**.

Replacing the Music File

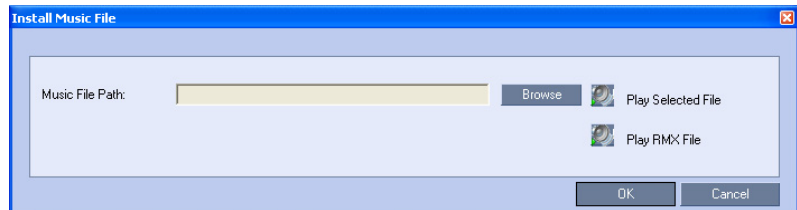
The RMX is shipped with a default music file that is played when participants are placed on hold. For example, while waiting for the chairperson to connect to the conference (if the conference requires a chairperson). You can replace the default music file with your own recorded music. The files include both default IVR and Entry Queue Services. The file must be in *.wav format and its length cannot exceed one hour.

Adding a Music File

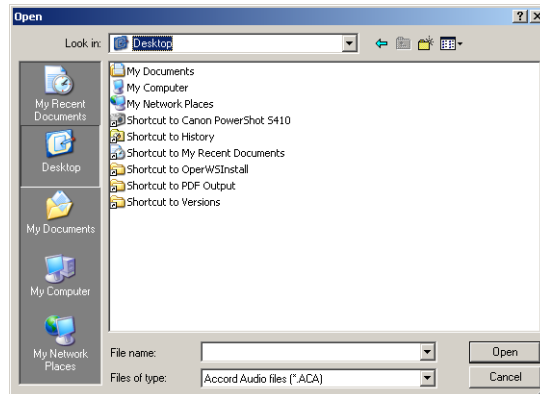
To replace the Music file:


- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click **IVR Services**.
- 2 In the *IVR Services* list toolbar, click the **Replace/Change Music File** () button.

The *Install Music File* window opens.



- 3 Click the **Browse** button to select the audio file (*.wav) to upload. The *Open* dialog box opens.



- 4 Select the appropriate audio *.wav file and then click the **Open** button.
The selected file name appears in the *Install Music File* dialog box.
- 5 Optional. You can play the selected file by clicking the *Play*  button.
 - a Click **Play Selected File** to play a file on your computer
 - b Click **Play RMX File** to play a file already uploaded on the RMX
- 6 In the *Install Music File* dialog box, click **OK** to upload the file to the MCU.
The new file replaces the previously uploaded file and this file is used for all background music played by the MCU.

Creating Audio Prompts and Video Slides

The RMX is shipped with default voice messages (in WAV format) and video slides that are used for the default IVR services. You can create your own video slides and record the voice messages for different languages or customize them to your needs.

Recording an Audio Message

To record audio messages, use any sound recording utility available in your computer or record them professionally in a recording studio. Make sure that recorded message can be saved as a Wave file (*.wav format) and that the recorded format settings are as defined in steps 4 and 5 on page 12-34. The files are converted into the RMX internal format during the upload process.

This section describes the use of the Sound Recorder utility delivered with Windows 95/98/2000/XP.

To define the format settings for audio messages:



The format settings for audio messages need to be set only once. The settings will then be applied to any new audio messages recorded.

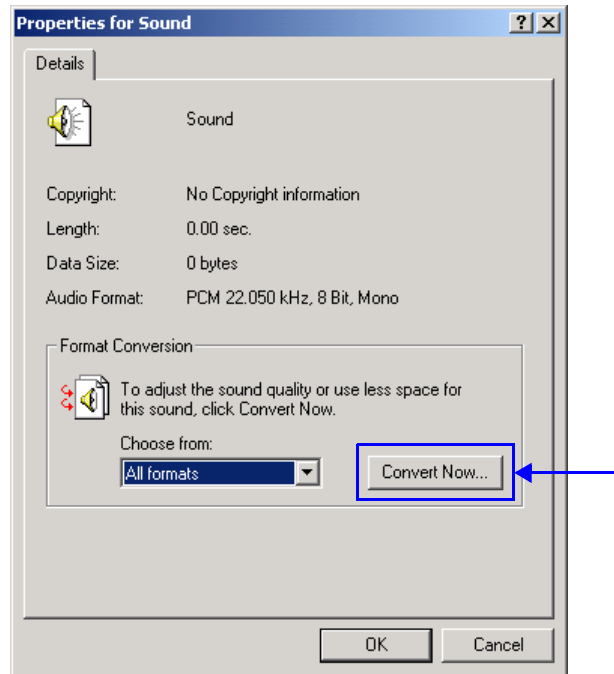
- 1 On your PC, click **Start > Programs > Accessories > Entertainment > Sound Recorder**.

The *Sound-Sound Recorder* dialog box opens.



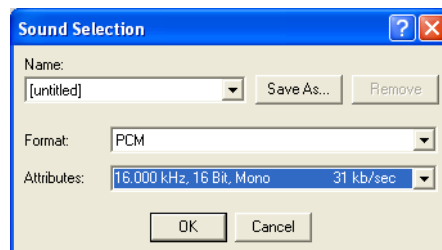
- 2 To define the recording format, click **File > Properties**.
The *Properties for Sound* dialog box opens.

- 3 Click the **Convert Now** button.



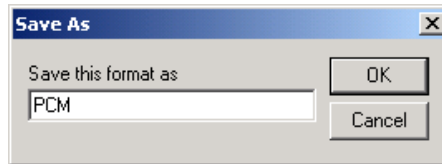
The *Sound Selection* dialog box opens.

- 4 In the *Format* field, select **PCM**.
- 5 In the *Attributes* list, select **16.000 kHz, 16Bit, Mono**.



- 6 To save this format, click the **Save As** button.
The *Save As* dialog box opens.

- 7 Select the location where the format will reside, enter a name and then click **OK**.



The system returns to the *Sound Selection* dialog box.

- 8 Click **OK**.
The system returns to the *Properties for Sound* dialog box.
- 9 Click **OK**.
The system returns to the *Sound-Sound Recorder* dialog box. You are now ready to record your voice message.

To record a new audio message:



Regardless of the recording utility you are using, verify that any new audio message recorded adheres to the following format settings: **16.000kHz, 16Bit, Mono**.

Make sure that a microphone or a sound input device is connected to your PC.

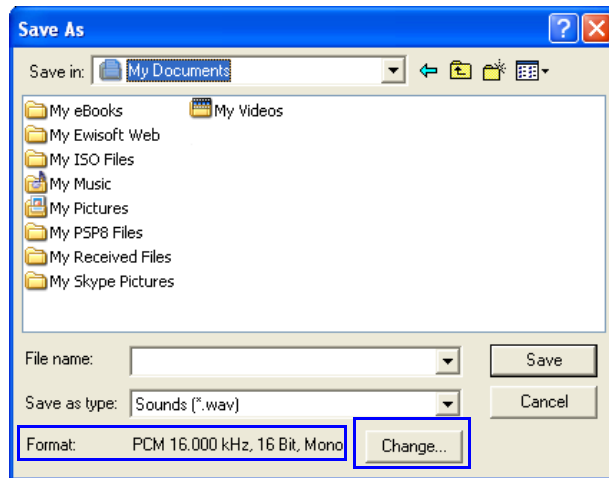
- 1 On your PC, click **Start > Programs > Accessories > Entertainment > Sound Recorder**.
The *Sound-Sound Recorder* dialog box opens.
- 2 Click **File > New**.
- 3 Click the **Record** button.
The system starts recording.
- 4 Start narrating the desired message.



For all audio IVR messages, stop the recording anytime up to 3 minutes (which is the maximum duration allowed for an IVR voice message). If the message exceeds 3 minutes it will be rejected by the RMX unit.

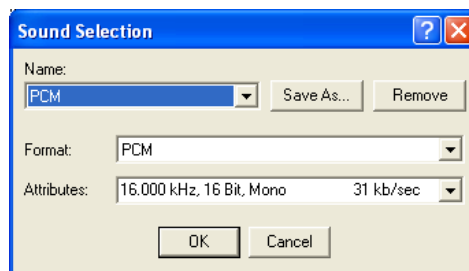
- 5 Click the **Stop Recording** button.
- 6 Save the recorded message as a wave file, click **File > Save As**.

The *Save As* dialog box opens.



- 7 Verify that the *Format* reads: **PCM 16.000 kHz, 16Bit, Mono**. If the format is correct, continue with step 10. If the format is incorrect, click the **Change** button.

The *Sound Selection* dialog box appears.



- 8 In the *Name* field, select the name of the format created in step 7 on page 12-35.
- 9 Click **OK**.

The system returns to the *Save As* dialog box.

- 10 In the *Save in* field, select the directory where the file will be stored.
- 11 In the *Save as Type* field, select the ***.wav** file format.
- 12 In the *File name* box, type a name for the message file, and then click the **Save** button.

- 13** To record additional messages, repeat steps 1 to 10.



To upload your recorded *.wav file to the RMX, see step 6 on page [12-11](#).

Creating a Welcome Video Slide

The video slide is a still picture that can be created in any graphic application.

To create a welcome video slide:

- 1** Using any graphic application, save your image in either *.jpg or *.bmp file format.
- 2** For optimum quality, verify that the image's dimensions adhere to the RMX's maximum values: Height:1200, Width:1600 pixels.
- 3** Save your file.



To upload your video slide to the RMX, see step 10 on page [12-27](#).



If using a default Polycom slide, the slide's resolution will be as defined in the profile, i.e. SD, HD or CIF. If using a custom slide, the resolution will be CIF.

Default IVR Prompts and Messages

The system is shipped with the following audio prompts and messages:

Table 12-12 Default IVR Messages

Message Type	Message Text	File Name
<i>General Welcome Message</i>	"Welcome to unified conferencing."	General_Welcome.wav
<i>Chairperson Identifier Request</i>	"For conference Chairperson Services, Press the Pound Key. All other participants please wait..."	Chairperson_Identifier.wav
<i>Request Chairperson Password</i>	"Please enter the Conference Chairperson Password. Press the pound key when complete."	Chairperson_Password.wav
<i>Retry Chairperson Password</i>	"Invalid chairperson password. Please try again."	Chairperson_Password_Failure.wav
<i>Request Password</i>	"Please enter the conference password. Press the pound key when complete."	Conference_Password.wav
<i>Retry Password</i>	"Invalid conference password. Please try again."	Retry_Conference_Password.wav
<i>Request Digit</i>	"Press any key to enter the conference."	Request_Digit.wav
<i>Request Billing Code</i>	"Please enter the Billing code. Press the pound key when complete."	Billing_Code.wav
<i>Requires Chairperson</i>	"Please wait for the chairperson to join the conference."	Requires_Chairperson.wav
<i>Chairperson Exit</i>	"The chairperson has left the conference."	Chairperson_Exit.wav
<i>First to Join</i>	"You are the first person to join the conference."	First to Join.wav

Table 12-12 Default IVR Messages (Continued)

Message Type	Message Text	File Name
<i>Mute All On</i>	"All conference participants are now muted."	Mute_All_On.wav
<i>Mute All Off</i>	"All conference participants are now unmuted."	Mute_All_Off.wav
<i>End Time Alert</i>	"The conference is about to end."	End_Time_Alert.wav
<i>Change Password Menu</i>	"Press one to change conference password. Press two to change chairperson password. Press nine to exit the menu."	Change_Password_Menu.wav
<i>Change Conference Password</i>	"Please enter the new conference password. Press the pound key when complete."	Change_Conference_Password.wav
<i>Change Chairperson Password</i>	"Please enter the new chairperson password. Press the pound key when complete."	Change_Chairperson_Password.wav
<i>Confirm Password Change</i>	"Please re-enter the new password. Press the pound key when complete."	Confirm_Password_Change.wav
<i>Change Password Failure</i>	"The new password is invalid."	Change_Password_Failure.wav
<i>Password Changed Successfully</i>	"The password has been successfully changed."	Password_Changed_Successfully.wav
<i>Self Mute</i>	"You are now muted."	Self_Mute.wav
<i>Self Unmute</i>	"You are no longer muted."	Self_Unmute.wav

Table 12-12 Default IVR Messages (Continued)

Message Type	Message Text	File Name
<i>Chairperson Help Menu</i>	<p>"The available touch-tone keypad actions are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To exit this menu press any key. • To request private assistance, press star, zero. • To request operator's assistance for the conference, press zero, zero. • To mute your line, press star, six. • To unmute your line, press pound, six." 	Chairperson_Help_Menu.wav
<i>Participant Help Menu</i>	<p>"The available touch-tone keypad actions are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To exit this menu press any key. • To request private assistance, press star, zero. • To mute your line, press star, six. • To unmute your line, press pound, six. • To increase your volume, press star, nine. • To decrease your volume, press pound, nine. • To ask a question, press star, two, two. • To cancel your question, press pound, two, two." 	Participant_Help_Menu.wav
<i>Maximum Participants Exceeded</i>	"The conference is full. You cannot join at this time."	<i>Maximum_Participants_Exceeded.wav</i>
<i>Roll Call Record</i>	"After the tone, please state your name."	Roll_Call_Record.wav

Table 12-12 Default IVR Messages (Continued)

Message Type	Message Text	File Name
<i>Roll Call Joined</i>	"...has joined the conference."	Roll_Call_Joined.wav
<i>Roll Call Left</i>	"...has left the conference."	Roll_Call_Left.wav
<i>Roll Call Review</i>	"The conference participants are..."	Roll_Call_Review.wav
<i>Request Conference NID</i>	"Please enter your conference NID. Press the pound key when complete."	Request_Conference_NID.wav
<i>Retry Conference NID</i>	"Invalid conference NID. Please try again."	Retry_Conference_NID.wav
<i>Secured Conference</i>	"The conference is now secured."	Conference_Secured.wav
<i>Secured Conference</i>	"The conference is now in an unsecured mode"	Conference_Unsecured.wav
<i>Secured Conference</i>	"Conference you are trying to join is locked"	Conference_Locked.wav
<i>Conference Recording</i>	"The conference is being recorded"	Recording_in_Progress.wav
<i>Conference Recording</i>	"The conference recording has failed"	Recording_Failed.wav

Volume Control of IVR Messages, Music and Roll Call

The volume of IVR music, IVR messages and Roll Call is controlled by the following system flags:

- `IVR_MUSIC_VOLUME`
- `IVR_MESSAGE_VOLUME`
- `IVR_ROLL_CALL_VOLUME`

To control the volume of IVR music, messages and Roll Call:

- Modify the values of the *System Flags* listed in Table 12-13 by clicking the menu **Setup > System Configuration**.

If these flags do not appear in the *System Flags* list, they must be manually added.

For more information see "Modifying System Flags" on page [14-10](#).

Table 12-13 System Flags – IVR Volume Control

Flag	Description
<code>IVR_MUSIC_VOLUME</code>	<p>The volume of the IVR music played when a single participant is connected to the conference varies according to the value of this flag.</p> <p>Possible value range: 0-10 (Default: 5).</p> <p>0 – disables playing the music</p> <p>1 – lowest volume</p> <p>10 – highest volume</p>
<code>IVR_MESSAGE_VOLUME</code>	<p>The volume of IVR messages varies according to the value of this flag.</p> <p>Possible value range: 0-10 (Default: 6).</p> <p>0 – disables playing the IVR messages</p> <p>1 – lowest volume</p> <p>10 – highest volume</p> <p>Note: It is not recommended to disable IVR messages by setting the flag value to 0.</p>

Table 12-13 System Flags – IVR Volume Control (Continued)

Flag	Description
<i>IVR_ROLL_CALL_VOLUME</i>	<p>The volume of the Roll Call varies according to the value of this flag. Possible value range: 0-10 (Default: 6). 0 – disables playing the Roll Call 1 – lowest volume 10 – highest volume</p> <p>Note: It is not recommended to disable the Roll Call by setting the flag value to 0.</p>



The RMX must be restarted for modified flag settings to take effect.

The Call Detail Record (CDR) Utility

The Call Detail Record (CDR) utility enables you to view summary information about conferences, and retrieve full conference information and archive it to a file. The file can be used to produce reports or can be exported to external billing programs.



The value of the fields that support Unicode values, such as the info fields, will be stored in the CDR file in UTF8. The application that reads the CDR must support Unicode.

The Polycom RMX can store details of up to 1000 conferences. When this number is exceeded, the system overwrites conferences, starting with the earliest conference. To save the conferences' information, their data must be retrieved and archived. The frequency with which the archiving should be performed depends on the volume of conferences run by the MCU.

Each conference is a separate record in the MCU memory. Each conference is archived as a separate file. Each conference CDR file contains general information about the conference, such as the conference name, ID, start time and duration, as well as information about events occurring during the conference, such as adding a new participant, disconnecting a participant or extending the length of the conference.

The CDR File

CDR File Formats

The conference CDR records can be retrieved and archived in the following two formats:

- **Unformatted data** – Unformatted CDR files contain multiple records in “raw data” format. The first record in each file contains general conference data. The remaining records contain event data, one record for each event. Each record contains field values separated by commas. This data can be transferred to an external program such as Microsoft Excel® for billing purposes.

The following is a sample of an unformatted CDR file:

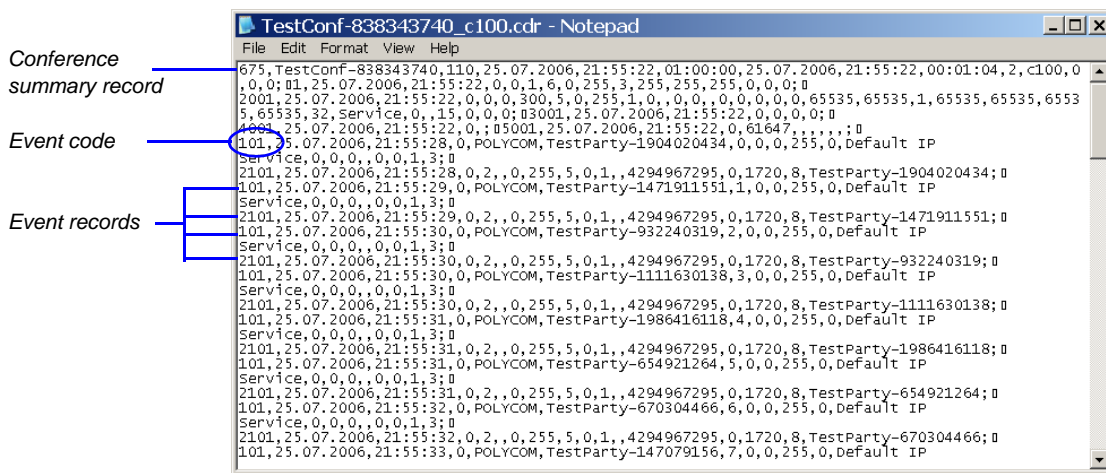


Figure 13-1 Unformatted CDR File

- **Formatted text** – Formatted CDR files contain multiple sections. The first section in each file contains general conference data. The remaining sections contain event data, one section for each event. Each field value appears in a separate line, together with its name. This data can be used to generate a summary report for a conference



The field names and values in the formatted file will appear in the language being used for the *RMX Web Client* user interface at the time when the CDR information is retrieved.

The following is an example of a formatted CDR file:

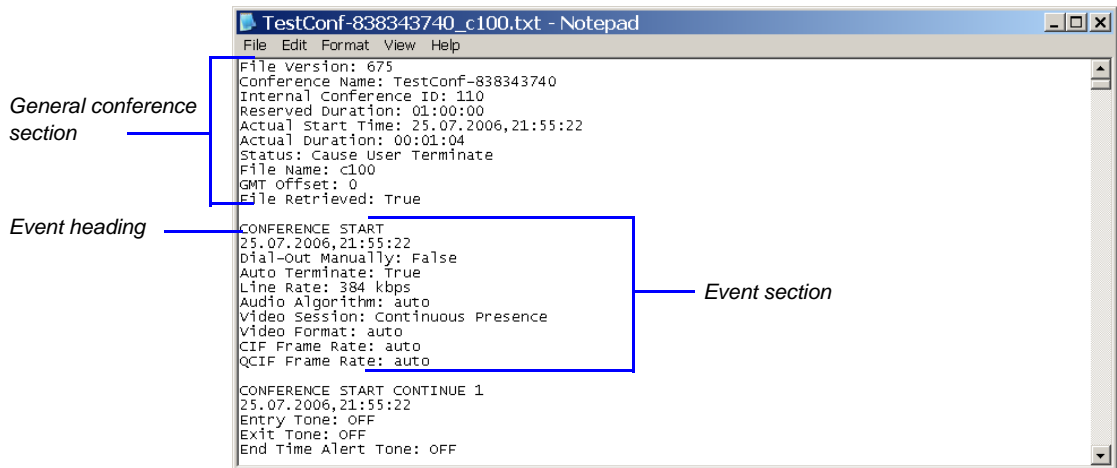


Figure 13-2 Formatted CDR File

CDR File Contents

The general conference section or record contains information such as the Routing Name and ID, and the conference starting date and time.

The event sections or records contain an event type heading or event type code, followed by event data. For example, an event type may be that a participant connects to the conference, and the event data will list the date and time the participant connects to the conference, the participant name and ID, and the participant capabilities used to connect to the conference.

To enable compatibility for applications that written for the MGC family, the Polycom RMX CDR file structure is based on the MGC CDR file structure.

The unformatted and formatted text files contain basically the same information. The following differences should be noted between the contents of the unformatted and formatted text files:

- In many cases a formatted text file field contains a textual value, whereas the equivalent unformatted file field contains a numeric value that represents the textual value.

- For reading clarity, in a few instances, a single field in the unformatted file is converted to multiple fields in the formatted text file, and in other cases, multiple fields in the unformatted file are combined into one field in the formatted file.
- To enable compatibility between MGC CDR files and RMX CDR files, the unformatted file contains fields that were applicable to the MGC MCUs, but are not supported by the RMX MCUs. These fields are omitted from the formatted text file.



Appendix C: "*CDR Fields - Unformatted File*" on page [C-1](#), contains a full list of the events, fields and values that appear in the unformatted file. This appendix can be referred to for information regarding the contents of fields in the unformatted text file, but does not reflect the exact contents of the formatted text file.




Viewing, Retrieving and Archiving Conference Information

Viewing the Conference Records

To open the CDR utility:

- On the RMX menu, click **Administration > CDR**.
The *CDR List* pane opens, displaying a list of the conference CDR records stored in the MCU memory.



Display Name	Start Time	Duration	Reserved Dur	Status	File Retrieved
 SUPPORT_213669097	11-Jul-07 2:10 PM	01:00:00	01:00:00	Ongoing Conference	No
 SUPPORT_520884022	11-Jul-07 1:55 PM	01:00:00	01:00:00	Ongoing Conference	No
 SUPPORT_727788612	11-Jul-07 12:32 PM	01:00:00	01:00:00	Ongoing Conference	Yes
 SUPPORT_944561011	11-Jul-07 10:45 AM	01:00:00	01:00:00	Ongoing Conference	No
 SUPPORT_115436619	11-Jul-07 9:34 AM	00:59:55	01:00:00	Conference terminated when	No
 SUPPORT_165113424	10-Jul-07 5:51 PM	00:59:56	01:00:00	Conference terminated when	Yes
 SUPPORT_123261512	10-Jul-07 5:26 PM	01:00:00	01:00:00	Ongoing Conference	No
 SUPPORT_34661272	10-Jul-07 4:13 PM	00:59:55	01:00:00	Conference terminated when	No
 SUPPORT_188593565	10-Jul-07 3:09 PM	06:00:00	06:00:00	Ongoing Conference	No

The following fields are displayed:

Table 13-1 Conference Record Fields




Field	Description
<i>Display Name</i>	<p>The Display Name of the conference and an icon indicating whether or not the CDR record has been retrieved and saved to a formatted text file. The following icons are used:</p> <div>  The CDR record has not been saved.  The CDR record has been saved. </div>
<i>Start Time</i>	The actual time the conference started.
<i>Duration</i>	The actual conference duration.

Table 13-1 Conference Record Fields (Continued)

Field	Description
Reserved Duration	The time the conference was scheduled to last. Discrepancy between the scheduled and the actual duration may indicate that the conference duration was prolonged or shortened.
Status	<p>The conference status. The following values may be displayed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Ongoing Conference• Terminated by User• Terminated when end time passed• Automatically terminated when conference was empty – The conference ended automatically because no participants joined the conference for a predefined time period, or all the participants disconnected from the conference and the conference was empty for a predefined time period.• Conference never became ongoing due to a problem• Unknown error <p>Note: If the conference was terminated by an MCU reset, the status Ongoing Conference will be displayed.</p>
File Retrieved	Indicates whether the conference record was retrieved to a formatted text file. (Yes/No)

Refreshing the CDR List

To refresh the CDR list:



- ➔ Click the **Refresh**  button, or right-click on any record and then select **Refresh**. Updated conference CDR records are retrieved from the MCU memory.

Retrieving and Archiving Conference CDR Records

To retrieve and archive CDR records:

- 1 To retrieve a single CDR record, right-click the record to retrieve and then select the required format (as detailed in Table 13-2). Alternatively, select the record to retrieve, and then click the appropriate button on the toolbar (as detailed in Table 13-2).
To retrieve multiple CDR records simultaneously, use standard Windows multi-selection methods.

Table 13-2 Conference Information Retrieval Options

Menu Option	Button	Action
<i>Retrieve</i>		Retrieves the conference information as unformatted data into a file whose extension is .cdr.
<i>Retrieve Formatted</i>		Retrieves the conference information as formatted text into a file whose extension is .txt.

The *Retrieve* dialog box opens.

The dialog box displays the names of the destination CDR files.

- 2 Select the destination folder for the CDR files and then click **OK**.

If the destination file already exists, you will be asked if you want to overwrite the file or specify a new name for the destination file.
The files are saved to the selected folder.

RMX Administration and Utilities

RMX Manager

The *RMX Manager* is the Windows version of the *RMX Web Client*. It can be used instead of the *RMX Web Client* for routine RMX management and for RMX management via a modem connection.

The *RMX Manager* is faster than the *RMX Web Client* and can give added efficiency to RMX management tasks, especially when deployed on workstations affected by:

- Lack of performance due to bandwidth constraints within the LAN/WAN environment.
- Slow operation and disconnections that can be caused by the anti-phishing component of various antivirus applications.

For more information on using the RMX Manager via a modem connection, see Appendix H, “*Connecting to the RMX via Modem*”.

Installing RMX Manager

To install RMX Manager:

The RMX Software must be installed and licensing procedures must be completed before starting the following procedure.

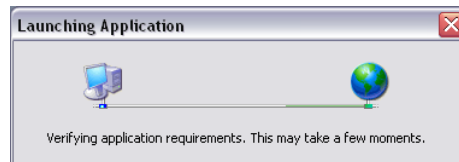
- 1 Start the *RMX Web Client*.

The Login screen is displayed. There is a link to the *RMX Manager Installer* at the top of the right edge of the screen.

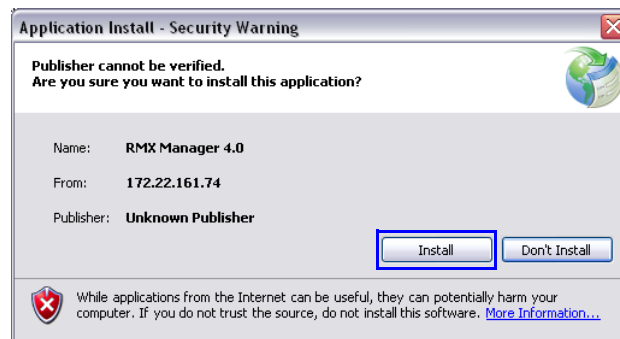


- 2 Click the **Install RMX Manager** link.

The installer verifies the application's requirements on the workstation.

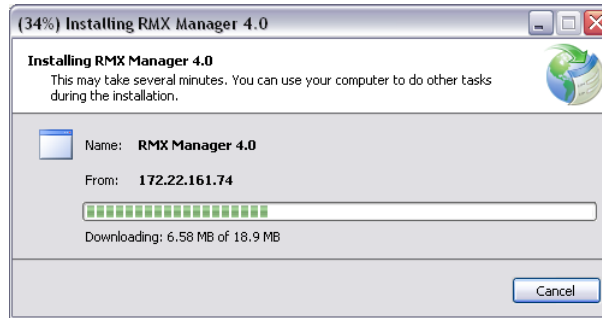


The *Install* dialog box is displayed.



- 3 Click **Install**.

The installation proceeds.



The installation completes, the application loads and the *RMX Manager – Welcome* screen is displayed with the following information:

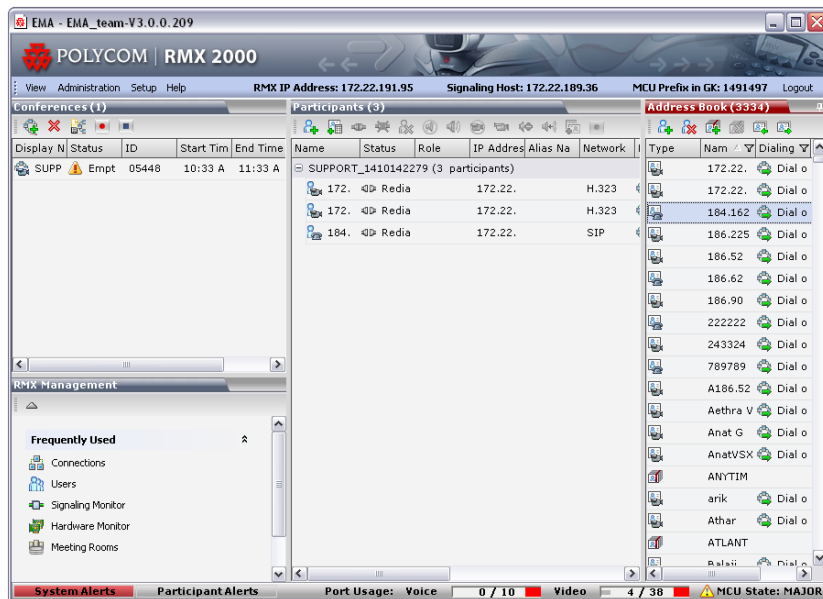


- The *MCU IP* address field contains the IP address of the MCU's *Control Unit*.
 - The *Port* field contains port number *80*.
 - The *Site Mode* field is set to *Control Unit*.
- 4** In the *Username* field, enter your user name.
 - 5** In the *Password* field, enter your password.
 - 6** **Optional:** To connect with *SSL* and work in *Secure Mode*, select the **Secure Mode** check box.

The *Port* field is automatically set to *443*.

- 7 **Optional:** To use a different port for *Secure Mode*, select another port from the list or enter the required port number into the *Port* field.
- 8 **Optional:** To connect to the *Shelf Manager*:
 - a In the *Site Mode* field, select **Shelf Management**.
 - b In the *MCU IP* field, enter the IP address of the *Shelf Management*.
- 9 Click **Login**.

The *RMX Manager* main screen is displayed as a window.



Running RMX Manager

Once installed, the *RMX Manager* can be run using:

- The *http://* command in the browser's address line.
- The Windows *Start* menu.

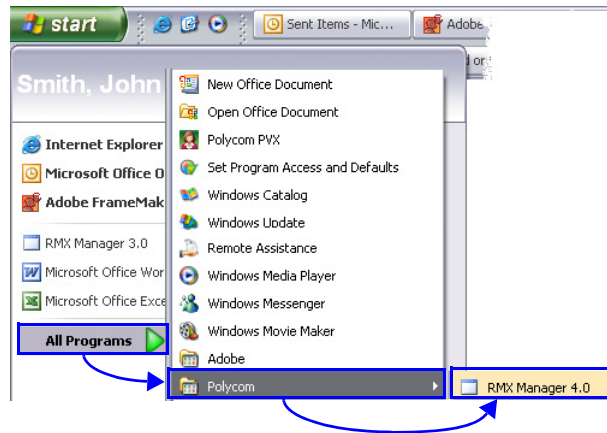
To use the browser:

- ➔ In the browser's command line, enter `http://<MCU Control Unit IP Address>/RmxManager.html` and press **Enter**.

To use the Windows *Start* menu:

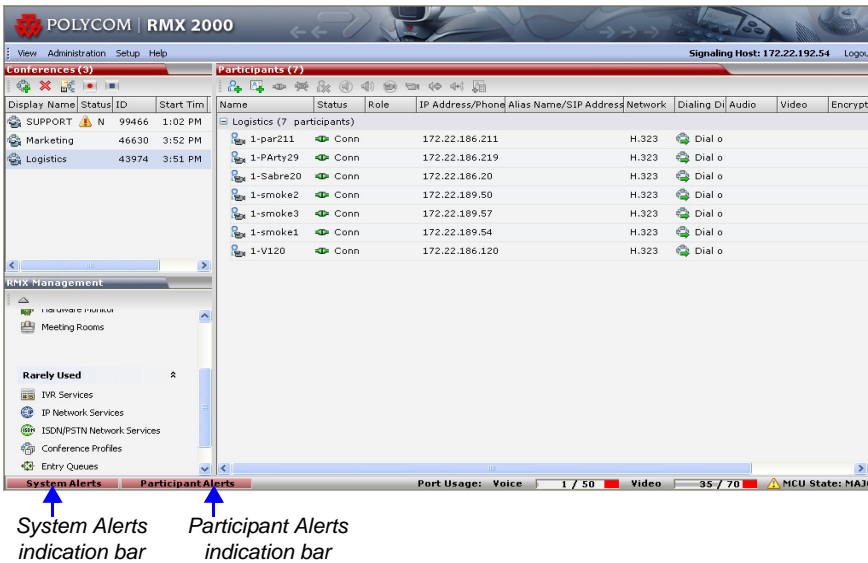
- 1 Click **Start**.

- a If the *RMX Manager* appears in the recently used programs list, click **RMX Manager** in the list to start the application.
- or
- b Click **All Programs**.
The *All Programs* list is displayed.
- a Select **Polycom** and then select **RMX Manager**.



System and Participant Alerts

The RMX alerts users to any faults or errors the MCU encountered during operation. Two indication bars labeled *System Alerts* and *Participant Alerts* signal users of system errors by blinking red in the event of an alert.



The *System Alerts* indication bar blinks red prompting the user to view the active alarms. Once viewed, the *System Alerts* indication bar becomes statically red until the errors have been resolved in the MCU. The *Participants Alerts* indication bar blinks red indicating participant connection difficulties in conferences. Once viewed, the *Participant Alerts* indication bar becomes statically red until the errors have been resolved in the MCU.

System Alerts

System Alerts are activated when the system encounters errors such as a general or card error. The system errors are recorded by the RMX and can be generated into a report that can be saved in *.txt format.

To view the System Alerts list:

- 1 Click the red blinking **System Alerts** indication bar. The *System Alerts* pane opens. This screen indicates what events have not been resolved.




ID	Time	Category	Level	Code	Description
1356	7/18/	General	Major	IP_SERV	IP Network Service was modified. Please reset the MCU
1355	7/12/	General	Major	DEFAULT	Default user exists in Users list

The following columns appear in the *System Alerts* pane:

Table 14-1 Active Alarms Pane Columns

Field	Description
<i>ID</i>	An identifying number assigned to the system alert.
<i>Time</i>	Lists the date and time that the error occurred. This column also includes the icon indicating the error level (as listed in the level column).
<i>Category</i>	<p>Lists the type of error. The following categories may be listed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File – indicates a problem in one of the files stored on the MCU's hard disk. • Card – indicates problems with a card. • Exception – indicates software errors. • General – indicates a general error. • Assert – indicates internal software errors that are reported by the software program. • Startup – indicates errors that occurred during system startup. • Unit – indicates problems with a unit. • MPL - indicates an error related to a Shelf Management component (MPL component) other than an MPM, RTM or switch board.

Table 14-1 Active Alarms Pane Columns (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Level</i>	Indicates the severity of the problem, or the type of event. There are three fault level indicators:  – Major Error  – System Message  – Startup Event
<i>Code</i>	Indicates the problem, as indicated by the error category.
<i>Process Name</i>	Lists the type of functional process involved.
<i>Description</i>	When applicable, displays a more detailed explanation of the cause of the problem.

For more information about the Active Alarms, see *Appendix B: "Alarms and Faults"* on page **B-1**.


- 2** Click one of the following two buttons to view its report in the *System Alerts* pane:



Active Alarms (default) – this is the default reports list that appears when clicking the System Alerts indication bar. It displays the current system errors and is a quick indicator of the MCU status.



Faults List – a list of faults that occurred previously (whether they were solved or not) for support or debugging purposes.

- 3** To save the *Active Alarms* or *Faults* report to a text file, click the **Save to Text**  button.

The *Save* dialog window opens.

- 4** Select a destination folder and enter the file name.
- 5** Click **Save**.





Participant Alerts

Participant Alerts enables users, participants and conferences to be prompted and currently connected. This includes all participants that are disconnected, idle, on standby or waiting for dial-in. Alerts are intended for users or administrators to quickly see all participants that need their attention.

To view the Participants Alerts list:


- 1 Click the red blinking **Participants Alerts** indication bar.

The *Participant Alerts* pane opens.

Participant Alerts (2)								
	Conference	Name	Status	Disconnection Time	Role	IP Address	Alias Name/SIP	Network Dialing Direction
	Marketing	V96	disconnect	9/21/2006 2:18 PM		172.22.186.96	H.323	 Dial out
	Marketing	V69	disconnect	9/21/2006 2:18 PM		172.22.189.69	H.323	 Dial out



The *Participant Alerts* pane displays similar properties to that of the *Participant List* pane. For more information, see the *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide* - "*Participant Level Monitoring*" on page [3-42](#).

- 2 To resolve participants and the alarms they have generated, users can either **Connect** , **Disconnect**  or **Delete**  a participant.

System Configuration

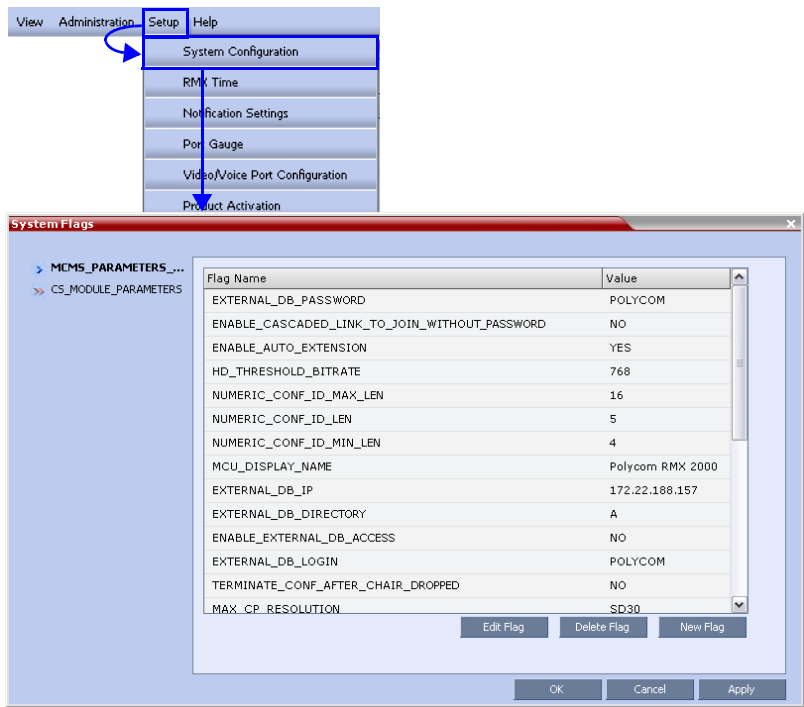
Aspects of the system’s overall behavior can be configured by modifying the default values of system flags.

Modifying System Flags

To modify system flags:

- 1 On the *RMX* menu, click **Setup > System Configuration**.

The *System Flags* dialog box opens.



- 2 In the *MCMS_PARAMETERS* tab, the following flags can be modified:

Table 14-2 System Flags – *MCMS_PARAMETERS*

Flag	Description
<i>ALLOW_NON_ENCRYPT_PARTY_IN_ENCRYPT_CONF</i>	If YES, allows non-encrypted participants to connect to encrypted conferences. Default: No
<i>AUTHENTICATE_USER</i>	If the external database application is to be used to verify that operators are authorized to log in to the MCU, set the value of this flag to YES . If the value of this flag is set to NO , the MCU database is used to verify that operators are authorized to log in to the MCU. Note: If the flag is set to YES , the flow is first to look in the internal DB and then go out to the external one. Flags for SE200 need to be added manually.
<i>ENABLE_EXTERNAL_DB_ACCESS</i>	If YES, the RMX connects to an external database application, to validate the participant's right to start a new conference or access a conference. Default: NO
<i>ENABLE_AUTO_EXTENSION</i>	Allow conferences running on the RMX to be automatically extended as long as there are participants connected. Default: YES
<i>ENABLE_CASCADE_LINK_TO_JOIN_WITHOUT_PASSWORD</i>	Enables a cascaded link to enter a conference without a password. Default: NO, for security reasons.
<i>EXTERNAL_DB_DIRECTORY</i>	The URL of the external database application. For the sample script application, the URL is: <virtual directory>/SubmitQuery.asp
<i>EXTERNAL_DB_IP</i>	The IP address of the external database server, if one is used. Default: 0.0.0.0

Table 14-2 System Flags – MCMS_PARAMETERS (Continued)

Flag	Description
<i>EXTERNAL_DB_LOGIN</i>	The login name defined for the RMX in the external database server. Default: POLYCOM
<i>EXTERNAL_DB_PASSWORD</i>	The password associated with the user name defined for the RMX on the external database server. Default: POLYCOM
<i>EXTERNAL_DB_PORT</i>	The external database server port used by the RMX to send and receive XML requests/responses. For secure communications set the value to 443. Default: 5005.
<i>H.263_ANNEX_T</i>	Set to NO to send the Content stream without Annex T and enable Aethra and Tandberg endpoints, that do not support Annex T, to process the Content. Default: YES
<i>HD_THRESHOLD_BITRATE</i>	Sets the minimum bit rate required by endpoints to connect to an HD Conference. Endpoints that cannot support this bit rate are connected as audio only. Range: 384kbps - 4Mbps (Default: 768)
<i>ISDN_COUNTRY_CODE</i>	The name of the country in which the MCU is located. Default: COUNTRY_NIL
<i>ISDN_IDLE_CODE_E1</i>	The Idle code (silent), transmitted on the ISDN E1 B channels, when there is no transmission on the channels. Default: 0x54
<i>ISDN_IDLE_CODE_T1</i>	The Idle code (silent), transmitted on the ISDN T1 B channels, when there is no transmission on the channels. Default: 0x13

Table 14-2 System Flags – MCMS_PARAMETERS (Continued)

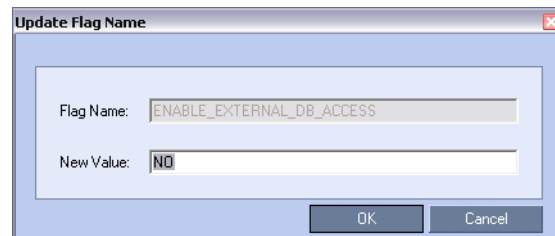
Flag	Description
<i>ISDN_NUM_OF_DIGITS</i>	When using ISDN Overlap sending dialing mode, this field holds the number of digits to be received by the MCU. Default: 9
<i>MAX_CP_RESOLUTION</i>	The maximum CP resolution and frame rate that can be supported by the Polycom RMX 2000. Possible flag values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HD1080 – High Definition at 30 fps (MPM+) • HD720 – High Definition at 60 fps (MPM+) • HD – High Definition at 30 fps • SD30 – Standard Definition at 30 fps • SD15 – Standard Definition at 15 fps • CIF – CIF resolution Default: HD1080 For more information see " <i>Setting the Maximum CP Resolution for Conferencing</i> " on page 8-6.
<i>MCU_DISPLAY_NAME</i>	The name of the MCU that is displayed on the endpoint's screen when connecting to the conference. Default: POLYCOM RMX 2000
<i>NUMERIC_CONF_ID_LEN</i>	Defines the number of digits in the Conference ID that will be assigned by the MCU. Enter 0 to disable the automatic assignment of IDs by the MCU and let the Operator manually assign them. Range: 2-16 (Default: 4).
<i>NUMERIC_CONF_ID_MAX_LEN</i>	The maximum number of digits that the user can enter when manually assigning an ID to a conference. Range: 2-16 (Default: 8) Note: Selecting 2 limits the number of simultaneous ongoing conferences to 99.

Table 14-2 System Flags – MCMS_PARAMETERS (Continued)

Flag	Description
<i>NUMERIC_CONF_ID_MIN_LEN</i>	The minimum number of digits that the user must enter when manually assigning an ID to a conference. Range: 2-16 (Default: 4) Note: Selecting 2 limits the number of simultaneous ongoing conferences to 99.
<i>TERMINATE_CONF_AFTER_CHAIR_DROPPED</i>	If YES, sets conferences to automatically terminate if the Chairperson disconnects from the conference. Default: YES

Currently no flags are defined in the CS_MODULE_PARAMETERS section.


- 3** To modify a flag value, double-click or select the flag and click the **Edit Flag** button.
- 4** In the *New Value* field, enter the flag's new value.

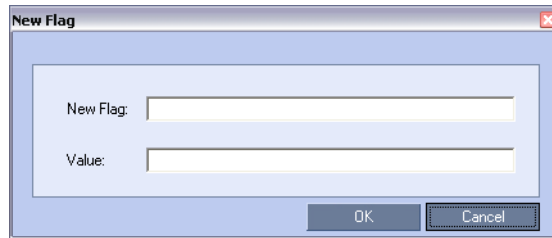


- 5** Click **OK**.
- 6** Repeat steps 2-4 to modify additional flags.
- 7** Click **OK**.

Manually Adding and Deleting System Flags

To add a flag:

- 1 In the *System Flags* dialog box, click the  button.
The *New Flag* dialog box is displayed.



The *New Flag* dialog box is a small window with a title bar that says "New Flag". It contains two text input fields. The first field is labeled "New Flag:" and the second field is labeled "Value:". Below the fields are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

- 2 In the *New Flag* field enter the flag name.
- 3 In the *Value* field enter the flag value.

The following flags can be manually added to the *MCMS_PARAMETERS* tab:

Table 14-3 Manually Added System Flags – *MCMS_PARAMETERS*

Flag and Value	Description
<i>SIP_ENABLE_FECC</i> =NO	By default, FECC support for SIP endpoints is enabled at the MCU level. You can disable it by manually adding this flag and setting it to NO.
<i>MIX_LINK</i> _ENVIRONMENT=YES	In H.239-enabled MIH Cascading, when MGC is on level 1, setting this flag to YES will adjust the line rate of HD Video Switching conferences run on the RMX 2000 from 1920Kbps to 17897, 100bits/sec to match the actual rate of the HD Video Switching conference running on the MGC. Note: If the flag <i>MIX_LINK_ENVIRONMENT</i> is set to YES, the <i>IP_LINK_ENVIRONMENT</i> flag must be set to NO.

Table 14-3 Manually Added System Flags – MCMS_PARAMETERS
(Continued)

Flag and Value	Description
IP_ENVIRONMENT_LINK=NO	In H.239-enabled MIH Cascading, when MGC is on level 1, setting this flag to YES will adjust the line rate of HD Video Switching conferences run on the RMX 2000 from 1920Kbps to 18432, 100bits/sec to match the actual rate of the IP Only HD Video Switching conference running on the MGC. Note: If the flag MIX_LINK_ENVIRONMENT is set to NO, the <i>IP_LINK_ENVIRONMENT</i> flag must be set to YES.
ENABLE_H239_ANNEX_T=YES	In H.239-enabled MIH Cascading, when MGC is on level 1, enables sending Content using Annex T.
ENABLE_TEXTUAL_CONFERENCE_STATUS=YES	Set the value of this flag value to NO to disable <i>Text Indication</i> . This setting is recommended for MCUs running Telepresence conferences. Default: YES.
RMX_MANAGEMENT_SECURITY_PROTOCOL	Enter the protocol to be used for secure communications. Default: TLSV1_SSLV3 (both). Default for U.S. Federal licenses: TLSV1.
IVR_MUSIC_VOLUME	The volume of the IVR music played when a single participant is connected to the conference varies according to the value of this flag. Possible value range: 0-10 (Default: 5). 0 – disables playing the music 1 – lowest volume 10 – highest volume

Table 14-3 *Manually Added System Flags – MCMS_PARAMETERS
(Continued)*

Flag and Value	Description
<i>IVR_MESSAGE_VOLUME</i>	<p>The volume of IVR messages varies according to the value of this flag.</p> <p>Possible value range: 0-10 (Default: 6).</p> <p>0 – disables playing the IVR messages</p> <p>1 – lowest volume</p> <p>10 – highest volume</p> <p>Note: It is not recommended to disable IVR messages by setting the flag value to 0.</p>
<i>IVR_ROLL_CALL_VOLUME</i>	<p>The volume of the Roll Call varies according to the value of this flag.</p> <p>Possible value range: 0-10 (Default: 6).</p> <p>0 – disables playing the Roll Call</p> <p>1 – lowest volume</p> <p>10 – highest volume</p> <p>Note: It is not recommended to disable the Roll Call by setting the flag value to 0.</p>
<i>FORCE_1X1_LAYOUT_ON_CASCADED_LINK_CONNECTION</i>	<p>Set this flag to NO when connecting to an MGC using a cascaded link, if the MGC is functioning as a Gateway and participant layouts on the other network are not to be forced to 1X1.</p> <p>Default: YES</p>

Table 14-3 *Manually Added System Flags – MCMS_PARAMETERS
(Continued)*

Flag and Value	Description
ISDN_RESOURCE _POLICY= LOAD_BALANCE (ISDN)	<p>The flag value determines how the ISDN B-channels within configured spans are allocated.</p> <p>The robustness of the ISDN network can be improved by allocating channels evenly (load balancing) among the spans, minimizing the effect of channel loss resulting from the malfunction of a single span.</p> <p>Set the flag value to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LOAD_BALANCE to allocate channels evenly among all configured spans. • FILL_FROM_FIRST_CONFIGURED_SPAN To allocate all channels on the first configured span before allocating channels on other spans. • FILL_FROM_LAST_CONFIGURED_SPAN To allocate all channels on the last configured span before allocating channels on other spans. <p>Default: LOAD_BALANCE</p>
BONDING_CHANNEL _DELAY (ISDN)	<p>When connecting a bonding group, this is the delay (number of 1/100 seconds) between dialing attempts to connect sequential channels.</p> <p>The channel per second connection performance of ISDN switches can vary and can cause timing issues that result in bonding channel disconnection.</p> <p>Default: 6</p>
BONDING_GROUP _DELAY (ISDN)	<p>When connecting several bonding groups, this is the delay (number of 1/100 seconds) before the first dialing attempt to connect next bonding group.</p> <p>Default: 500</p>

Table 14-3 *Manually Added System Flags – MCMS_PARAMETERS*
(Continued)

Flag and Value	Description
BONDING_DIALING_METHOD (ISDN)	<p>When set to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> SEQUENTIAL The MCU initiates channel connections sequentially until it reaches the number of channels defined by the BONDING_NUM_CHANNELS_IN_GROUP flag. When a channel is connected, dialing begins for the next channel in the group. BY_TIMERS The MCU initiates channel connections sequentially using the values of the BONDING_CHANNEL_DELAY and BONDING_GROUP_DELAY flags. The first group of channels is dialed, using the BONDING_CHANNEL_DELAY between dialing attempts for each channel in the group. The RMX then implements the BONDING_GROUP_DELAY, before dialing the first channel of the next group. Default: SEQUENTIAL
BONDING_NUM_CHANNELS_IN_GROUP (ISDN)	<p>The number of channels in the bonding group to be connected before dialing the next sequential channel. Default: 50</p>
DELAY_BETWEEN_H320_DIAL_OUT_PARTY (ISDN)	<p>The delay in milliseconds that the MCU waits when connecting dial out ISDN and PSTN participants. Default: 1000</p>

Table 14-3 Manually Added System Flags – MCMS_PARAMETERS
(Continued)

Flag and Value	Description
<i>H323_FREE_VIDEO_RESOURCES</i>	<p>For use in the Avaya Environment.</p> <p>In the Avaya Environment there are features that involve converting undefined dial-in participants' connections from video to audio (or vice versa). To ensure that the participants' video resources remain available for them, and are not released for use by Audio Only calls, set this flag to NO.</p> <p>If set to YES, the RMX will release video resources for <i>Audio Only</i> calls.</p> <p>Default: YES.</p>
<i>SIP_FREE_VIDEO_RESOURCES</i>	
<i>CP_REGARD_TO_INCOMING_SETUP_RATE</i>	<p>For use in the Avaya Environment.</p> <p>If set to YES, the RMX calculates the line rate for incoming calls in CP conferences, according to the line rate which is declared by the endpoint in the H.225 setup message.</p> <p>If set to NO, the rate is calculated according to the conference line rate regardless of the rate rate in the H.225 setup message.</p> <p>Default: YES.</p>
<i>H245_TUNNELING</i>	<p>For use in the Avaya Environment.</p> <p>This flag is defined in the System Flags – CS_MODULE_PARAMETERS section.</p> <p>In the Avaya Environment, set the flag to YES to ensure that H.245 is tunneled through H.225. Both H.245 and H.225 will use the same signaling port.</p> <p>Default: NO.</p>
<i>H239_FORCE_CAPABILITIES</i>	<p>When the flag is set to NO, the RMX only verifies that the endpoint supports the Content protocols: Up to H.264 or H.263.</p> <p>When set to YES, the RMX checks frame rate, resolution and all other parameters of the Content mode as declared by an endpoint before receiving or transmitting content.</p> <p>Default: NO.</p>

4 Click **OK**.

To delete a flag:

- 1** In the *System Flags* dialog box, select the flag to delete and click the **Delete Flag** button.
- 2** In the confirmation message box, click **Yes** to confirm.
- 3** Click **OK**.

Auto Layout Configuration

The *Auto Layout* option lets the RMX automatically select the conference video layout based on the number of participants currently connected to the conference. You can modify the default selection of the conference video layout to customize it to your conferencing preferences.

Customizing the Default Auto Layout

The default *Auto Layout* is controlled by 11 flags:
PREDEFINED_AUTO_LAYOUT_0, ... , **PREDEFINED_AUTO_LAYOUT_10**
Each of the 11 *Auto Layout* flags can be left at its default value, or set to any of the *Possible Values* listed in Table 14-4.
The flag that controls the *Auto Layout* you wish to modify must be added to the *System Configuration* file. For more information see "*Modifying System Flags*" on page **14-10**.

Table 14-4 Flags: PREDEFINED_AUTO_LAYOUT_0,...,10



































Flag Name: PREDEFINED_AUTO_LAYOUT_n (n = Number of Participants)		
n	Default Value	Possible Values
0	 CP_LAYOUT_1X1	 CP_LAYOUT_1X1
1	 CP_LAYOUT_1X1	 CP_LAYOUT_1X2
2	 CP_LAYOUT_1X1	 CP_LAYOUT_1X2HOR
3	 CP_LAYOUT_1x2VER	 CP_LAYOUT_1X2VER
4	 CP_LAYOUT_2X2	 CP_LAYOUT_2X1
5	 CP_LAYOUT_2X2	 CP_LAYOUT_1P2HOR
6	 CP_LAYOUT_1P5	 CP_LAYOUT_1P2HOR_UP







Table 14-4 Flags: PREDEFINED_AUTO_LAYOUT_0,...,10 (Continued)

Flag Name: PREDEFINED_AUTO_LAYOUT_n (n = Number of Participants)		
n	Default Value	Possible Values
7	 CP_LAYOUT_1P5	 CP_LAYOUT_1P2VER
8	 CP_LAYOUT_1P7	 CP_LAYOUT_2X2
9	 CP_LAYOUT_1P7	 CP_LAYOUT_1P3HOR_UP
10	 CP_LAYOUT_1P7	 CP_LAYOUT_1P3VER
		 CP_LAYOUT_1P4HOR
		 CP_LAYOUT_1P4HOR_UP
		 CP_LAYOUT_1P4VER
		 CP_LAYOUT_1P5
		 CP_LAYOUT_1P7
		 CP_LAYOUT_1P8UP
		 CP_LAYOUT_1P8CENT
		 CP_LAYOUT_1P8HOR_UP
		 CP_LAYOUT_3X3
		 CP_LAYOUT_2P8
		 CP_LAYOUT_1P12
		 CP_LAYOUT_4X4

Example:

Table 14-5 illustrates the effect of modifying the **PREDEFINED_AUTO_LAYOUT_5** flag in conferences with fewer or more participants than the number of windows selected in the default layout.

Table 14-5 Example: Modifying PREDEFINED_AUTO_LAYOUT_5 Flag

Flag	Set to Possible Value	Number of Participants	Participant's View
<div>PREDEFINED_AUTO_LAYOUT_5</div> <div>Default = </div>	<div>CP_LAYOUT_1x2VER</div> <div></div>	3	<div></div> <div>Voice activated switching displays the current speaker in the left window of the video layout and only the two last speakers are displayed.</div>
		7	
	<div>CP_LAYOUT_1P5</div> <div></div>	3	<div></div> <div>Voice activated switching displays the current speaker in the large (top left) window of the video layout.</div>
		7	<div></div> <div>Voice activated switching displays the current speaker in the top left window of the video layout.</div>

RMX Time

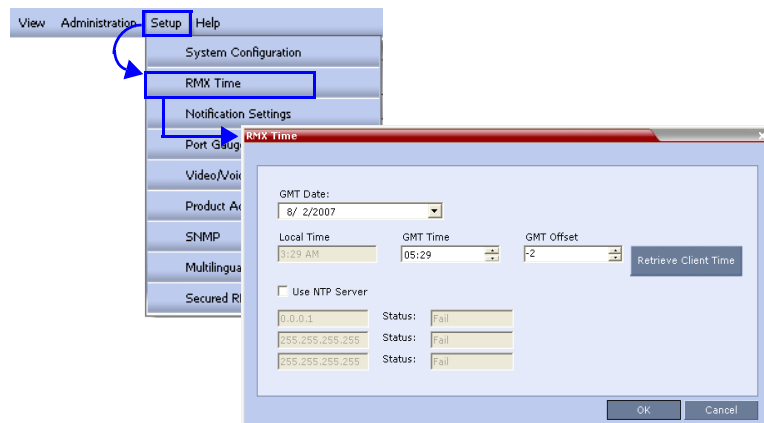
To ensure accurate conference scheduling, the RMX MCU has a clock that can function in standalone mode, or in synchronization with up to three *Network Time Protocol* (NTP) servers.

Altering the clock

The MCU's date and time can be set manually or enabled to synchronize with external NTP servers.

To Alter the RMX Time:

- 1 On the *RMX* menu, click **Setup > RMX Time** to open the *RMX Time* dialog box.



- 2 Define/view the following fields:

Table 14-6 *RMX Time – Fields Properties*

Field	Description
<i>GMT Date</i>	The date at Greenwich, UK.
<i>Local Time</i>	The MCU's local time settings, are based and calculated from the GMT Time and the GMT Offset.

Table 14-6 *RMX Time – Fields Properties (Continued)*

Field	Description
<i>GMT Time</i>	The MCU's current GMT time settings. Select the <i>Up</i> or <i>Down</i> cursor to alter the <i>GMT Time</i> on the MCU.
<i>GMT Offset</i>	The time zone difference between Greenwich and the MCU's location. Select the up or down cursor to alter the <i>GMT Offset</i> time on the MCU.
<i>Get Client Time</i>	Click this button to automatically update the MCU's date, time and time zone to match that of the workstation.
<i>Use NTP Server</i>	Select this check box to synchronize the time with up to three NTP servers. When selected, the manual GMT Date & Time setting options are disabled. However, to implement this mode you are required to enable an external connection with an NTP server. Enter the IP addresses of the required NTP servers in order of precedence. The <i>Status</i> field indicates whether registration with the NTP Server failed or succeeded.



After resetting the MCU a delay may occur when synchronizing with the external NTP server.

Resource Management

Resource Capacity

The RMX can support two kinds of cards: *MPM* and *MPM+*.

MPM+ cards offer higher capacity additional video capabilities. Three *MPM+* card assemblies are available, *MPM+ 80*, *MPM+ 40* and *MPM+ 20*, offering various port capacities.

Table 14-7 summarizes the resource capacities of an RMX with the various card types.

Table 14-7 Resource Capacity

Resource Type	Maximum Possible				
	2 x MPM	MPM+20	MPM+40	MPM+80	2 x MPM+80
Voice	400	100	200	400	800
CIF	80	20	40	80	160
SD30	20	8	15	30	60
HD720p30	20	5	10	20	40
HD720p60	–	2	5	10	20
HD1080p30	–	2	5	10	20



- RMX's with 500MB of memory can support a maximum of 400 simultaneous participant calls, regardless of how system resources are allocated. This limitation applies to RMX's configured with either MPM or MPM+ cards. RMX's with 1000MB of memory are not subject to this limitation.
- RMX memory size is listed in the *Administration > System Information* properties box. For more information see "System Information" on page [14-46](#).

Resource Capacity Modes

The installed media card type (*MPM* and *MPM+*) determines the *Card Configuration Mode*, which in turn determines the resource allocation method that can be selected for the RMX. It determines how the system resources are allocated to the connecting endpoints.

The *System Card Configuration Mode* determines the resource allocation method used by the RMX to allocate resources to the connecting endpoints. The method in which the system allocates the resources is defined in the *Video/Voice Port Configuration*. Two allocation methods are available:

- **Flexible Resource Capacity™** – This is the same as the allocation mode used in all previous versions. The system allocates the resources according to the connecting endpoints. This mode offers flexibility in resource allocation and is available in both *MPM* and *MPM+ Card Configuration Modes*.

In *Flexible Resource Capacity* mode, in both *MPM* and *MPM+ Card Configuration Modes*, the maximum number of resources is based on the system license, regardless of the hardware configuration of the RMX. These resources are allocated as CIF resources by default.

Example: If the RMX is licensed for 80 video resources, but only one *MPM* card is currently installed in the RMX, the system lets you allocate 80 ports although only 40 video resources are available for participant connection. (However, an active alarm will be added to the *Active Alarms* list indicating a resource deficiency).

- **Fixed Resource Capacity™** – This mode offers precise usage of resources, allowing the administrator to set the number of resources guaranteed to each *Audio Only* and video connection type in advance. This mode is available only in *MPM+ Card Configuration Mode*.

In *Fixed Resource Capacity* mode, the maximum number of resources is based on the system license and the hardware configuration of the RMX. By default, these resources are allocated as HD720p30 resources, the first time *Fixed Resource Capacity* mode is activated.

Example: If two *MPM+* cards are installed in the RMX, providing 160 video resources, and the license was not upgraded accordingly, although the system capacity is higher, resource availability for allocation does not change and remains according to the license (80). Conversely, if two *MPM+* cards are installed in the RMX, providing

160 video resources, and the license is for 160 video resources, and one of the *MPM+* cards is removed, the resource availability for allocation is changed to 80.

Resource Usage

Continuous Presence

Video resources usage varies according to the video resolution used by the endpoints. The higher the video resolution (quality), the greater the amount of video resources consumed by the MCU.

Table 14-8 Video Quality Vs. Port Usage (in CP mode)

Endpoint Connection Line Rate Kbps	Video Quality			
	Motion		Sharpness	
	Resolution	Video Ports Required	Resolution	Video Ports Required
128	QCIF	1	CIF	1
256	CIF	1	SD15	2
384	2CIF30	2	SD15	2
512	2CIF30	2	SD30 / HD720p30fps	4
768 - 1472	SD30	4	SD30 / HD720p30fps	4
1920 - 4000	HD720p30fps	4	SD30 / HD720p30fps	4
			HD1080/ HD720p60fps	8 (MPM+)

High Definition Video Switching

During a *High Definition Video Switching* conference, each endpoint uses one video (CIF) port.

Voice

One *Audio Only* resource is used to connect a single voice participants once CIF resources have been converted to *Audio Only*. However, if no CIF resources were converted, Audio Only endpoints use one CIF video resource per connection.

When video ports are fully used, the system cannot use free audio ports for video. When audio port resources are fully used, video ports can be used, using one video port to connect one voice participant.

Video/Voice Port Configuration

The *Video/Voice Port Configuration* enables you to configure the RMX Resource Capacity and if in *MPM+ System Card Configuration Mode*, to select the capacity method.

Flexible Resource Capacity Mode

All resources are initially allocated as CIF video ports as it is a resolution commonly supported by all endpoints.

The administrator can allocate some or all of these resources as *Voice* resources and let the system allocate the remaining *Video* resources automatically as participants connect to conferences. The system automatically allocates resources according to the connecting participant's endpoint type, capabilities and line rate.



If the system runs out of voice ports, voice endpoints cannot connect to available video ports. Conversely, video endpoints cannot connect to available voice ports.

Flexible Resource Capacity mode is available and is the default selection in both *MPM* and *MPM+ System Card Configuration Modes*. It is the only allocation method in *MPM System Card Configuration Mode*.

Fixed Resource Capacity

Fixed Resource Capacity enables the administrator to allocate the number of resources available to each video connection type and *Audio Only* connections in advance. In *Fixed Resource Capacity* mode, the system is always in a known state, and when used in conjunction with the *Resource Report*, it gives the administrator precise control over resource allocation and optimization. For more information, see "Resource Report" on page [14-37](#).

Fixed Resource Capacity mode is available only in *MPM+ System Card Configuration Modes*.

If all resources allocated to a specific endpoint type are in use and an endpoint of that specific type tries to connect to the RMX, the RMX first attempts to connect the endpoint at the next highest resolution. If not resources are available at that level the RMX begins search for connection resolutions at progressively decreasing resolutions.

Example: In a system that has 10 SD ports allocated and in use:

If another SD endpoint (11th) attempts to connect, the system first tries to allocate resources to the SD endpoint first from HD720 and then from HD1080 resources.

If HD resources are allocated to an SD endpoint, HD endpoints may experience a resource deficiency when trying to connect and may not be connected at HD resolution.

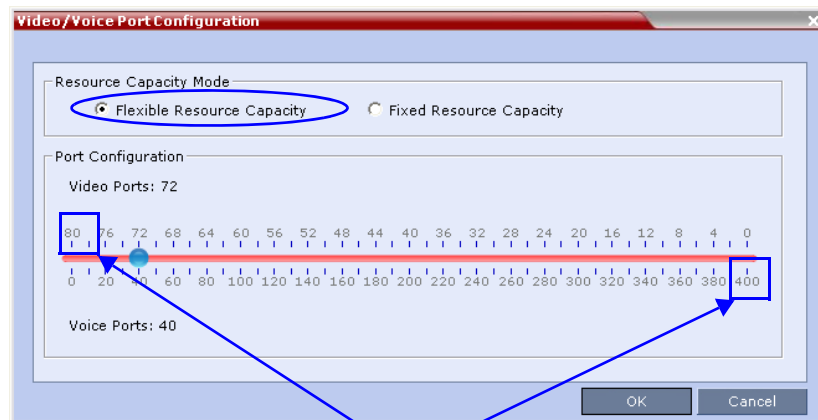
If there are no available HD resources the system tries to allocate resources to the SD endpoint from any available CIF resources.

If there are no available CIF resources the system tries to allocate resources to the SD endpoint from any available *Audio Only* resources. If *Audio Only* resources are allocated the HD endpoint, it is connected as an *Audio Only* participant.

Configuring the Video/Voice Resources in MPM Mode

To allocate Audio Only resources:

- 1 In the RMX menu, click **Setup > Video/Voice Port Configuration**. The *Video/Voice Port Configuration* dialog box opens.



Resource Maximum from License

A single slider is displayed, calibrated according to licensed video resources indicated in CIF ports in the RMX.

- 2 Move the slider to the number of *Audio Only* ports to be allocated.
The slider moves in multiples of two, converting CIF video ports to voice ports in groups of two, with each CIF video port converting to five voice ports. The minimum number of voice ports that can be allocated is 10 (2 video ports x 5 voice ports per video port).
- 3 Click **OK**.
- 4 Reset the MCU



In *Flexible Resource Capacity*, any change in resource allocation requires a reset of the RMX for changes to take effect.

Configuring the Video/Voice Resources in MPM+ Mode

There are two *Resource Capacity* modes in *MPM+ Mode*:

- Flexible Resource Capacity
- Fixed Resource Capacity

The resource allocation mode is saved by the RMX and is activated when the RMX is restarted.

Flexible Resource Capacity

Flexible Resource Capacity is the default resource allocation mode in *MPM+ Mode* and is functionally identical to the *MPM Flexible Resource Capacity* described above.

To allocate Audio Only ports in MPM+ mode:

- 1 Optional** (*otherwise skip to step 2*): If the RMX is in *Fixed Resource Capacity* mode:
 - a** In the RMX menu, click **Setup > Video/Voice Port Configuration**.
The *Video/Voice Port Configuration* dialog box opens.
 - b** In the *Resource Capacity Mode* box, select **Flexible Resource Capacity**.
 - c** Click **OK**.
 - d** Restart the RMX from the *Hardware Monitor* pane.
- 2** In the RMX menu, click **Setup > Video/Voice Port Configuration**.
The *Video/Voice Port Configuration* dialog box opens.
If switching from *Fixed* mode, all video resources are allocated as CIF video ports.
- 3** Continue with **Step 2** of the *MPM Mode Flexible Resource Capacity* procedure described above.

To allocate resources in Fixed Resource Capacity mode:



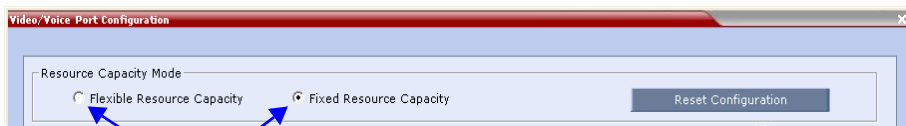
Resource re-configuration (if the system is already set to Fixed Resource Capacity mode) should only be performed when no conferences are running on the RMX.

- 1 Optional** (*otherwise skip to step 2*): If the RMX is not in *Fixed Capacity Mode*.

- a In the RMX menu, click **Setup > Video/Voice Port Configuration**.

The *Video/Voice Port Configuration* dialog box opens.

- b In the *Resource Capacity Mode* box, click **Fixed**.



Capacity Mode Radio Buttons

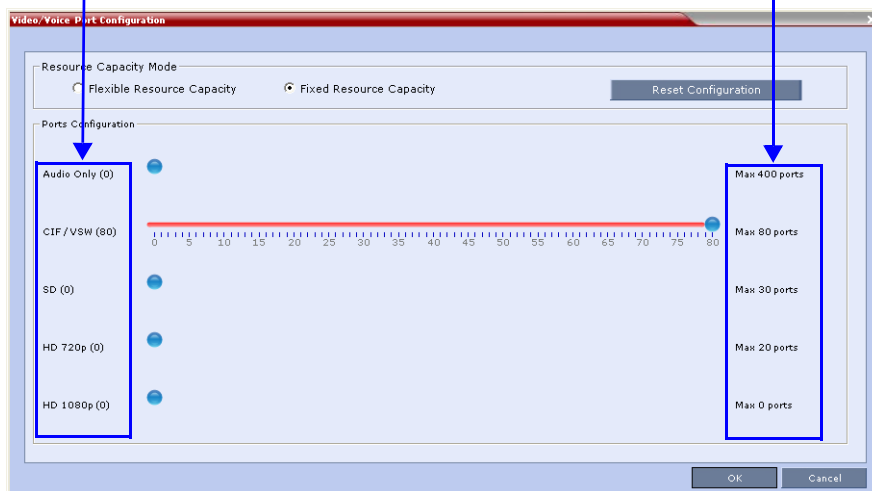
- c Click **OK**.
- d Restart the RMX.

- 2 In the RMX menu, click **Setup > Video/Voice Port Configuration**.

The *Video/Voice Port Configuration* dialog box opens.

Number of Resources allocated to each type

Maximum Number of Resources from License and Hardware



Fixed Resource Capacity mode displays five sliders, one for each resource type: *Audio Only*, *CIF*, *SD*, *HD 720p 30fps*, *HD 1080p / HD 720p 60fps* (*HD 1080p / HD 720p 60fps* resources are represented on the same slider) where each type requires different number of video resources (in CIF ports) for connecting endpoints.

- The first time the *Fixed Resource Capacity* is selected, all resources are allocated to HD720p30 by default.
- If the allocation mode was previously *Fixed* or if it was *Auto* but *Fixed* had been selected in the past, the previous resource allocations in the mode are displayed.

The maximum number of allocatable of resources of each type for an RMX containing two fully licensed MPM+ cards are as follows:

Resource Type	Maximum
Audio Only	800
CIF/VSW	160
SD	60
HD720p	40
HD1080p	20

The `MAX_CP_RESOLUTION` flag setting does not affect resource allocation.

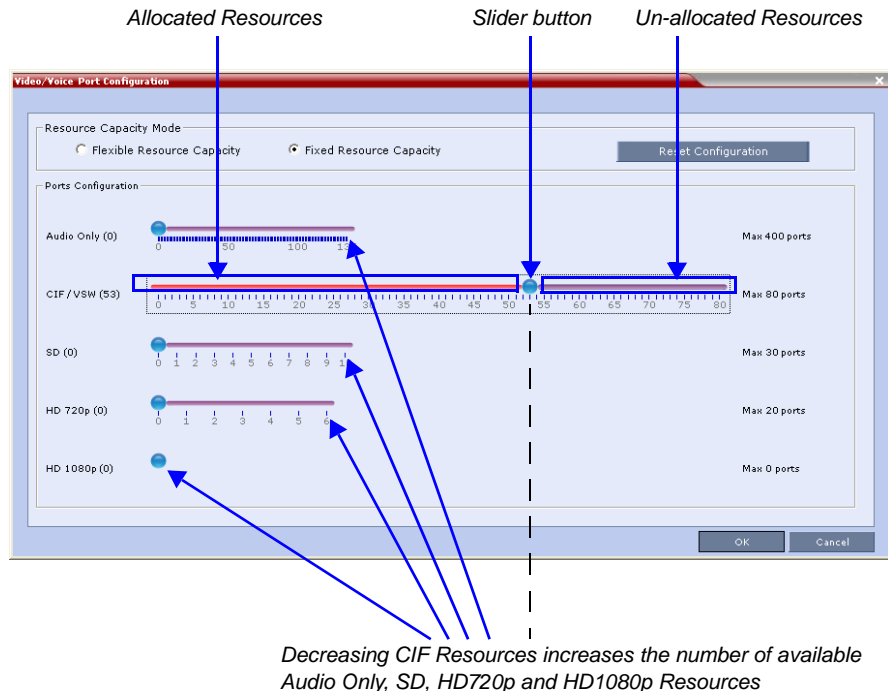
Example: If it is set to *SD30*, the *HD 1080p* slider is still displayed and *HD 1080* resources can be allocated. However, *HD 1080* participants will connect at *SD30* resolution.

Using the sliders, the administrator can manually allocate resources to the various types of video resolutions and *Audio Only* connections that can be used by connecting endpoints.

3 Move the blue slider buttons to allocate resources.

As all the resources are allocated when the dialog box opens, you must first free resources of one type by moving the blue slider button to the left, and then move blue slider button of the required resource type to the number of resources to be allocated.

On the slider bars, red areas to the left of the blue slider buttons indicate allocated resources and purple areas to the right of the blue slider buttons indicate unallocated resources in the system.



When the position of a slider is changed the system calculates the effect on the remaining system resources and adjusts the slider scales accordingly.

For example: Decreasing the allocated CIF ports from 80 to 53, free ports for allocation that can be used to allocate up to 135 voice ports or 10 SD ports or 6 HD 720p ports, or any combination of the resource types.

Allocating five *Audio Only* ports decreases the number of *CIF* ports while allocating one *SD* port decreases the number of *CIF* ports.

- 4 Click **OK** to activate the new *Resource Capacity*.



In *Fixed Capacity Mode* system restart is not required for the re-configuration of the allocation to take effect.

If after resources are recalculated there are purple areas to the right of the blue slider buttons indicating unallocated resources in the system, the system issues a warning stating that there are un-allocated resources in the system.

- 5 Optional:** Repeat this procedure from **Step 2** to further optimize the resource allocation.

Un-allocated resources cannot be used by any participants.

If after recalculating the resources the system determines that there are insufficient resources to support the configuration indicated by the sliders:

- A major *System Alert* is raised with *Insufficient resources* in its *Description* field.
- The *Fixed Resource Capacity* blue slider buttons are disabled.
- A warning message is displayed.
 - Click **OK** to close the warning message box.

a Optional:

- Click the **Reset Configuration** button to set all the blue slider buttons to zero.
- Reconfigure the resource allocation.
- Click **OK** to activate the new resource allocation.

- b Optional:** Click the **Cancel** button to accept the resource allocation.

The *System Alert* remains active.

Resource Report

The *Resource Report* displays the real time resource usage according to the selected *Resource Capacity Mode*:

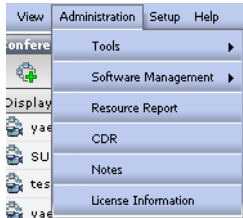
- *Flexible Resource Capacity Mode* available in both *MPM* and *MPM+ Modes*
- *Fixed Resource Capacity Mode* available only in *MPM+ Mode*

The *Resource Report* also includes a graphic representation of the resource usage.

When the RMX is working in *MPM+ Mode*, with *Fixed Resource Capacity Mode™* selected, additional system resources information is displayed.

Displaying the Resource Report

➡ In the main toolbar, click **Administration > Resource Report**.



The *Resource Report* dialog box appears, displaying the resource usage according to the Resource Capacity Mode. For each resource type, the Resource Report includes the following columns:

Table 14-9 Resource Report Fields Parameters

Column	Description
<i>Type</i>	The type of audio/video resources available.
<i>Total</i>	The <i>Total</i> column displays the total number of resources of that type as configured in the system (<i>Occupied</i> and <i>Free</i>). This number reflects the current audio/video port configuration. Any changes to the resource allocation will affect the resource usage displayed in the Resource Report.
<i>Occupied</i>	The number of RMX resources that are used by connected participants or reserved for defined participants.
<i>Free</i>	The number of RMX resources available for connecting endpoints.

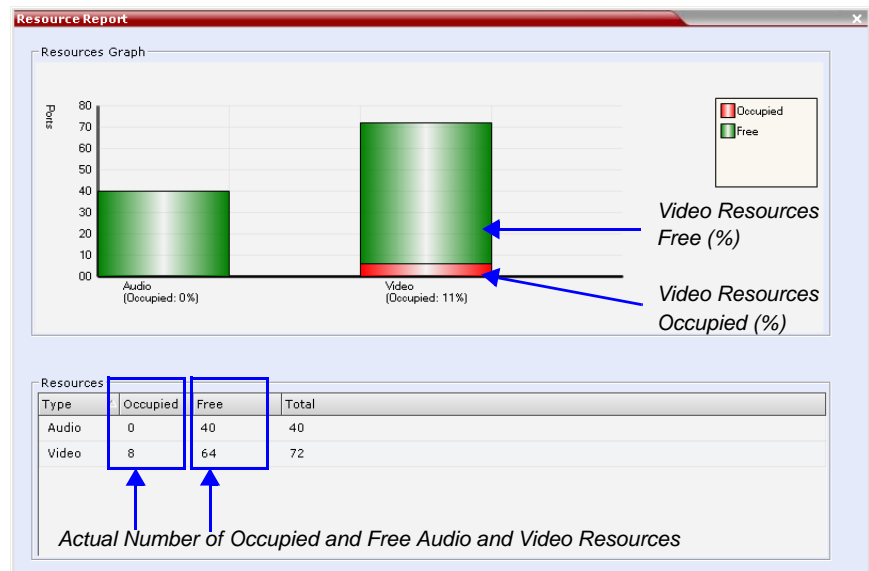
Resource Report Display in Flexible Resource Capacity Mode™

The *Resource Report* details the current availability and usage of the system resources displaying the number of free and occupied audio and video ports. A *Resources Graph* is displayed in addition to the *Resources* table.

Example: An RMX 2000 in *Flexible Resource Capacity Mode* has:

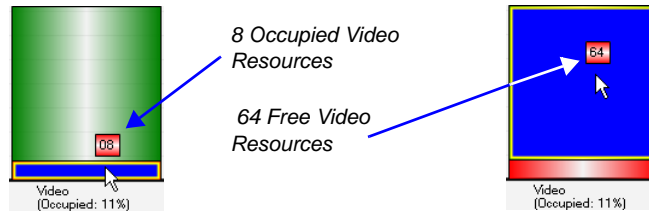
- 80 licensed *CIF* resources.
- 8 of its 80 *CIF* resources allocated as *Audio* = 40 *Audio* resources (8x5).
- All 40 *Audio* resources free (green).
- The remaining 72 *CIF* resources allocated as *Video* resources.
- 8 of the 72 *CIF* resources are occupied (red) while the remaining 64 are free.

The *Resource Report* is displayed as follows:



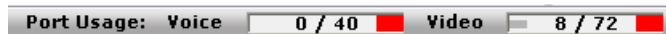
In *Flexible Resource Capacity Mode*, resource usage is displayed for *Audio* and *CIF* video resources only. They are displayed as percentages of the total resource type.

The actual number of occupied or free resources can also be displayed by moving the cursor over the columns of the bar graph. Moving the cursor over the *Video* bar displays the following:



Port Gauges

In *Flexible Resource Capacity* mode, the *Port Gauges* in the *Status Bar* show 0 of the 40 *Audio (Voice)* resources as occupied and 8 of the 72 *CIF (Video)* resources as occupied.



Resource Report in Fixed Resource Capacity Mode™

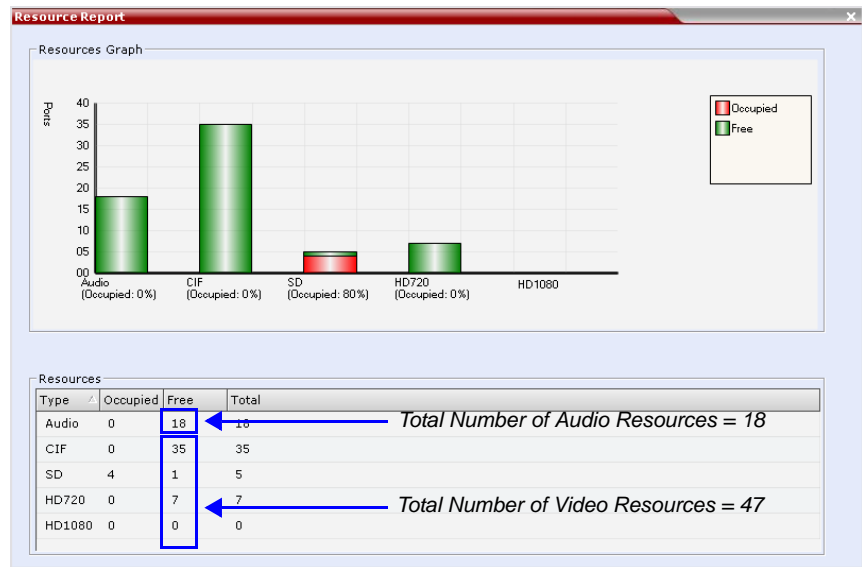
In *Fixed Resource Capacity Mode*, each resource type (*Audio*, *CIF*, *SD* and *HD*) is displayed as a bar of the graph, indicating the percentage of occupied and free resources for each resource type.

The data is also displayed as a *Resources* table indicating the actual number of resources occupied and free for each resource type along with a total number of each resource type.

Example: An *RMX 2000* in *Fixed Resource Capacity Mode* has:

- 80 licensed *CIF* resources.
- 18 *Audio* resources allocated, all free (green).
- 35 *CIF* resources allocated, all free.
- 5 *SD* resources allocated, 4 occupied (red), 1 free.
- 7 *HD 720* resources allocated, all free.
- 0 *HD 1080* resources allocated.

The *Resource Report* is displayed as follows:

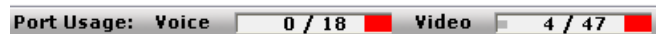


The actual number of occupied or free resources can also be displayed by moving the cursor over the columns of the bar graph (as explained above for *Flexible Resource Capacity*).

Port Gauges

Audio (Voice) resources are as displayed as in previous versions while all *Video* resource types are shown as a single group of *Video* resources.

The gauges show 0 of the 18 *Audio (Voice)* resources as occupied. The 4 occupied *SD* resources are shown as 4 occupied resources out of the total of 47 *Video* resources.



ISDN/PSTN

Table 14-10 lists the ISDN supported bit rates and their respective participant connection capacities per RTM ISDN card:

Table 14-10 ISDN – E1/T1 Connection Capacity vs. Bit rate

Bit Rates (Kbps) (Bonded)	Number of Participants per RTM ISDN Card		
	E1	T1	
128	40	40	If the conference bit rate is 128Kbps, participants connecting at bit rates lower than 128Kbps are disconnected.
192	40	40	
256	40	40	
320	40	40	If the conference bit rate is above 128Kbps but does not match any of the bonded bit rates, participants are connected at the highest bonded bit rate that is less than the conference bit rate. For example: If the conference bit rate is 1024Kbps, the participant is connected at 768Kbps.
384	34	34	
512	25	25	
768	17	17	
1152	11	11	
1472	9	9	
1536	8	8	
1920	7	6	

Port Usage

The RMX can be set to alert the administrator to potential port capacity shortages. A capacity usage threshold can be set as a percentage of the total number of licensed ports in the system.

When the threshold is exceeded, a *System Alert* is generated.

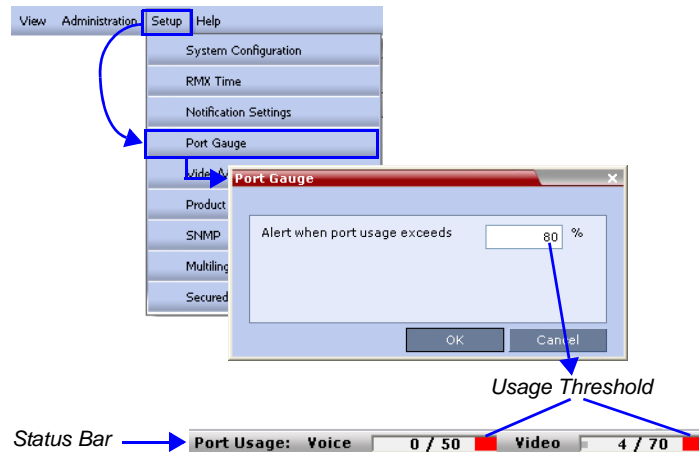
The default port capacity usage threshold is 80%.

The administrator can monitor the MCU's port capacity usage via the *Port Gauges* in the *Status Bar* of the *RMX Web Client*.

Setting the Port Usage Threshold

To Set the Port Usage Threshold:

- 1 In the *Setup* menu, click **Port Gauge** to open the *Port Gauge* dialog box.



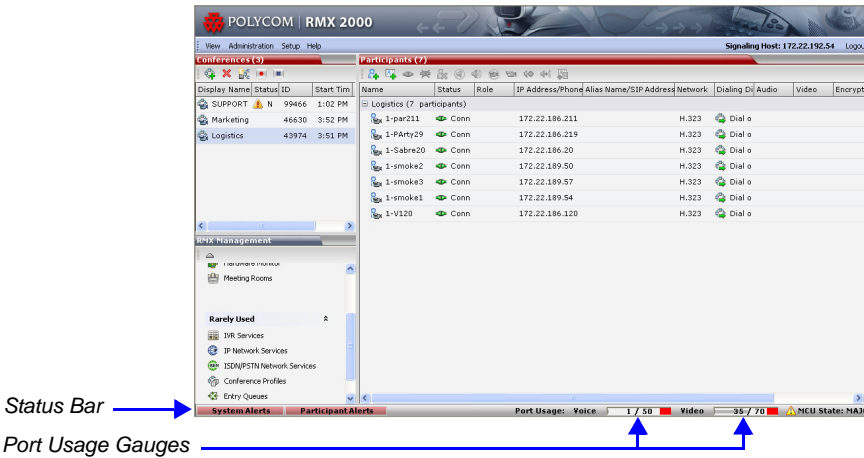
- 2 Enter the value for the percentage capacity usage threshold.

The high Port Usage threshold represents a percentage of the total number of video or voice ports available. It is set to indicate when resource usage is approaching its maximum, resulting in no free resources to run additional conferences. When port usage reaches or exceeds the threshold, the red area of the gauge flashes and a *System Alert* is generated. The default port usage threshold is 80%.

- 3 Click **OK**.

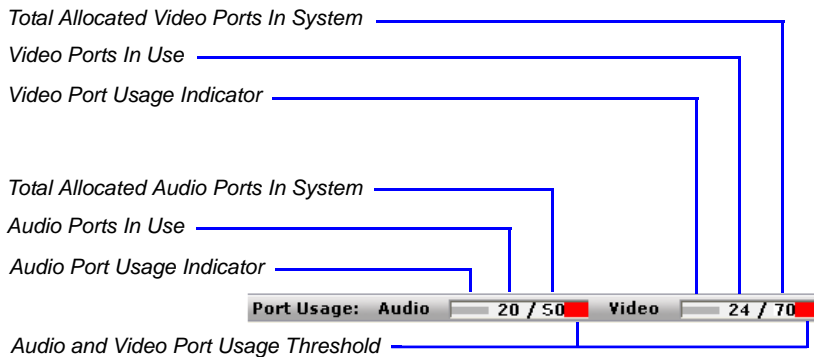
Port Usage Gauges

The *Port Usage Gauges* are displayed in the *Status Bar* at the bottom of the RMX Web Client screen.



The *Port Usage* gauges indicate:

- The total number of *Video* or *Voice* ports in the system according to the *Video/Voice Port Configuration*. The *Audio* gauge is displayed only if *Audio* ports were allocated by the administrator, otherwise only the *Video* port gauge is displayed.
- The number of *Video* and *Voice* ports in use.
- The *High Port Usage* threshold.



Port gauges in Flexible/Fixed Capacity Modes

Audio Ports Gauge

- In both *Flexible* and *Fixed Capacity Modes*:
The fraction displayed indicates the exact number of voice ports in use out of the total number of voice ports.

Video Ports Gauge

- In *Flexible Capacity Mode*:
All video port usage is converted to the equivalent CIF port usage. The fraction displayed indicates the exact number of CIF video ports in use out of the total number of CIF video ports in the system.
- In *Fixed Capacity Mode*:
All video ports are treated as a single group of *Video* resources regardless of their differing consumption of CIF ports. The fraction displayed indicates the number of video resources in use out of the total number video resources in the system.

System Information

System Information includes *License Information*, and general system information, such as system memory size and *Media Card Configuration Mode*.

To view the **System Information** properties box:

- ➔ On the RMX menu, click **Administration > System Information**.
The *System Information* properties box is displayed.

The screenshot shows a window titled "System Information" with a red header bar. The window contains a light blue background with a white border. Inside, there is a section titled "License Information" with a minus sign icon. Below this section, there are several fields with labels and values:

Total Number of Video (CIF) Participants:	160
RMX Version:	4.00.0.71
ISDN/PSTN:	True
Encryption:	True
Telepresence Mode:	True
Serial Number:	VR2090126011
Polycom Partners:	Avaya Ibm
Memory Size [MB]:	1024 MB
Card Configuration Mode:	MPM+

At the bottom right of the window, there is an "OK" button.

The *System Information* properties box displays the following information:

Table 14-11 *System Information*

Field	Description
<i>Total Number of Video (CIF) Participants</i>	Displays the number of CIF video participants licensed for the system.
<i>RMX Version</i>	Displays the <i>System Software Version</i> of the RMX.
<i>ISDN/PSTN</i>	The field value indicates whether RTM ISDN/ PSTN hardware has been detected in the system. Range: True / False
<i>Encryption</i>	The field value indicates whether <i>Encryption</i> is included in the MCU license. Encryption is not available in all countries. Range: True / False
<i>Telepresence Mode</i>	The field value indicates whether the system is licensed to work with <i>RPX</i> and <i>TPX Telepresence</i> room systems. Range: True / False
<i>Serial Number</i>	Displays the <i>Serial Number</i> of the RMX.
<i>Polycom Partners</i>	The field value indicates that the <i>System Software</i> contains features for the support of specific <i>Polycom Partner</i> environments.
<i>Memory Size [MB]</i>	This field indicates the RMX system memory size in MBytes. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1000 MB – The RMX can support a maximum of 800 simultaneous participant calls (if configured with two MPM+ cards). 500 MB – The RMX can support a maximum of 400 simultaneous voice calls and 120 CIF video calls. This limitation applies to RMX's configured with either MPM or MPM+ cards.

Table 14-11 System Information (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Card Configuration Mode</i>	<p>Indicates the MCU configuration as derived from the installed media cards:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• MPM: Only MPM cards are supported. MPM+ cards in the system are disabled. It is the mode used in previous RMX versions.• MPM+: Only MPM+ cards are supported. MPM cards in the system are disabled. <p>Note: When started with Version 4.0 installed, the RMX enters MPM+ mode by default, even if no media cards are installed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The RMX only switches between MPM and MPM+ <i>Card Configuration Modes</i> if MPM/MPM+ cards are removed or swapped while it is powered on.• The <i>Card Configuration Mode</i> switch occurs during the next restart.• Installing or swapping MPM/MPM+ cards while the system is off will not cause a mode switch when the system is restarted - it will restart in the <i>Card Configuration Mode</i> that was active previous to powering down.



- The RMX only switches between *MPM* and *MPM+ Card Configuration Modes* if *MPM/MPM+* cards are removed or swapped while it is running.
- The *Card Configuration Mode* switch occurs during the **next** restart.
- Installing or swapping *MPM/MPM+* cards while the system is off will not cause a mode switch when the system is restarted – it will restart in the *Card Configuration Mode* that was active previous to powering down.

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol)

SNMP standard protocol is now supported with the RMX. It enables managing and monitoring of the MCU status by **external** managing systems, such as HP OpenView or through web applications.

Detailed Description

MIBs are a collection of definitions, which define the properties of the managed object within the device to be managed. Every managed device keeps a database of values for each of the definitions written in the MIB.

The SNMP systems poll the MCU according to the MIB definitions. In addition, the MCU is able to send Traps to different managers. Traps are messages that are sent by the MCU to the SNMP Manager when an event such as MCU Reset occurs.

MIB (Management Information Base) Files

The H.341 standard defines the MIBs that H.320 and H.323 MCUs must comply with. In addition, other MIBs should also be supported, such as MIB-II and the ENTITY MIB, which are common to all network entities.

The MIBs are contained in files in the *SNMP MIBS* sub-directory of the RMX root directory. The files should be loaded to the SNMP external system and compiled within that application. Only then can the SNMP external application perform the required monitoring tasks.



The MULTI-MEDIA_MIB_TC must be compiled before compiling the other MIBs.

Private MIBS

- *RMX-MIB (RMX-MIB.MIB)*
 - Contains the statuses of the RMX: Startup, Normal and Major.
 - Contains all the Alarms of the RMX that are sent to the SNMP Manager.

Support for MIB-II Sections

The following table details the MIB-II sections that are supported:

Table 14-12 Supported MIB-II Sections

Section	Object Identifier
<i>system</i>	mib-2 1
<i>interfaces</i>	mib-2 2
<i>ip</i>	mib-2 4

The Alarm-MIB

MIB used to send alarms. When a trap is sent, the Alarm-MIB is used to send it.

H.341-MIB (H.341 – H.323)

- Gives the address of the gatekeeper.
- Supports H.341-MIB of SNMP events of H.323.

Standard MIBs

This section describes the MIBs that are included with the RMX. These MIBs define the various parameters that can be monitored, and their acceptable values.

MIB Name	Description
MULTI-MEDIA-MIB-TC (MULTIMTC.MIB)	Defines a set of textual conventions used within the set of MultiMedia MIB modules.
H.320ENTITY-MIB (H320-ENT.MIB)	This is a collection of common objects, which can be used in an H.320 terminal, an H.320 MCU and an H.320/H.323 gateway. These objects are arranged in three groups: Capability, Call Status, and H.221 Statistics.

MIB Name	Description
H.320MCU-MIB (H320-MCU.MIB)	Used to identify managed objects for an H.320 MCU. It consists of four groups: System, Conference, Terminal, and Controls. The <i>Conference</i> group consists of the active conferences. The <i>Terminal</i> group is used to describe terminals in active MCU conferences. The <i>Controls</i> group enables remote management of the MCU.
H323MC-MIB (H323-MC.MIB)	Used to identify objects defined for an H.323 Multipoint Controller. It consists of six groups: System, Configuration, Conference, Statistics, Controls and Notifications. The <i>Conference</i> group is used to identify the active conferences in the MCU. The <i>Notifications</i> group allows an MCU, if enabled, to inform a remote management client of its operational status.
MP-MIB (H323- MP.MIB)	Used to identify objects defined for an H.323 Multipoint Processor, and consists of two groups: Configuration and Conference. The <i>Configuration</i> group is used to identify audio/video mix configuration counts. The <i>Conference</i> group describes the audio and video multi-processing operation.
MIB-II/RFC1213- MIB (RFC1213.MIB)	Holds basic network information and statistics about the following protocols: TCP, UDP, IP, ICMP and SNMP. In addition, it holds a table of interfaces that the Agent has. MIB-II also contains basic identification information for the system, such as, Product Name, Description, Location and Contact Person.
ENTITY-MIB (ENTITY.MIB)	Describes the unit physically: Number of slots, type of board in each slot, and number of ports in each slot.

Traps

Three types of traps are sent as follows:

- 1 ColdStart trap. This is a standard trap which is sent when the MCU is reset.

```
coldStart notification received from: 172.22.189.154 at 5/20/
2007 7:03:12 PM
Time stamp: 0 days 00h:00m:00s.00th
Agent address: 172.22.189.154 Port: 32774 Transport: IP/UDP
Protocol: SNMPv2c Notification
Manager address: 172.22.172.34 Port: 162 Transport: IP/UDP
Community: public
Enterprise: enterprises.8072.3.2.10
Bindings (3)
  Binding #1: sysUpTime.0 *** (timeticks) 0 days
    00h:00m:00s.00th
  Binding #2: snmpTrapOID.0 *** (oid) coldStart
  Binding #3: snmpTrapEnterprise.0 *** (oid)
    enterprises.8072.3.2.10
```

Figure 1 An Example of a ColdStart Trap

- 2 Authentication failure trap. This is a standard trap which is sent when an unauthorized community tries to enter.

```
authentication Failure notification received from:
172.22.189.154 at 5/20/2007 7:33:38 PM
Time stamp: 0 days 00h:30m:27s.64th
Agent address: 172.22.189.154 Port: 32777 Transport: IP/UDP
Protocol: SNMPv2c Notification
Manager address: 172.22.172.34 Port: 162 Transport: IP/UDP
Community: public
Enterprise: enterprises.8072.3.2.10
Bindings (3)
  Binding #1: sysUpTime.0 *** (timeticks) 0 days
    00h:30m:27s.64th
  Binding #2: snmpTrapOID.0 *** (oid) authenticationFailure
  Binding #3: snmpTrapEnterprise.0 *** (oid)
    enterprises.8072.3.2.10
```

Figure 2 An Example of an Authentication Failure Trap

- 3** Alarm Fault trap. The third trap type is a family of traps defined in the POLYCOM-RMX-MIB file, these traps are associated with the RMX active alarm and clearance (proprietary SNMP trap).

```
rmxFailedConfigUserListInLinuxAlarmFault notification received
from: 172.22.189.154 at 5/20/2007 7:04:22 PM
Time stamp: 0 days 00h:01m:11s.71th
Agent address: 172.22.189.154 Port: 32777 Transport: IP/UDP
Protocol: SNMPv2c Notification
Manager address: 172.22.172.34 Port: 162 Transport: IP/UDP
Community: public
Bindings (6)
  Binding #1: sysUpTime.0 *** (timeticks) 0 days
    00h:01m:11s.71th
  Binding #2: snmpTrapOID.0 *** (oid)
    rmxFailedConfigUserListInLinuxAlarmFault
  Binding #3: rmxAlarmDescription *** (octets) Insufficient
    resources
  Binding #4: rmxActiveAlarmDateAndTime *** (octets) 2007-6-
    19,16:7:15.0,0:0
  Binding #5: rmxActiveAlarmIndex *** (gauge32) 2
  Binding #6: rmxActiveAlarmListName *** (octets) Active
    Alarm Table
* Binding #7: rmxActiveAlarmRmxStatus *** (rmxStatus) major
```

Figure 3 An Example of an Alarm Fault Trap

Each trap is sent with a time stamp, the agent address and the manager address.

Status Trap Content

The MCU sends status traps for the following status:

- **MAJOR** - A trap is sent when the card/MCU status is MAJOR.

All trap content is considered "MAJOR".

Defining the SNMP Parameters in the RMX

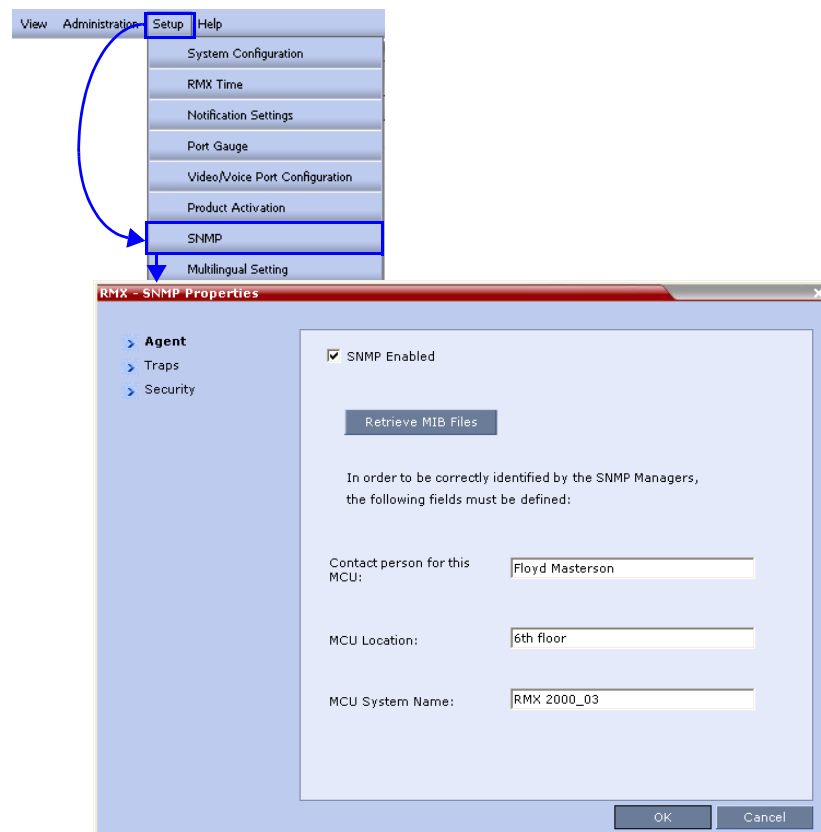
The SNMP option is enabled via the RMX Web Client application.

The addresses of the Managers monitoring the MCU and other security information are defined in the RMX Web Client application and are saved on the MCU's hard disk. Only users defined as Administrator can define or modify the SNMP security parameters in the RMX Web Client application.

To enable SNMP option:

- 1 In the RMX Web Client menu bar, click **Setup>SNMP**.

The *RMX-SNMP Properties - Agent* dialog box is displayed.



This dialog box is used to define the basic information for this MCU that will be used by the SNMP system to identify it.

- 2 In the *Agent* dialog box, click the **SNMP Enabled** check box.
- 3 Click the **Get MIB Files** button to obtain a file that lists the MIBs that define the properties of the object being managed.

The *Get MIB Files* dialog box appears.

- 4 Click the **Browse** button and navigate to the desired directory to save the MIB files.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 In the *Agent* dialog box, define the parameters that allow the SNMP Management System and its user to easily identify the MCU.

Table 14-13 *SNMP Properties Options*

Field	Description
<i>Contact person for this MCU</i>	Type the name of the person to be contacted in the event of problems with the MCU.
<i>MCU Location</i>	Type the location of the MCU (address or any description).
<i>MCU System Name</i>	Type the MCU's system name.

7 Click the **Traps** tab.

The *RMX-SNMP Properties – Traps* dialog box opens.

RMX - SNMP Properties

> Agent
> **Traps**
> Security

Traps can be sent to a group of Managers, identified by their IP.
The Trap Community Name is used for all traps.

Trap Community Name

SNMP Trap Version: Version 1

Trap Destinations:

IP	Community Name
1.2.3.4	comm_1
2.1.2.1	comm_1

Add Edit Remove

OK Cancel

Traps are messages sent by the MCU to the SNMP Managers when events such as MCU Startup or Shutdown occur. Traps may be sent to several SNMP Managers whose IP addresses are specified in the *Trap Destinations* box.

8 Define the following parameters:

Table 14-14 *SNMP Properties – Traps Options*

Field	Description
<i>SNMP trap version</i>	Specifies the version, either <i>Version1</i> or <i>Version2c</i> , of the traps being sent to the IP Host. Polycom software supports the standard SNMP version 1 and 2 traps, which are taken from RFC 1215, convention for defining traps for use with SNMP: Note: The <i>SNMP Trap Version</i> parameters must be defined identically in the external SNMP application.

Table 14-14 SNMP Properties – Traps Options (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Trap Destination</i>	This box lists the currently defined IP addresses of the Manager terminals to which the message (trap) is sent.

- 9 Click the **Add** button to add a new Manager terminal.

The *New Trap Destination* dialog box opens.



- 10 Type the **IP Address** and the **Community name** of the manager terminal used to monitor the MCU activity, and then click **OK**.

The *Community name* is a string of characters that will be added to the message that is sent to the external Manager terminals. This string is used to identify the message source by the external Manager terminal.

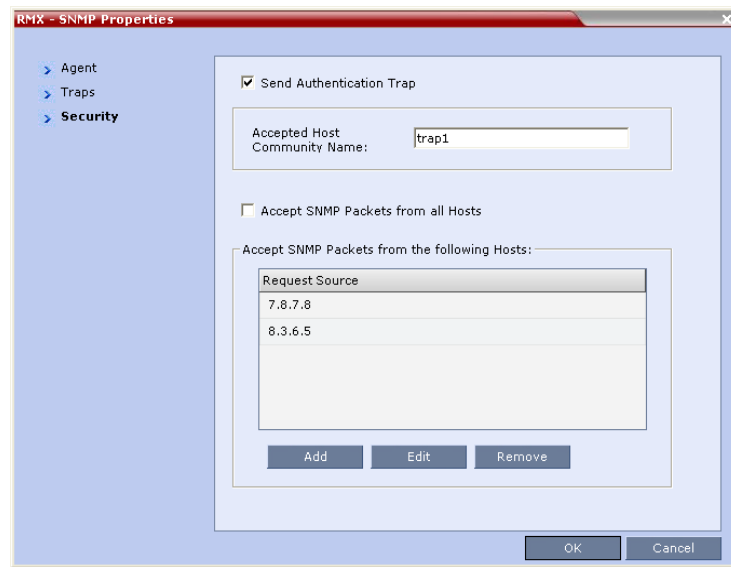
The new *IP Address* and *Community name* is added to the *Trap Destinations* box.

- a To delete the IP Address of a Manager terminal, select the address that you wish to delete, and then click the **Remove** button.

The IP address in the *Trap Destinations* box is removed.

- 11 Click the **Security** tab.

The *RMX-SNMP Properties – Security* dialog box opens.



This dialog box is used to define whether the query sent to the MCU is sent from an authorized source. When the “*Accept SNMP packets from all Hosts*” is disabled, a valid query must contain the appropriate community string and must be sent from one of the Manager terminals whose IP address is listed in this dialog box.

12 Define the following parameters:

Table 14-15 MCU-SNMP Properties – Security Options

Field	Description
<i>Send Authentication Trap</i>	Select this check box to send a message to the SNMP Manager when an unauthorized query is sent to the MCU. When cleared, no indication will be sent to the SNMP Manager.
<i>Accept Host Community Name</i>	Type the string added to queries that are sent from the SNMP Manager to indicate that they were sent from an authorized source.

Table 14-15 MCU-SNMP Properties – Security Options (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Accept Host Community Name (cont.)</i>	Note: Queries sent with different strings will be regarded as a violation of security, and, if the <i>Send Authentication Trap</i> check box is selected, an appropriate message will be sent to the SNMP Manager.
<i>Accept SNMP Packets from all Host</i>	Select this option if a query sent from any Manager terminal is valid. When selected, the <i>Accept SNMP Packets from These Hosts</i> option is disabled.
<i>Accept SNMP Packets from the following Hosts</i>	Lists specific Manager terminals whose queries will be considered as valid. This option is enabled when the <i>Accept SNMP Packets from any Host</i> option is cleared.

- 13** To specifically define one or more valid terminals, ensure that the *Accept SNMP Packets from any Host* option is cleared and then click the **Add** button.

The *Accepted Host IP Address* dialog box opens.



- 14** Enter the *IP Address* of the Manager terminal from which valid queries may be sent to the MCU, and then click **OK**.
Click the **Add** button to define additional *IP Addresses*.
The *IP Address* or *Addresses* are displayed in the *Accept SNMP Packets from These Hosts* box.



Queries sent from terminals not listed in the *Accept SNMP Packets from These Hosts* box are regarded as a violation of the MCU security, and if the *Send Authentication Trap* check box is selected, an appropriate message will be sent to all the terminals listed in the *SNMP Properties – Traps* dialog box.

- 15** In the *RMX - SNMP Properties - Security* dialog box, click **OK**.

Multilingual Setting

Each supported language is represented by a country flag in the *Welcome Screen* and can be selected as the language for the *RMX Web Client*.

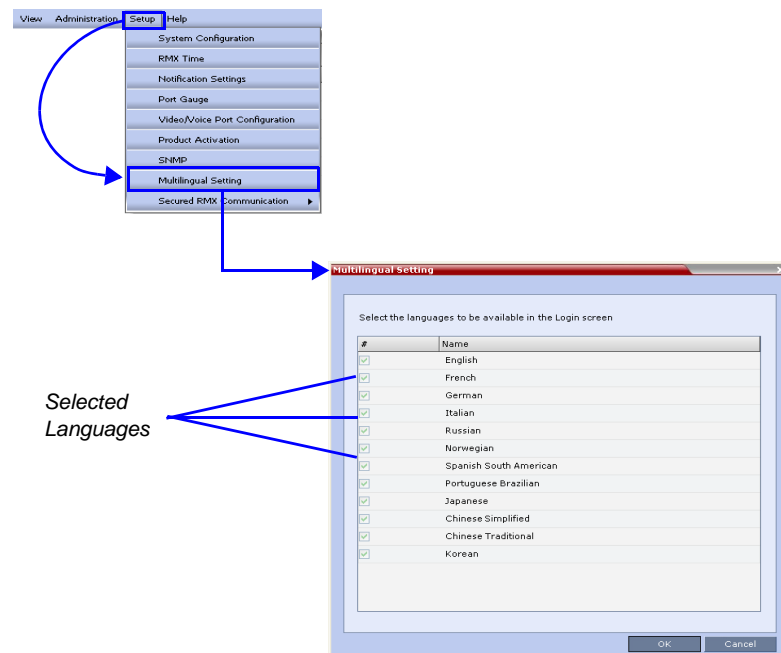
Customizing the Multilingual Setting

The number of languages available for selection in the *Login screen* of the *RMX Web Client* can be modified by selecting the *Setup > Multilingual Setting* option from the RMX menu.

To customize the Multilingual Setting:

- 1 On the RMX menu, click **Setup > Multilingual Setting**.

The *Multilingual Setting* dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Click the check boxes of the languages to be available for selection.
- 3 Click **OK**.
- 4 **Log out** from the RMX Web Client and **Log in** for the customization to take effect.

Software Management

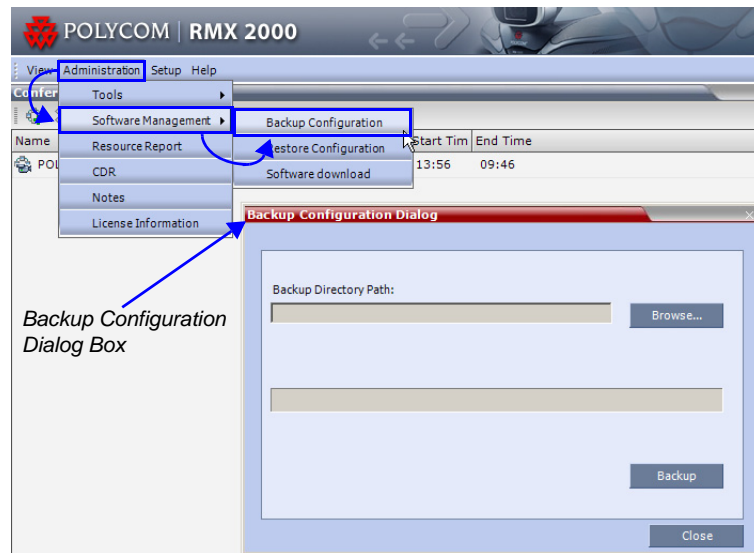
The *Software Management* menu is used to backup and restore the RMX's configuration files and to download MCU software.

Using Software Management

To backup configuration files:

- 1 On the RMX menu, click **Administration > Software Management > Backup Configuration**.

The *Backup Configuration* dialog box opens.



- 2 Browse to the *Backup Directory Path* and then click **Backup**.

To restore configuration files:

- 1** On the *RMX* menu, click **Administration > Software Management > Restore Configuration**.
- 2** Browse to the *Restore Directory Path* where the backed up configuration files are stored and then click **Restore**.

To download MCU software files:

- 1** On the *RMX* menu, click **Administration > Software Management > Software Download**.
- 2** Browse to the *Install Path* and then click **Install**.

Notification Settings

The RMX can display notifications when:

- A new RMX user connects to the MCU.
- A new conference is started.
- Not all defined participants are connected to the conference or when a single participant is connected
- A change in the MCU status occurs and an alarm is added to the alarm's list.

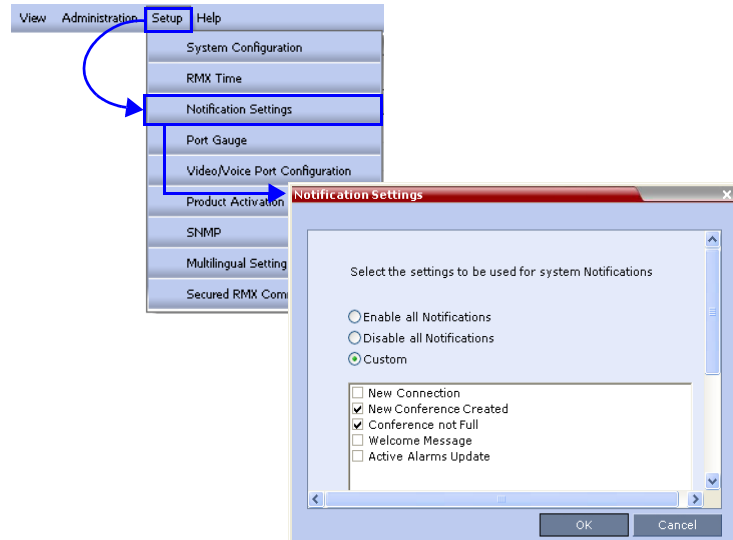
A welcome message is displayed to the RMX user upon connection.



To configure the notifications:

- 1 On the RMX menu, select **Setup > Notification Settings**.

The *Notification Settings* dialog box appears.



The following notification options are displayed.

Table 14-16 Notification Settings Parameters

Field	Description
<i>New Connection</i>	Notification of a new user/administrator connecting to the RMX
<i>New Conference Created</i>	New conference has been created.
<i>Conference Not Full</i>	The conference is not full and additional participants are defined for the conference.
<i>Welcome Message</i>	A welcome message after user/administrator logon.
<i>Active Alarms Update</i>	Updates you of any new alarm that occurred.

- 2** **Enable/Disable All Notifications** or **Custom** to select specific notifications to display.
- 3** Click **OK**.

Logger Diagnostic Files

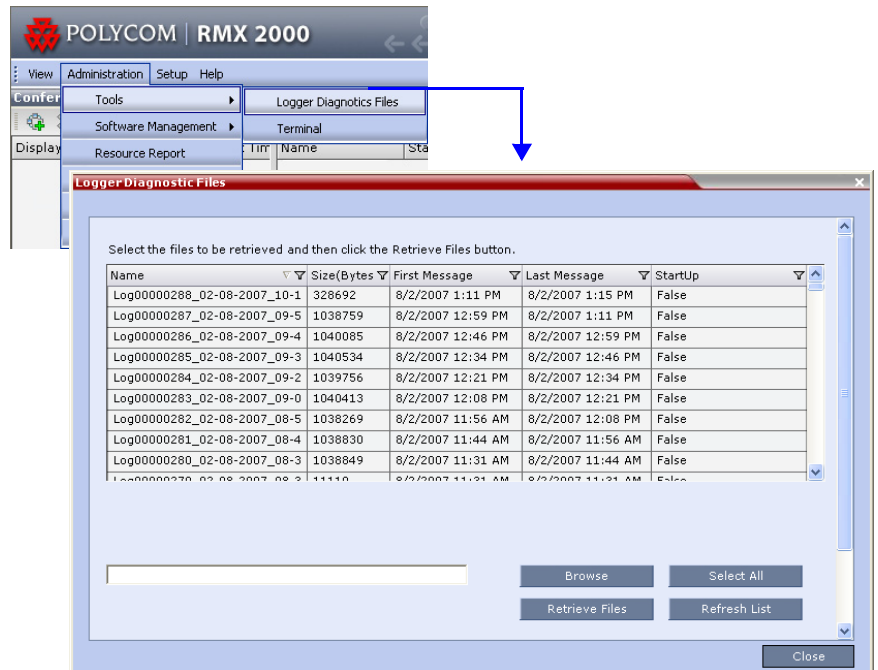
The Logger utility is a troubleshooting tool that continually records MCU system messages and saves them to files in the MCU hard drive. For each time interval defined in the system, a different data file is created. The files may be retrieved from the hard drive for off-line analysis and debugging purposes.

The Logger utility is activated at the MCU startup. The Logger is disabled when the MCU is reset manually or when there is a problem with the Logger utility, e.g. errors on the hard drive where files are saved. In such cases, data cannot be retrieved.

When the MCU is reset via the RMX, the files are saved on the MCU hard drive.

To access the Logger Diagnostic Files:

- On the RMX menu, click **Administration > Tools > Logger Diagnostic Files**.



The following tasks can be performed:

Table 14-17 Diagnostic File Button Options

Button	Description
<i>Refresh List</i>	Refreshes the list and adds newly generated logger files.
<i>Select All</i>	Selects all the logger files listed.
<i>Browse</i>	Selects the destination folder for download.
<i>Retrieve Files</i>	Saves files to the destination folder.

When retrieved, the log file name structure is as follows:

- Sequence number (starting with 1)
- Date and Time of first message
- Date and Time of last message
- File size
- Special information about the data, such as Startup

File name structure:

*Log_SNxxxxxxxxx_FMDddmmyyy_FMTThhmm_LMDddmmyyyy_LMTThhmm_SZxxxxx
xxxxx_SUY.log*

File name format:

- SN = Sequence Number
- FM = First Message, date and time
- LM = Last Message, date and time
- SZ = Size
- SU = Startup (Y/N) during the log file duration

Example:

*Log_SN0000000002_FMD06032007_FMT083933_LMD06032007_LMT084356_SZ18
4951_SUY.log.*

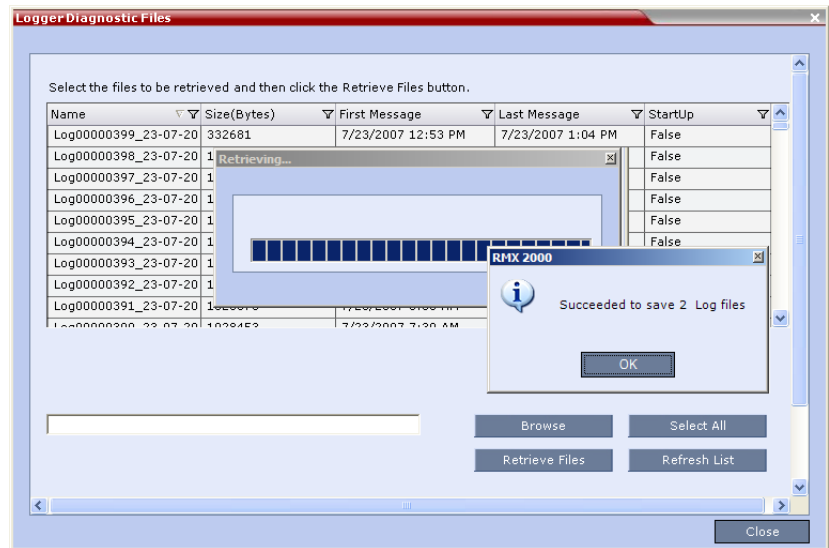
Retrieving the Logger Files:

- 1 Select the log files to retrieve. Multiple selections of files are enabled using standard Windows conventions.
- 2 In the *Logger Diagnostic Files* dialog box, click the **Browse** button.

- 3 In the *Browse for Folder* window, select the directory location to save the Log files and click **OK**.

You will return to the *Logger Diagnostic Files* dialog box.

- 4 Click the **Retrieve Files** button.



The log files (in *.txt format) are saved to the defined directory and a confirmation caption box appears indicating a successful retrieval of the log files.

Viewing the Logger File contents:

To analyze the log files generated by the system, open the retrieved *.txt files in any text editor application, i.e. Notepad, Textpad or MS Word.

- 1 Using Windows Explorer, browse to the directory containing the retrieved log files.
- 2 Use any text editor application to open the log file(s).

Auditor

A new administrative tool was added to the RMX. The *Event Auditor* enables administrators to analyze configuration changes and unusual or malicious activities in the RMX system.

A new user type, *Auditor*, has also been created. An *Auditor* is a user that can view *Auditor Files* and audit the system.

Auditor operates in real time, recording all administration activities and login attempts from the following RMX modules:

- Control Unit
- Shelf Manager

For a full list of monitored activities, see Table 14-19 on page [14-75](#) and Table 14-20 on page [14-76](#).

The *Auditor* must always be active in the system. A *System Alert* is displayed if it becomes inactive for any reason.

The *Auditor* tool is composed of the *Auditor Files* and the *Auditor File Viewer* that enables you to view the *Auditor Files*.

Auditor Files

Auditor Event History File Storage

All audit events are saved to a buffer file on hard disk in real time and then written to a file on hard disk in XML in an uncompressed format.

A new current auditor event file is created when:

- the system is started
- the size of the current auditor event file exceeds 2 MB
- the current auditor event file's age exceeds 24 hours

Up to 1000 auditor event files are stored per RMX. These files are retained for at least one year and require 1.05 GB of disk space. The files are automatically deleted by the system (oldest first) when the system reaches the auditor event file limit of 1000.

A *System Alert* is displayed with *Can't store data* displayed in its *Description* field if:

- the system cannot store 1000 files
- if the RMX does not have available disk space to retain files for one year

Audit Event Files are retained by the RMX for at least 1 year. Any attempt to delete an audit event file that is less than one year old raises a *System Alert* with *File was removed* listed in the *Description* field.

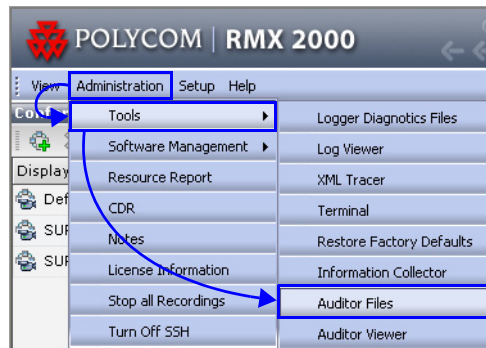
Using the *Restore Factory Defaults* of the *System Restore* procedure erases *Audit Files*.

Retrieving Auditor Files

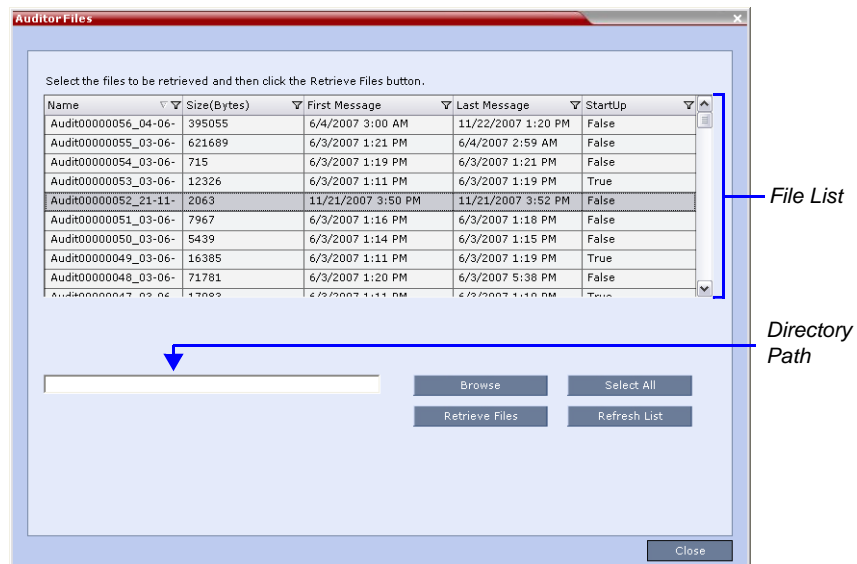
You can open the *Auditor* file directly from the *Auditor Files* list or you can retrieve the files and save them to a local workstation.

To access Auditor Files:

- 1 On the RMX menu, click **Administration > Tools > Auditor Files**.



The *Auditor Files* dialog box is displayed.



The *Auditor Files* dialogue box displays a file list containing the following file information:

- *Name*
- *Size (Bytes)*
- *First Message* – date and time of the first audit event in the file
- *Last Message* – date and time of the last audit event in the file
- *StartUp*:
 - *True* – file was created when the system was started
 - *False* – file was created when previous audit event file reached a size of 2 MB or was more than 24 hours old

The order of the *Auditor Files* dialog box field header columns can be changed and the fields can be filtered to enable searching.

For more information, see "*Auditor File Viewer*" on page **14-71**.

To retrieve files for storage on a workstation:

- 1 Click **Browse** and select the folder on the workstation to receive the files and then click **OK**.

The folder name is displayed in the directory path field.

- 2 Select the file(s) to be retrieved by clicking their names in the file list or click **Select All** to retrieve all the files. (Windows multiple selection techniques can be used.)
- 3 Click **Retrieve Files**.

The selected files are copied to the selected directory on the workstation.

To open the file in the Auditor File Viewer:

- ➡ Double-click the file.

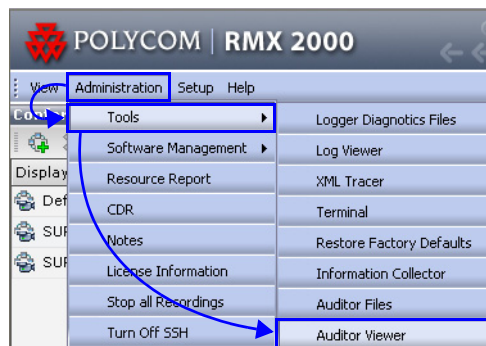
Auditor File Viewer

The *Auditor File Viewer* enables *Auditors* and *Administrators* to view the content of and perform detailed analysis on auditor event data in a selected *Auditor Event File*.

You can view an *Auditor Event File* directly from the *Auditor Files* list or by opening the file from the *Auditor File Viewer*.

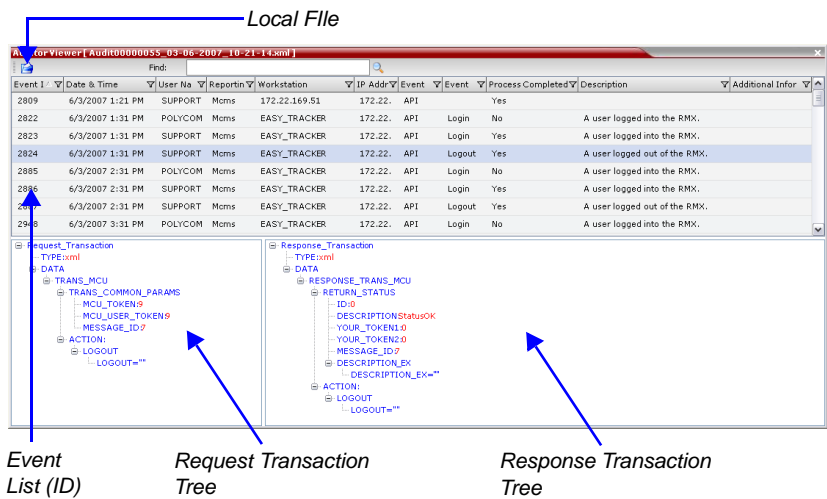
To open the Auditor Viewer from the Administration Menu:

- 1 On the RMX menu, click **Administration > Tools > Auditor File Viewer**.



The *Auditor File Viewer* is displayed.

If you previously double clicked an *Auditor Event File* in the *Auditor Files* list, that file is automatically opened.



The following fields are displayed for each event:

Table 14-18 Auditor Event Columns

Field	Description
<i>Event ID</i>	The sequence number of the event generated by the RMX.
<i>Date & Time</i>	The date and time of the event taken from the RMX's <i>Local Time</i> setting.
<i>User Name</i>	The <i>Username</i> (Login Name) of the user that triggered the event.

Table 14-18 Auditor Event Columns (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Reporting Module</i>	The RMX system internal module that reported the event: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• MCMS• MPL• Central Signaling• MPL Simulation• RMX Web Client• CM Switch• Shelf Management• ART• Video• Card Manager• RTM• MUX
<i>Workstation</i>	The name (alias) of the workstation used to send the request that triggered the event.
<i>IP Address (Workstation)</i>	The IP address of the workstation used to send the request that triggered the event.
<i>Event Type</i>	Auditor events can be triggered by: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• API• HTTP• RMX Internal Event

Table 14-18 Auditor Event Columns (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Event</i>	<p>The process, action, request or transaction that was performed or rejected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • POST:SET transactions (API) • Configuration changes via XML (API) • Login/Logout (API) • GET (HTTP) • PUT (HTTP) • MKDIR (HTTP) • RMDIR (HTTP) • Startup (RMX Internal Event) • Shutdown (RMX Internal Event) • Reset (RMX Internal Event) • Enter Diagnostic Mode (RMX Internal Event) • IP address changes via USB (RMX Internal Event)
<i>Process Completed</i>	<p>Status of the process, action, request or transaction returned by the system:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yes – performed by the system. • No – rejected by the system.
<i>Description</i>	A text string describing the process, action, request or transaction.
<i>Additional Information</i>	An optional text string describing the process, action, request or transaction in additional detail.


The order of the *Auditor File Viewer* field header columns can be changed and the fields can be sorted and filtered to facilitate different analysis methods.

- 2 In the event list, click the events or use the keyboard's Up-arrow and Down-arrow keys to display the *Request Transaction* and *Response Transaction* XML trees for each audit event.

The transaction XML trees can be expanded and collapsed by clicking the expand

(⊕) and collapse (⊖) buttons.

To open an auditor event file stored on the workstation:

- 1** Click the **Local File** button () to open the *Open* dialogue box.
- 2** Navigate to the folder on the workstation that contains the audit event file.
- 3** Select the audit event file to be opened.
- 4** Click **Open**.

The selected file is opened in the *Auditor Viewer*.

Audit Events

Alerts and Faults

Table 1 lists *Alerts* and *Faults* that are recorded by the *Auditor*.

Table 14-19 Alerts and Faults

Event
<i>A new activation key was loaded.</i>
<i>A new version was installed.</i>
<i>A private version is loaded.</i>
<i>Central Signaling indicating Recovery status.</i>
<i>Failed to open Apache server configuration file.</i>
<i>Failed to save Apache server configuration file.</i>
<i>Fallback version is being used.</i>
<i>File system scan failure.</i>
<i>File system space shortage.</i>
<i>Internal MCU reset.</i>
<i>Internal System configuration during startup.</i>
<i>Invalid date and time.</i>
<i>Invalid MCU Version.</i>
<i>IP addresses of Signaling Host and Control Unit are the same.</i>

Table 14-19 Alerts and Faults (Continued)

Event
<i>IP Network Service configuration modified.</i>
<i>IP Network Service deleted.</i>
<i>MCU reset.</i>
<i>MCU Reset to enable Diagnostics mode.</i>
<i>Music file error.</i>
<i>NTP synchronization failure.</i>
<i>Polycom default User exists.</i>
<i>Restoring Factory Defaults.</i>
<i>Secured SIP communication failed.</i>
<i>SSH is enabled.</i>
<i>System Configuration modified.</i>
<i>System is starting.</i>
<i>Terminal initiated MCU reset.</i>
<i>The Log file system is disabled.</i>
<i>The software contains patch(es).</i>
<i>User initiated MCU reset.</i>

Transactions

Table 2 lists *Transactions* that are recorded by the *Auditor*.

Table 14-20 Transactions

Transaction
<i>TRANS_CFG:SET_CFG</i>
<i>TRANS_IP_SERVICE:DEL_IP_SERVICE</i>
<i>TRANS_IP_SERVICE:NEW_IP_SERVICE</i>

Table 14-20 Transactions (Continued)

Transaction
<i>TRANS_IP_SERVICE:SET_DEFAULT_H323_SERVICE</i>
<i>TRANS_IP_SERVICE:SET_DEFAULT_SIP_SERVICE</i>
<i>TRANS_IP_SERVICE:UPDATE_IP_SERVICE</i>
<i>TRANS_IP_SERVICE:UPDATE_MANAGEMENT_NETWORK</i>
<i>TRANS_ISDN_PHONE:ADD_ISDN_PHONE</i>
<i>TRANS_ISDN_PHONE:DEL_ISDN_PHONE</i>
<i>TRANS_ISDN_PHONE:UPDATE_ISDN_PHONE</i>
<i>TRANS_ISDN_SERVICE:DEL_ISDN_SERVICE</i>
<i>TRANS_ISDN_SERVICE:NEW_ISDN_SERVICE</i>
<i>TRANS_ISDN_SERVICE:SET_DEFAULT_ISDN_SERVICE</i>
<i>TRANS_ISDN_SERVICE:UPDATE_ISDN_SERVICE</i>
<i>TRANS_MCU:BEGIN_RECEIVING_VERSION</i>
<i>TRANS_MCU:COLLECT_INFO</i>
<i>TRANS_MCU:CREATE_DIRECTORY</i>
<i>TRANS_MCU:FINISHED_TRANSFER_VERSION</i>
<i>TRANS_MCU:LOGIN</i>
<i>TRANS_MCU:LOGOUT</i>
<i>TRANS_MCU:REMOVE_DIRECTORY</i>
<i>TRANS_MCU:REMOVE_DIRECTORY_CONTENT</i>
<i>TRANS_MCU:RENAME</i>
<i>TRANS_MCU:RESET</i>
<i>TRANS_MCU:SET_PORT_CONFIGURATION</i>
<i>TRANS_MCU:SET_RESTORE_TYPE</i>
<i>TRANS_MCU:SET_TIME</i>

Table 14-20 Transactions (Continued)

Transaction
<i>TRANS_MCU:TURN_SSH</i>
<i>TRANS_MCU:UPDATE_KEY_CODE</i>
<i>TRANS_OPERATOR:CHANGE_PASSWORD</i>
<i>TRANS_OPERATOR:DELETE_OPERATOR</i>
<i>TRANS_OPERATOR:NEW_OPERATOR</i>
<i>TRANS_RTM_ISDN_SPAN:UPDATE_RTM_ISDN_SPAN</i>
<i>TRANS_SNMP:UPDATE</i>

ActiveX Bypass

At sites that, for security reasons, do not permit Microsoft® ActiveX® to be installed, the MSI (Windows Installer File) utility can be used to install .NET Framework and .NET Security Settings components on workstations throughout the network.

All workstation that connect to RMX systems must have both .NET Framework and .NET Security Settings running locally. These components are used for communication with the RMX and can only be installed on workstations by users with administrator privileges.

The MSI utility requires the IP addresses of all the RMX systems (both control unit and Shelf Management IP addresses) that each workstation is to connect to.

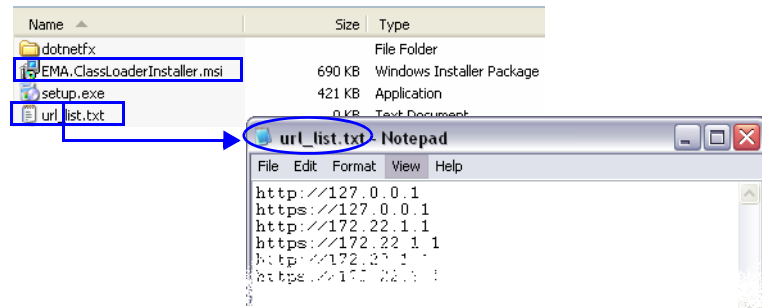
If the IP address of the any of the target RMXs is changed, the ActiveX components must be reinstalled.

Installing ActiveX

To install ActiveX components on all workstations in the network:

- 1 Download the MSI file **EMA.ClassLoaderInstaller.msi** from the Polycom Resource Center.
The MSI file contains installation scripts for both .NET Framework and .NET Security Settings.
- 2 Create a text file to be used during the installation containing the IP addresses of all the RMX systems (both control unit and Shelf Management IP addresses) that each workstation in the network is to connect to.

The file must be named **url_list.txt** and must be saved in the same folder as the downloaded MSI file.



- 3** Install the ActiveX components on all workstations on the network that connect to RMX systems.

The installation is done by the network administrator using a 3rd party network software installation utility and is transparent to all other users.

Hardware Monitoring

The status and properties of the RMX hardware components can be viewed and monitored in the *Hardware Monitor* list pane.

Viewing the Status of the Hardware Components

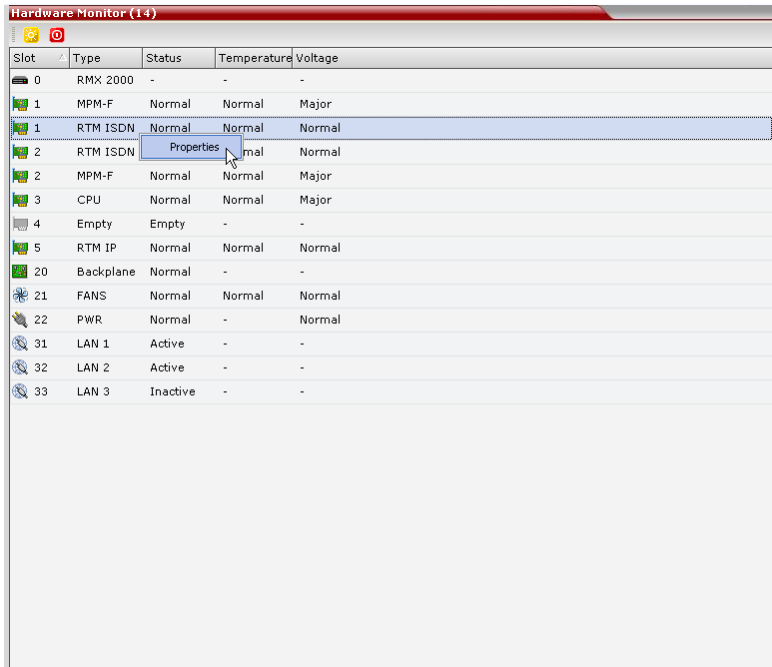
The *Hardware Monitor's* status column displays the present status of the hardware components. In addition to the status, temperature and voltage indications are provided for each component.

The MCU's Shelf Management Server is what users are connecting to when accessing the *Hardware Monitor* pane. This pane can be accessed in either two ways: through the *RMX Web Client* or the Shelf Management Server. Connection via the Shelf Management Server enables users to access the *Hardware Monitor* even when the connection through the *RMX Web Client* is unavailable. The ability to connect directly via the Shelf Management Server enables users to: enter the *Hardware Monitor* and view the problematic hardware components, reset and restart the MCU and run diagnostics. Running diagnostics and restarting the MCU can only be done via direct connection to the Shelf Management Server. For more information, see "*Diagnostic Mode*" on page [15-13](#)



When accessing the Shelf Management server, the content displayed will be available in English only.

To view the status of the Hardware Components:
In the *RMX Management* pane, click the **Hardware Monitor** button.
The *Hardware Monitor* pane appears.



The *Hardware Monitor* pane displays the following RMX hardware component's status columns:

Table 15-1 HW Monitor Pane Status Columns

Field	Description
Slot	<p>Displays an icon according to the HW component type and the slot number. The icon displays the hardware status as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• An exclamation point (!) indicates errors in the HW component.• Card icon with the reset button (🔧) indicates that the HW component is currently resetting.• Card icon with diagnostic tools (🔍) indicates that the HW component is in diagnostic mode.





Table 15-1 HW Monitor Pane Status Columns (Continued)

Field	Description
Type	The type of hardware component card.
Status	The current status of the HW component; <i>Normal, Major, Critical, Resetting, Diagnostics, Active, Inactive or Empty.</i>
Temperature	Monitors the temperature of the hardware components; Normal, Major and Critical. Note: Critical condition invokes a system shut down.
Voltage	The voltage threshold of the hardware component; either <i>Normal or Major.</i>

HW Monitor Pane Toolbar

The following buttons appear in the toolbar of the Hardware Monitor:

Table 15-2 HW Monitor Pane Toolbar Buttons

Button	Name	Description
	System Reset	Resets and restarts the system. Resetting saves settings and information that you changed in the system, i.e. IP Services, etc...
	System Shut Down	Safely shuts down the system instead of unplugging or manually shutting it down.
	System Start Up	Starts up the system. Note: This button is only displayed when connecting directly to the Shelf Management server.
	Diagnostic Mode	Sets the MFA, CPU and Switch (Cards: MPM, CNTL and RTM IP) into diagnostic mode. For more information, see " <i>Diagnostic Mode</i> " on page 15-13 . Note: This button is only displayed when connecting directly to the Shelf Management server.

Viewing Hardware Component's Properties

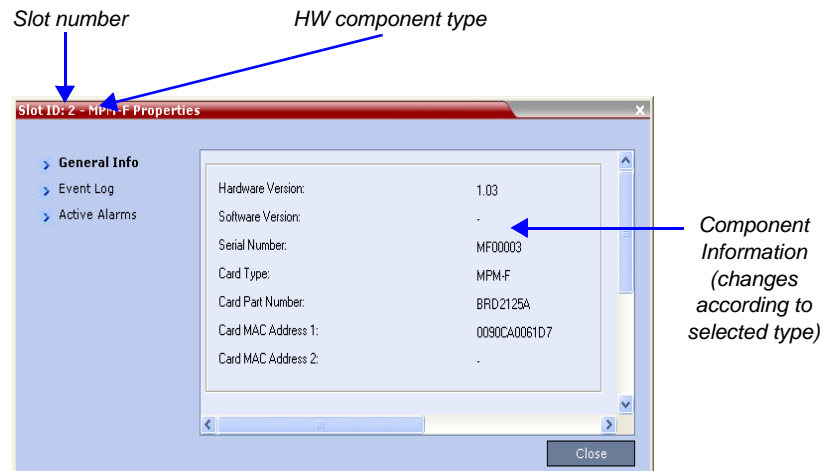
The properties displayed for the hardware components will vary according to the type of component viewed. These component properties can be grouped as follows:

- MCU Properties (RMX)
- Card Properties (MPM F, CPU, RTM IP, RTM ISDN)
- Supporting Hardware Components Properties (Backplane, FANS, LAN)



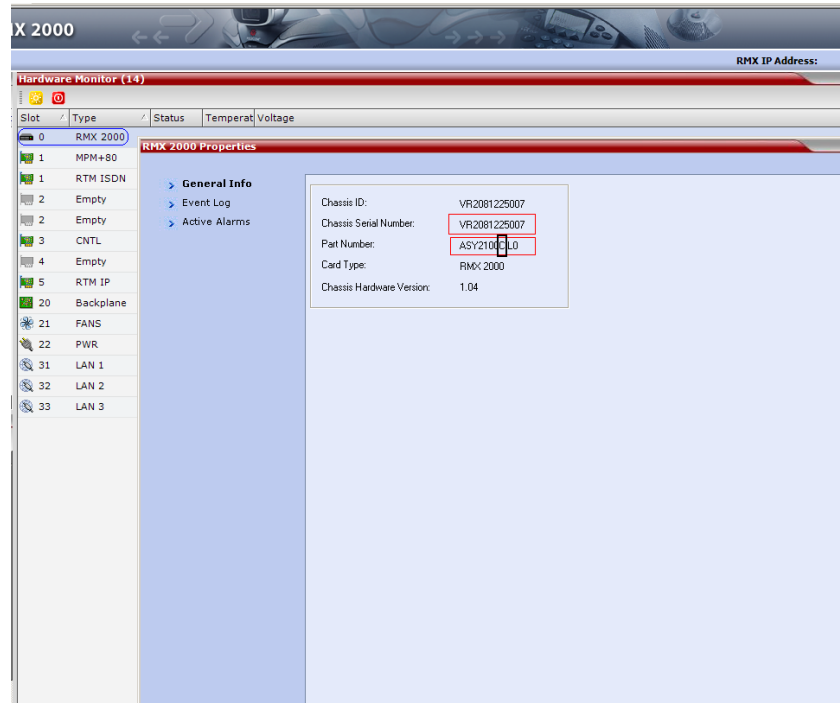
No properties are provided for Power Supply (PWR). For more information, see the *RMX 2000 Hardware Guide*, "RMX 2000 Specifications" on page 1-2.

The Hardware Properties dialog box has the following structure:



To view the MCU Properties:

- 1 In the *Hardware Monitor* pane, either double-click or right-click and select **properties** for RMX 2000, slot 0.



The following information is displayed:

Table 15-3 MCU Properties - General Info

Field	Description
<i>Chassis File ID</i>	The ID assigned to the MCU's chassis file.
<i>Chassis Serial Number</i>	The serial number assigned to the MCU's chassis.
<i>Part Number</i>	The chassis part number. The Part Number contains the letter A/B/C/D that represents the chassis type.
<i>Card Type</i>	The name of the hardware product or component, i.e. RMX 2000, Backplane.

Table 15-3 MCU Properties - General Info (Continued)

Field	Description
Chassis HW Version	Indicates the MCU's current chassis hardware version.
Turn SSH	Enables/disables the SSH monitor. This is a secured terminal enabling access to the operating system in order to define Linux commands.

- 2 Click the *Event Log* tab to view a log of events that were recorded by the system for the *RMX*.

Record ID	Time Stamp	Type	Sensor Num	Sensor Description	Status	Ipmb Address(hex)
17	2/7/2007 5:37:2	VOLTAGE	22	+3.0V FPGA PCI	upper major goi	0x86
18	2/7/2007 5:37:2	VOLTAGE	22	+3.0V FPGA PCI	normal	0x86
19	2/7/2007 5:37:2	VOLTAGE	22	+3.0V FPGA PCI	upper major goi	0x86
20	2/7/2007 5:37:2	VOLTAGE	22	+3.0V FPGA PCI	normal	0x86
25	2/7/2007 5:38:2	HOT_SWAP	0	Hot Swap	active	0x86
27	2/7/2007 5:38:5	VOLTAGE	22	+3.0V FPGA PCI	upper major goi	0x86
28	2/7/2007 3:25:1	HOT_SWAP	0	Hot Swap	active	0x86
29	2/7/2007 5:46:1	WATCHDOG_2	2	BMC Watchdog	lower major goi	0x86
31	2/7/2007 5:46:1	VOLTAGE	22	+3.0V FPGA PCI	upper major goi	0x86
32	2/7/2007 5:46:1	VOLTAGE	22	+3.0V FPGA PCI	upper major goi	0x86
34	2/7/2007 5:46:1	VOLTAGE	22	+3.0V FPGA PCI	normal	0x86
35	2/7/2007 5:46:2	VOLTAGE	22	+3.0V FPGA PCI	normal	0x86
36	2/7/2007 5:46:2	VOLTAGE	22	+3.0V FPGA PCI	upper major goi	0x86
37	2/7/2007 5:46:2	VOLTAGE	22	+3.0V FPGA PCI	normal	0x86

The logged events can be saved to a *.xls file by clicking the **Save Event Log** button. It is not possible to save individual or multiple selected events; the entire log file must be saved.

Table 15-4 MCU Properties - Event Log

Column	Description
Record ID	The recorded ID number of the logged event.
Time Stamp	Lists the date and time that the event occurred.
Type	Displays the type of event recorded in the log.
Sensor Number	The number of the LED sensor on the RMX unit.
Sensor Description	Describes which sensor the event is being logged.

Table 15-4 MCU Properties - Event Log (Continued)

Column	Description
Status	The sensor's active status.
Ipmb Address(hex)	Contains all the internal IPMI network addresses on the IPMB bus, i.e. 0x20 (Switch), 0x86 (MFA), etc...

- 3 Click the *Active Alarms* tab to view alarms related to the RMX, i.e. temperatures and main power sensors.

Slot ID: 5 - RMX IP Properties

General Info
Event Log
Active Alarms

Sensor	Descripti	Current R	Status	Nominal	Sensor T	L.Critical	L.Major	U.Major	U.Critical	Entity ID
0	Hot Swa	0		0	HOT_S	0	0	0	0	unspecified [96]
1	IPMB Ph	136		0	IPMB_LI	0	0	0	0	unspecified [96]
2	BMC Wa	255		0	WATCH	0	0	0	0	processor [96]
3	+3.3V	3.28	normal	3.3	VOLTAG	3.1	3.13	3.46	3.7	power module [96]
4	+2.5V	2.55	normal	2.5	VOLTAG	2.3	2.38	2.64	2.7	power module [96]
5	+1.2V C	1.22	normal	1.2	VOLTAG	1.1	1.14	1.26	1.3	power module [96]
6	+12.0V	12.19	normal	12	VOLTAG	10.03	10.83	13.11	13.45	power module [96]
7	+5.0V	5	normal	5	VOLTAG	4.61	4.75	5.25	5.6	power module [96]
8	+1.2V P	1.19	normal	1.2	VOLTAG	1.1	1.14	1.26	1.3	power module [96]
9	FAN 1	2520	normal	4080	FAN	1620	2040	4200	4440	fan-cooling device [9
10	FAN 2	2580	normal	4080	FAN	1620	2040	4200	4440	fan-cooling device [9
11	FAN 3	2580	normal	4080	FAN	1620	2040	4200	4440	fan-cooling device [9
12	Temp ne	30	normal	255	TEMPER	0	0	65	70	processor [96]
13	Temp at	30	normal	255	TEMPER	0	0	55	60	processor [96]

Save HW Alarm List

Index: Critical Major Normal

Close

The *Active Alarms* dialog box displays fields that relate to faults and errors detected on the RMX by sensors. The *Active Alarms* dialog box is divided into two sections: *HW Alarm List* and *SW Alarm List*.

Each section's alarm list can be saved as a *.xls file by clicking the **Save HW Alarm List** and **Save SW Alarm List** buttons respectively. Each alarm list color codes the severity of the alarm; Critical (RED), Major (ORANGE) and Normal (GREEN).



If you connected to the Hardware Monitoring via the Shelf Management server, the *SW Alarm List* section will not be displayed.

To view the Card Properties:

- 1 In the *Hardware Monitor* pane, either double-click or right-click and select **properties** for the desired hardware component.

The following information is displayed:

Table 15-5 *Card Properties - General Info*

Field	Description
<i>HW Version</i>	The hardware component's version number.
<i>SW Version</i>	The version number of the software installed on card.
<i>Serial Number</i>	The hardware component's serial number.
<i>Card Type</i>	Displays the type of card that occupies the slot.
<i>Board Part Number</i>	The part number of the HW component's board.
<i>Board Mac Address 1</i>	Specific hardware address of the component. This address is burnt onto the component and is automatically identified by the system.
<i>Board Mac Address 2</i>	(If applicable) second Mac address.

- 2 Click the **Event Log** tab to view a log of events that was recorded by the system on the HW component.

For more information, see "*MCU Properties - Event Log*" on page [15-6](#).

- 3 Click the **Active Alarms** tab to view alarms related to the hardware component, i.e. temperatures and main power sensors.

For more information, see "*Active Alarms*" on page [15-7](#).

- 4 Click **Close** to return to the *HW Monitor* pane.

When using the Hardware Monitor to monitor units on MPM cards installed in the RMX's slots, ISDN related DSPs are named *smart*, indicating their additional MUX (Multiplexing) functionality.

The screenshot displays two windows from the Polycom RMX 2000 Administrator's Guide: "Hardware Monitor (14)" and "Unit List (25)".

Hardware Monitor (14) Table:

Slot	Type	Status	Temperature	Voltage
0	RMX 2000	-	-	-
1	MPM-F	Normal	Normal	Major
1	RTM ISDN	Diagnostics	Normal	Normal
2	RTM ISDN	Diagnostics	Normal	Normal
2	MPM-F	Normal	Normal	Major
3	CPU	Resetting	Normal	Major
4	Empty	Empty	-	-
5	RTM IP	Diagnostics	Normal	Normal
20	Backplane	Normal	-	-
21	FANS			
22	PWR			
31	LAN 1			
32	LAN 2			
33	LAN 3			

Unit List (25) Table:

ID	Type	Configuration	Occupied	Faulty	Disabled	Net
1	video		No	No	No	
2	smart		No	No	No	
3	video		No	No	No	
4	video		No	No	No	
5	video		No	No	No	
6	smart		No	No	No	
7	video		No	No	No	
8	smart		No	No	No	
9	video		No	No	No	
10	smart		No	No	No	
11	smart		No	No	No	
12	video		No	No	No	

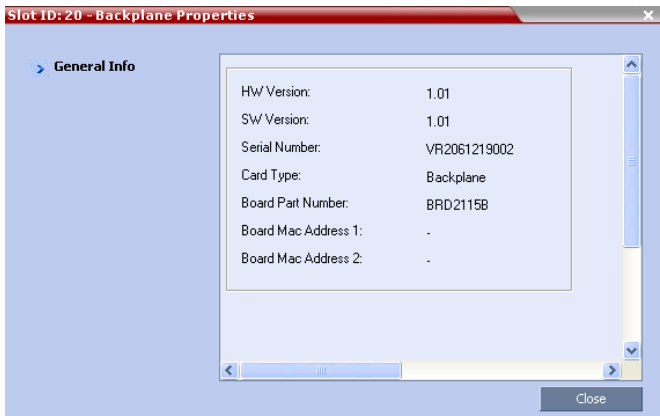
Annotations:

- A blue box highlights the "MPM-F" rows in the Hardware Monitor table. An arrow points from this box to the "MPM Card" label.
- A blue box highlights the "Units on MPM Card" label, with an arrow pointing to the "Unit List" window.
- Blue arrows point from the "Unit List" window back to the "MPM-F" rows in the Hardware Monitor table, indicating the mapping of units to the MPM card.

To View the Supporting Hardware Components Properties:

- 1 In the *Hardware Monitor* pane, either double-click or right-click and select properties for the desired supporting hardware component.

The component's properties dialog box will appear with the *General Info* tab displayed.



Backplane Properties:

The RMX unit's backplane properties provides the following information:

Table 15-6 *Backplane Properties- General Info*

Field	Description
<i>HW Version</i>	The Backplane's current hardware version.
<i>SW Version</i>	The Backplane's current software version.
<i>Serial Number</i>	The Backplane's serial number.
<i>Card Type</i>	The name of the hardware component for which information is being displayed, e.g. Backplane.
<i>Board Part Number</i>	The Backplane's part number.
<i>Board Mac Address 1</i>	The Backplane's hardware address.
<i>Board Mac Address 2</i>	(If applicable) second Backplane Mac address.

FAN Properties:

The RMX unit's chassis contains 3 fans that regulate the unit's temperature. If the temperature increases, the fans speed will increase and vice-versa. A "Critical" condition in the fans operation will result in a system shut down.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Slot ID: 21, FANS Properties". On the left, there is a sidebar with a link labeled "> General Info". The main content area is divided into two sections: "General Settings" and "Fans".

General Settings

Min Speed Level (rpm):	0 (+/-10%)
Max Speed Level (rpm):	4100 (+/-10%)
Normal Operating Level (rpm):	2460 (+/-10%)
Current Fan Level (rpm):	2460 (+/-10%)

Fans

Fan 1 Speed (rpm):	2520 (+/-10%)
Fan 2 Speed (rpm):	2580 (+/-10%)
Fan 3 Speed (rpm):	2580 (+/-10%)

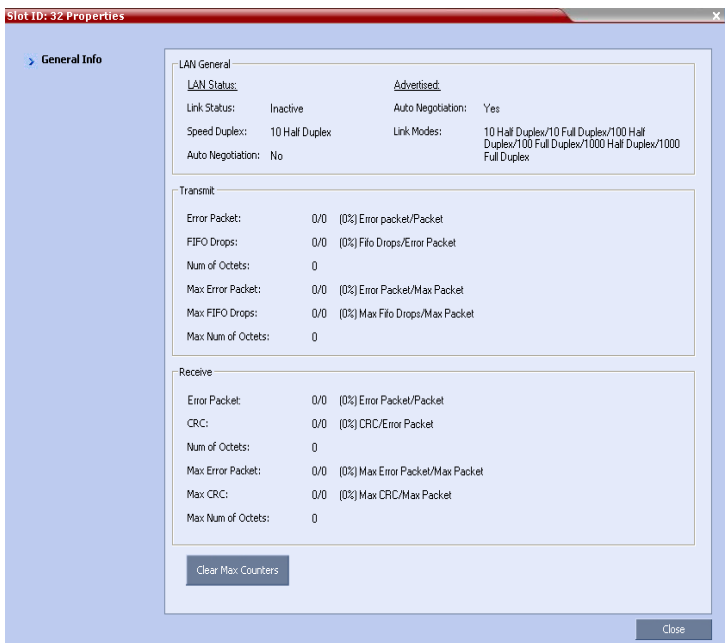
At the bottom right of the window is a "Close" button.

Table 15-7 FANS Properties - General Info

Field	Description
General Settings	
<i>Min. Speed Level (rpm)</i>	The minimum speed level of the fans.
<i>Max. Speed Level (rpm)</i>	The maximum speed level of the fans.
<i>Normal Operating Level (rpm)</i>	The normal operating level defined for the fans.
<i>Current Fan Level (rpm)</i>	The current operating level of the fans.
Fans	
<i>Fan 1 Speed (rpm)</i>	Present speed of fan 1.
<i>Fan 2 Speed (rpm)</i>	Present speed of fan 2.
<i>Fan 3 Speed (rpm)</i>	Present speed of fan 3.

LAN 0, LAN 1, LAN 2 Properties:

The RMX unit's chassis contains 3 external LAN connectors which register the following information listed below. The information will be refreshed every 8 seconds and also contains a peek detector to log the maximal values, since the last peek values reset.



- 2 Click Close to return to the *HW Monitor* pane.

Diagnostic Mode

Diagnostic Mode is a debugging tool for performing hardware diagnostics that detect malfunctions in the hardware component's performance. Diagnostics are performed only for the MFA, CPU and Switch (Cards: MPM, CPU, RTM IP and RTM ISDN). When Diagnostic Mode is initialized, the MCU is reset and upon restarting, the MCU will enter Diagnostic Mode. Entering this mode causes the MCU to terminate all active conferences and prohibits conferences from being established.


Diagnostic Mode is only enabled when connecting directly to the Shelf Management server. To do so, type the Shelf Management IP address and the following system flag (/?DIAG_MODE=true) into the URL address, i.e. 172.22.189.51/?DIAG_MODE=true. You must also be logged in as a SUPPORT user to run diagnostics.



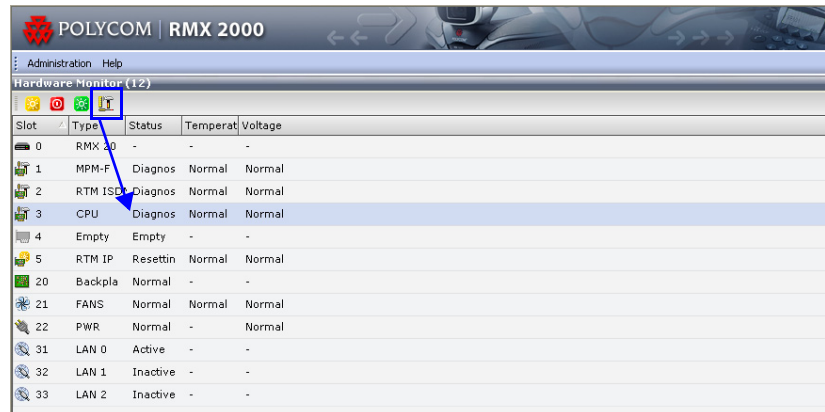
When accessing the Shelf Management server, the content displayed will be available in English only.

Performing Diagnostics

To run Diagnostics on a Hardware Component:

- 1 In the list pane toolbar, click the **Diagnostic Mode** () button.

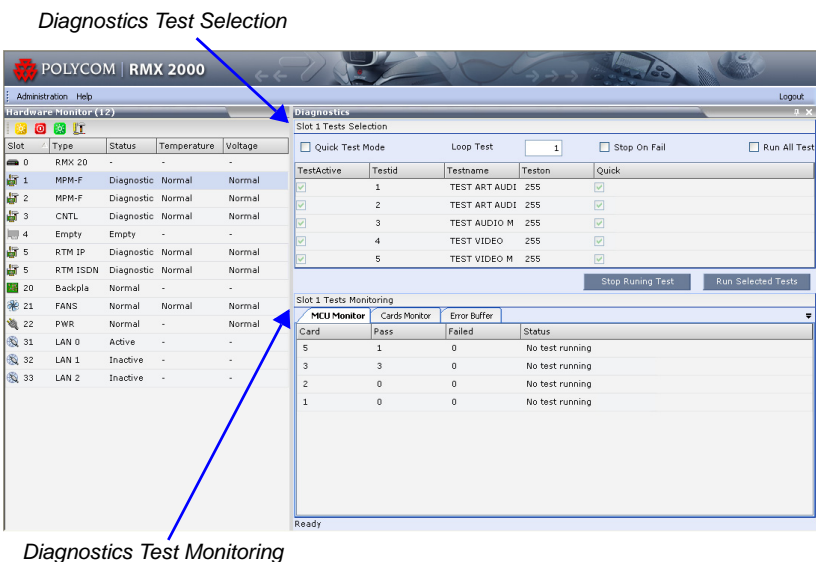
The RTM IP and CNTL components indicate a status of "Diagnostics"; the MPM cards indicate "Resetting". After resetting, the MPM cards will also indicate "Diagnostics" status.



Slot	Type	Status	Temperat	Voltage
0	RMX 20	-	-	-
1	MPM-F	Diagnos	Normal	Normal
2	RTM ISDN	Diagnos	Normal	Normal
3	CPU	Diagnos	Normal	Normal
4	Empty	Empty	-	-
5	RTM IP	Resetin	Normal	Normal
20	Backpla	Normal	-	-
21	FANS	Normal	Normal	Normal
22	PWR	Normal	-	Normal
31	LAN 0	Active	-	-
32	LAN 1	Inactive	-	-
33	LAN 2	Inactive	-	-

- 2 Right-click one of the hardware components indicating “Diagnostics” in the status column and select **Diagnostic** from the drop-down menu.

The Diagnostics pane is displayed at the bottom of the screen. Repositioning the pane is enabled by clicking and dragging the pane to the desired location on the screen, i.e. right side bar (displayed below).



- 3 Select the Test(s) to perform in the section labeled *Diagnostics Test Selection* by marking the check boxes in the *TestActive* column.

Each column in the Diagnostics Test Selection is interchangeable. Click, hold and slide a column left or right to the desired position. The type of tests that can be selected in the *Test Selection* are dependant on the hardware component. Each component enables different tests.

Additional test parameters can be set before performing the tests, as described below.

Table 15-8 Tests Selection - Additional Test Parameters

Parameter	Description
<i>Quick Test Mode</i>	Runs only the tests that are marked Quick in the <i>Quick</i> column. Particular tests in the system are not as complicated and thus take less time to analyze. These tests are indicated with a check mark in the <i>Quick</i> column.
<i>Loop Test</i>	Enter the amount of times the test is to repeat itself in succession.
<i>Stop On Failure</i>	Stops tests upon a failure.
<i>Run All Test</i>	Runs all tests listed in the <i>TestActive</i> column for the hardware component.

- 4 Click the **Run Selected Tests** button.

The selected tests are initialized. This process may take some time. Click **Stop Running Test** to end all the diagnostic tests. The MCU completes the current test running and then stops all remaining tests. For more information on test results, see "*Diagnostics Monitoring*" on page [15-16](#).

- 5 Repeat procedures 1-6 to run diagnostics for each of the other hardware components.

Diagnostics Monitoring

A hardware component’s test status can be viewed in the Diagnostics Test Monitoring section before, during and after tests have been initiated. Test results will only be displayed after tests are completed. The Diagnostic Tests Monitoring section is comprised of three tabs: *MCU Monitor*, *Cards Monitor* and *Error Buffer*, which are further described below.

MCU Monitor

The MCU Monitor tab lists the status of all the cards that can be tested in Diagnostic Mode. Described below are the columns:

Slot 1 Tests Monitoring			
MCU Monitor	Cards Monitor	Error Buffer	
Card	Pass	Failed	Status
5	1	0	No test running
3	3	0	No test running
2	0	0	No test running
1	0	0	Test in progress

Table 15-9 Tests Monitoring - MCU Monitor Parameters

Column	Description
<i>Card</i>	The card's slot number, i.e. 5 - slot where the RTM IP card resides.
<i>Pass</i>	Indicates the number of tests that the card passed successfully.
<i>Fail</i>	Indicates the number of tests that the card failed.
<i>Status</i>	The card's current test status: <i>No test running</i> or <i>Test in progress</i> .

Cards Monitor

The Cards Monitor tab displays the status of the selected tests being run on the currently viewed card, i.e. slot 5, described below.

Unitid	Testname	Loop	Pass	Failed	Quick	Duration	Status
-1	TEST ART AUDI	1	0	0	0	3316	Test in progress
0	TEST ART AUDI	0	0	0	0	0	Ready
0	TEST AUDIO M	0	0	0	0	0	Ready
0	TEST VIDEO	0	0	0	0	0	Ready
0	TEST VIDEO M	0	0	0	0	0	Ready
0	DSP SHORT ME	0	0	0	0	0	Ready
0	DSP LONG MEM	0	0	0	0	0	Ready
0	MEMORY TEST	0	0	0	0	0	Ready
0	FPGA TEST	0	0	0	0	0	Ready

Table 15-10 Tests Monitoring - Card Monitor Parameters

Column	Description
<i>Unitid</i>	The test ID number
<i>Testname</i>	The name of the test
<i>Loop</i>	Indicates the number of times the test will repeat itself in succession.
<i>Pass</i>	Indicates the number of times the test passed successfully.
<i>Failed</i>	Indicates the number of times the test failed.
<i>Quick</i>	Indicates the number of <i>Quick</i> tests that have been run on the card.
<i>Duration</i>	The duration of the test (in seconds).
<i>Status</i>	The card's current test status: <i>Test in Progress</i> or <i>Ready</i> .

Error Buffer

The Error Buffer tab displays the errors encountered during testing of the cards.

Slot 1 Tests Monitoring	
MCU Monitor	Cards Monitor
Error Buffer	
Testid	ErrorString
5	DSP No: 7 Memory test: PASS
5	DSP No: 13 Memory test: PASS
5	DSP No: 14 Memory test: PASS
5	DSP No: 15 Memory test: PASS
5	DSP No: 26 is not configured
5	Post test of all DSPs passed succesfully .
5	DSP No: 1 Memory test: PASS
5	DSP No: 2 Memory test: PASS
5	DSP No: 12 Memory test: PASS
5	DSP No: 11 Memory test: PASS
5	DSP No: 6 Memory test: PASS
5	DSP No: 5 Memory test: PASS
5	DSP No: 4 Memory test: PASS
5	DSP No: 3 Memory test: PASS

Table 15-11 Tests Monitoring - Card Monitor Parameters

Column	Description
Testid	The test ID number.
ErrorString	Indicates the error encountered during testing.

Appendix A

Disconnection Causes

If a participant was unable to connect to a conference or was disconnected from a conference, the **Connection Status** tab in the *Participant Properties* dialog box indicates the call disconnection cause. In some cases, a possible solution may be displayed.

A video participant who is unable to connect the video channels, but is able to connect as an audio only participant, is referred to as a Secondary participant. For Secondary participants, the **Connection Status** tab in the *Participant Properties* dialog box indicates the video disconnection cause. In some cases, a possible solution may be indicated.

The table below lists the call disconnection causes that can be displayed in the Call Disconnection Cause field and provides an explanation of each message

IP Disconnection Causes.

Table A-1 Call Disconnection Causes

Disconnection Cause	Description
Disconnected by User	The user disconnected the endpoint from the conference.
Remote device did not open the encryption signaling channel	The endpoint did not open the encryption signaling channel.
Remote devices selected encryption algorithm does not match the local selected encryption algorithm	The encryption algorithm selected by the endpoint does not match the MCU's encryption algorithm.

Table A-1 *Call Disconnection Causes (Continued)*

Disconnection Cause	Description
Resources deficiency	Insufficient resources available.
Call close. Call closed by MCU	The MCU disconnected the call.
H323 call close. No port left for audio	Insufficient audio ports.
H323 call close. No port left for video	The required video ports exceed the number of ports allocated to video in fixed ports.
H323 call close. No port left for FECC	The required data ports exceed the number of ports allocated to data in fixed ports.
H323 call close. No control port left	The required control ports exceed the number of ports allocated to control data in fixed ports.
H323 call close. No port left for videocont	The required video content ports exceed the number of ports allocated to video content in fixed ports.
H323 call closed. Small bandwidth	The gatekeeper allocated insufficient bandwidth to the connection with the endpoint.
H323 call closed. No port left	There are no free ports left in the IP card.
Caller not registered	The calling endpoint is not registered in the gatekeeper.
H323 call closed. ARQ timeout	The endpoint sent an ARQ message to the gatekeeper, but the gatekeeper did not respond before timeout.
H323 call closed. DRQ timeout	The endpoint sent a DRQ message to the gatekeeper, but the gatekeeper did not respond before timeout.
H323 call closed. Alt Gatekeeper failure	An alternate gatekeeper failure occurred.
H323 call closed. Gatekeeper failure	A gatekeeper failure occurred.

Table A-1 *Call Disconnection Causes (Continued)*

Disconnection Cause	Description
H323 call closed. Remote busy	The endpoint was busy. (Applicable only to dial-out)
H323 call closed. Normal	The call ended normally, for example, the endpoint disconnected.
H323 call closed. Remote reject	The endpoint rejected the call.
H323 call closed. Remote unreachable	The gatekeeper could not find the endpoint's address.
H323 call closed. Unknown reason	The reason for the disconnection is unknown, for example, the endpoint disconnected without giving a reason.
H323 call closed. Faulty destination address	Incorrect address format.
H323 call closed. Small bandwidth	The gatekeeper allocated insufficient bandwidth to the connection with the endpoint.
H323 call closed. Gatekeeper reject ARQ	The gatekeeper rejected the endpoint's ARQ.
H323 call closed. No port left	There are no ports left in the IP card.
H323 call closed. Gatekeeper DRQ	The gatekeeper sent a DRQ.
H323 call closed. No destination IP address	For internal use.
H323 call. Call failed prior or during the capabilities negotiation stage	The endpoint did not send its capabilities to the gatekeeper.
H323 call closed. Audio channels didn't open before timeout	The endpoint did not open the audio channel.
H323 call closed. Remote sent bad capability	There was a problem in the capabilities sent by the endpoint.

Table A-1 *Call Disconnection Causes (Continued)*

Disconnection Cause	Description
H323 call closed. Local capability wasn't accepted by remote	The endpoint did not accept the capabilities sent by the gatekeeper.
H323 failure	Internal error occurred.
H323 call closed. Remote stop responding	The endpoint stopped responding.
H323 call closed. Master slave problem	A People + Content cascading failure occurred.
SIP bad name	The conference name is incompatible with SIP standards.
SIP bad status	A general IP card error occurred.
SIP busy everywhere	The participant's endpoints were contacted successfully, but the participant is busy and does not wish to take the call at this time.
SIP busy here	The participant's endpoint was contacted successfully, but the participant is currently not willing or able to take additional calls.
SIP capabilities don't match	The remote device capabilities are not compatible with the conference settings.
SIP card rejected channels	The IP card could not open the media channels.
SIP client error 400	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 400 (Bad Request) response. The request could not be understood due to malformed syntax.
SIP client error 402	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 402 (Payment Required) response.
SIP client error 405	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 405 (Method Not Allowed) response. The method specified in the Request-Line is understood, but not allowed for the address identified by the Request-URI.

Table A-1 *Call Disconnection Causes (Continued)*

Disconnection Cause	Description
SIP client error 406	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 406 (Not Acceptable) resources. The remote endpoint can not accept the call because it does not have the necessary responses. The resource identified by the request is only capable of generating response entities that have content characteristics not acceptable according to the Accept header field sent in the request.
SIP client error 407	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 407 (Proxy Authentication Required) response. The client must first authenticate itself with the proxy.
SIP client error 409	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 409 (Conflict) response. The request could not be completed due to a conflict with the current state of the resource.
SIP client error 411	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 411 (Length Required) response. The server refuses to accept the request without a defined Content Length.
SIP client error 413	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 413 (Request Entity Too Large) response. The server is refusing to process a request because the request entity is larger than the server is willing or able to process.
SIP client error 414	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 414 (Request-URI Too Long) response. The server is refusing to service the request because the Request-URI is longer than the server is willing to interpret.
SIP client error 420	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 420 (Bad Extension) response. The server did not understand the protocol extension specified in a Require header field.

Table A-1 *Call Disconnection Causes (Continued)*

Disconnection Cause	Description
SIP client error 481	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 481 (Call/Transaction Does Not Exist) response.
SIP client error 482	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 482 (Loop Detected) response.
SIP client error 483	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 483 (Too Many Hops) response.
SIP client error 484	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 484 (Address Incomplete) response. The server received a request with a To address or Request-URI that was incomplete.
SIP client error 485	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 485 (Ambiguous) response. The address provided in the request (Request-URI) was ambiguous.
SIP client error 488	The endpoint sent a SIP Client Error 488 (Not Acceptable Here) response.
SIP forbidden	The SIP server rejected the request. The server understood the request, but is refusing to fulfill it.
SIP global failure 603	A SIP Global Failure 603 (Decline) response was returned. The participant's endpoint was successfully contacted, but the participant explicitly does not wish to or cannot participate.
SIP global failure 604	A SIP Global Failure 604 (Does Not Exist Anywhere) response was returned. The server has authoritative information that the user indicated in the Request-URI does not exist anywhere.
SIP global failure 606	A SIP Global Failure 606 (Not Acceptable) response was returned.
SIP gone	The requested resource is no longer available at the Server and no forwarding address is known.

Table A-1 *Call Disconnection Causes (Continued)*

Disconnection Cause	Description
SIP moved permanently	The endpoint moved permanently. The user can no longer be found at the address in the Request-URI.
SIP moved temporarily	The remote endpoint moved temporarily.
SIP not found	The endpoint was not found. The server has definitive information that the user does not exist at the domain specified in the Request-URI.
SIP redirection 300	A SIP Redirection 300 (Multiple Choices) response was returned.
SIP redirection 305	A SIP Redirection 305 (Use Proxy) response was returned. The requested resource MUST be accessed through the proxy given by the Contact field.
SIP redirection 380	A SIP Redirection 380 (Alternative Service) response was returned. The call was not successful, but alternative services are possible.
SIP remote cancelled call	The endpoint canceled the call.
SIP remote closed call	The endpoint ended the call.
SIP remote stopped responding	The endpoint is not responding.
SIP remote unreachable	The endpoint could not be reached.
SIP request terminated	The endpoint terminated the request. The request was terminated by a BYE or CANCEL request.
SIP request timeout	The request was timed out.
SIP server error 500	The SIP server sent a SIP Server Error 500 (Server Internal Error) response. The server encountered an unexpected condition that prevented it from fulfilling the request.

Table A-1 *Call Disconnection Causes (Continued)*

Disconnection Cause	Description
SIP server error 501	The SIP server sent a SIP Server Error 501 (Not Implemented) response. The server does not support the functionality required to fulfill the request.
SIP server error 502	The SIP server sent a SIP Server Error 502 (Bad Gateway) response. The server, while acting as a gateway or proxy, received an invalid response from the downstream server it accessed in attempting to fulfill the request.
SIP server error 503	The SIP server sent a SIP Server Error 503 (Service Unavailable) response. The server is temporarily unable to process the request due to a temporary overloading or maintenance of the server.
SIP server error 504	The SIP server sent a SIP Server Error 504 (Server Time-out) response. The server did not receive a timely response from an external server it accessed in attempting to process the request.
SIP server error 505	The SIP server sent a SIP Server Error 505 (Version Not Supported) response. The server does not support, or refuses to support, the SIP protocol version that was used in the request.
SIP temporarily not available	The participant's endpoint was contacted successfully but the participant is currently unavailable (e.g., not logged in or logged in such a manner as to preclude communication with the participant).
SIP remote device did not respond in the given time frame	The endpoint did not respond in the given time frame.
SIP trans error TCP Invite	A SIP Invite was sent via TCP, but the endpoint was not found.

Table A-1 *Call Disconnection Causes (Continued)*

Disconnection Cause	Description
SIP transport error	Unable to initiate connection with the endpoint.
SIP unauthorized	The request requires user authentication.
SIP unsupported media type	The server is refusing to service the request because the message body of the request is in a format not supported by the requested resource for the requested method.

ISDN Disconnection Causes.

Table A-2 ISDN Disconnection Causes

Disconnection Cause		
Number	Summary	Description
1	<i>Unallocated (unassigned number)</i>	<p>No route to the number exists in the ISDN network or the number was not found in the routing table.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure that the number appears in the routing table. • Ensure that it is a valid number and that correct digits were dialed.
2	<i>No route to specified transit network (national use)</i>	The route specified (transit network) between the two networks does not exist.
3	<i>No route to destination</i>	<p>No physical route to the destination number exists although the dialed number is in the routing plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The PRI D-Channel is malfunctioning. • Incorrect connection of the span or WAN.
4	<i>Send special information tone</i>	Return the special information tone to the calling party indicating that the called user cannot be reached.
5	<i>Misdialed trunk prefix (national use)</i>	A trunk prefix has erroneously been included in the called user number.
6	<i>Channel Unacceptable</i>	The sending entity in the call does not accept the channel most recently identified.
7	<i>Call awarded and being delivered in an Established channel</i>	The incoming call is being connected to an channel previously established for similar calls.

Table A-2 ISDN Disconnection Causes (Continued)

Disconnection Cause		
Number	Summary	Description
8	<i>Pre-Emption</i>	The call has been pre-empted.
9	<i>Pre-Emption – Circuit reserved for reuse</i>	Call is being cleared in response to user request.
16	<i>Normal Call Clearing</i>	Call cleared normally because user hung up.
17	<i>User Busy</i>	Dialed number is busy.
18	<i>No User Responding</i>	The called user has not answered the call.
19	<i>No Answer from User (User Alerted)</i>	Called user has received call alert, but has not responded within a prescribed period of time. Internal network timers may initiate this disconnection.
20	<i>Subscriber Absent</i>	User is temporarily absent from the network - as when a mobile user logs off.
21	<i>Call Rejected</i>	Called number is either busy or has compatibility issues. Supplementary service constraints in the network may also initiate the disconnection.
22	<i>Number Changed</i>	Same as Cause 1. The diagnostic field contains the new called user number. Cause 1 is used if the network does not support this cause value.
26	<i>Non-Selected User Clearing</i>	The incoming call has not been assigned to the user.
27	<i>Destination Out-of-Order</i>	Messages cannot be sent to the destination number because the span may not be active.
28	<i>Invalid Number Format (address incomplete)</i>	The Type of Number (TON) is incorrect or the number is incomplete. Network, Unknown and National numbers have different formats.
29	<i>Facility Rejected</i>	User requested supplementary service which cannot be provided by the network.

Table A-2 ISDN Disconnection Causes (Continued)

Disconnection Cause		
Number	Summary	Description
30	<i>Response to STATUS ENQUIRY</i>	A STATUS message has been received in response to a prior STATUS ENQUIRY.
31	<i>Normal, Unspecified</i>	A normal, unspecified disconnection has occurred.
34	<i>No Circuit/Channel Available</i>	No B-Channels are available for the call.
38	<i>Network Out-of-Order</i>	Network is out-of-order because due to a major malfunction.
39	<i>Permanent Frame Mode Connection Out-of-Service</i>	A permanent frame mode connection is out-of-service. This cause is part of a STATUS message.
40	<i>Permanent Frame Mode Connection Operational</i>	A permanent frame mode connection is operational. This cause is part of a STATUS message.
41	<i>Temporary Failure</i>	Minor network malfunction. Initiate call again.
42	<i>Switching Equipment Congestion</i>	High traffic has congested the switching equipment. Cause 43 is included.
43	<i>Access Information Discarded</i>	Access Information elements exceed maximum maximum length nad have been discarded. Included with Cause 42.
44	<i>Requested Circuit/Channel not Available</i>	The requested circuit or channel is not available. Alternative circuits or channels are not acceptable.

Table A-2 ISDN Disconnection Causes (Continued)

Disconnection Cause		
Number	Summary	Description
47	<i>Resource Unavailable, Unspecified</i>	The resource is unavailable. No other disconnection cause applies.
49	<i>Quality of Service Not Available</i>	Quality of Service, as defined in Recommendation X.213, cannot be provided.
50	<i>Requested Facility Not Subscribed</i>	A supplementary service has been requested that the user is not authorized to use.
53	<i>Outgoing Calls Barred Within Closed User Group (CUG)</i>	Outgoing calls are not permitted for this member of the CUG.
55	<i>Incoming Calls Barred within CUG</i>	Incoming calls are not permitted for this member of the CUG.
57	<i>Bearer Capability Not Authorized</i>	A bearer capability has been requested that the user is not authorized to use.
58	<i>Bearer Capability Not Presently Available</i>	A bearer capability has been requested that the user is not presently available.
62	<i>Inconsistency in Designated Outgoing Access Information and Subscriber Class</i>	Outgoing Access and Subscriber Class information is inconsistent

Table A-2 ISDN Disconnection Causes (Continued)

Disconnection Cause		
Number	Summary	Description
63	<i>Service or Option Not Available, Unspecified</i>	The service or option is unavailable. No other disconnection cause applies.
65	<i>Bearer Capability Not Implemented</i>	The requested bearer capability is not supported.
66	<i>Channel Type Not Implemented</i>	The requested channel type is not supported.
69	<i>Requested Facility Not Implemented</i>	The requested supplementary service is not supported.
70	<i>Only Restricted Digital Information Bearer Capability is Available (national use)</i>	Unrestricted (64kb) bearer service has been requested but is not supported by the equipment sending this cause.
79	<i>Service or Option Not Implemented, Unspecified</i>	An unsupported service or unimplemented option has been requested. No other disconnection cause applies.
81	<i>Invalid Call Reference Value</i>	A message has been received which contains a call reference which is currently unassigned or not in use on the user-network interface.
82	<i>Identified Channel Does Not Exist</i>	A request has been received to use a channel which is currently inactive or does not exist.

Table A-2 ISDN Disconnection Causes (Continued)

Disconnection Cause		
Number	Summary	Description
83	<i>A Suspended Call Exists, but This Call Identity Does Not Exist</i>	A RESUME message cannot be actioned by the network as a result of an unknown call identity.
84	<i>Call Identity in Use</i>	A SUSPEND message has been received with a call identity sequence that is already in use.
85	<i>No Call Suspended</i>	A RESUME message cannot be actioned by the network as a result of no call suspended.
86	<i>Call Having the Requested Call Identity Has Been Cleared</i>	A RESUME message cannot be actioned by the network as a result of the call having been cleared while suspended.
87	<i>User Not Member of CUG</i>	A CUG member was called by a user that is not a member of the CUG or a CUG call was made to a non CUG member.
88	<i>Incompatible Destination</i>	User-to-user compatibility checking procedures in a point-to-point data link have determined that an incompatibility exists between Bearer capabilities.
90	<i>Non-Existent CUG</i>	CUG does not exist.
91	<i>Invalid Transit Network Selection (national use)</i>	The transit network selection is of an incorrect format. No route (transit network) exists between the two networks.
95	<i>Invalid Message, Unspecified</i>	Invalid message received. No other disconnection cause applies.
96	<i>Mandatory Information Element is Missing</i>	A message was received with an information element missing.

Table A-2 *ISDN Disconnection Causes (Continued)*

Disconnection Cause		
Number	Summary	Description
97	<i>Message Type Non-Existent or Not Implemented</i>	A message was received that is of a type that is not defined or of a type that is defined but not implemented.
98	<i>Message is Not Compatible with the Call State, or the Message Type is Non-Existent or Not Implemented</i>	An unexpected message or unrecognized message incompatible with the call state has been received
99	<i>An Information Element or Parameter Does Not Exist or is Not Implemented</i>	A message was received containing elements or parameters that are not defined or of a type that is defined but not implemented.
100	<i>Invalid Information Element Contents</i>	A message other than SETUP, DISCONNECT, RELEASE, or RELEASE COMPLETE has been received which has one or more mandatory information elements containing invalid content.
101	<i>The Message is Not Compatible with the Call State</i>	A STATUS message indicating any call state except the Null state has been received while in the Null state.
102	<i>Recovery on Timer Expired</i>	An error handling procedure timer has expired.
103	<i>Parameter Non-Existent or Not Implemented – Passed On (national use)</i>	A message was received containing parameters that are not defined or of a type that is defined but not implemented.

Table A-2 ISDN Disconnection Causes (Continued)

Disconnection Cause		
Number	Summary	Description
110	<i>Message with Unrecognized Parameter Discarded</i>	A message was discarded because it contained a parameter that was not recognized.
111	<i>Protocol Error, Unspecified</i>	A protocol error has occurred. No other disconnection cause applies.
127	<i>Interworking, Unspecified</i>	An interworking call has ended.

Appendix B

Alarms and Faults

Alarms

Table B-1 Alarms

Alarm Code	Alarm Description
A new activation key was loaded. Reset the system.	A new activation key was loaded: Reset the MCU.
A new version was installed. Reset the system.	A new version was installed: Reset the MCU.
A private version is loaded	A private version is loaded: [private description].
Action redirection failure	Possible explanations: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Action redirection failure.• Action redirection map incomplete.
Automatic reset is unavailable in Safe Mode	The system switches to safe mode if many resets occur during startup. To prevent additional resets, and allow the system to complete the startup process the automatic system resets are blocked.
Card failure	Possible reasons for the card failure: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Resetting Card• Resetting component• Unknown shelf error• Unknown card error
Card not found	This occurs when: the system does not receive an indication about the card (since it does not exist...) usually when the card was removed from the MCU and the system did not have a chance to recalculate it resources.

Table B-1 Alarms (Continued)

Alarm Code	Alarm Description
Card not responding	Possible reasons for the card not responding: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• No connection with MPM card.• No connection with the Switch.
Central signaling component failure	Possible explanations: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Central signaling component failure; unit type: [NonComponent\CSMngnt\CSH323\CSSIP]• Central signaling component failure; unit type: (invalid: [NonComponent\CSMngnt\CSH323\CSSIP])• Central signaling component failure - Invalid failure type. Unit id: [id], Type: [NonComponent\CSMngnt\CSH323\CSSIP], Status: [Ok\Failed\Recovered]• Central signaling component failure - Invalid failure type
Central Signaling indicating Faulty status	Central signaling failure detected in IP Network Service.
Central Signaling indicating Recovery status	
Central Signaling startup failure	
Configuration of external database did not complete.	
Could not complete MPM Card startup procedure	Possible explanations: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Unit loading confirmation was not received.• No Media IP for this card.• Media IP Configuration confirmation was not received.• Unspecified problem.
Could not complete RTM ISDN Card startup procedure	
CPU IPMC software was not updated.	
D channel cannot be established	

Table B-1 Alarms (Continued)

Alarm Code	Alarm Description
DEBUG mode enabled	Possible explanations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • System is running in DEBUG mode. • System DEBUG mode initiated.
DEBUG mode flags in use	System is using DEBUG CFG flags.
DMA not supported by IDE device	Possible explanations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DMA (direct memory access) not supported by IDE device: Incompatible flash card / hard disk being used. • Flash card / hard drive are not properly connected to the board / one of the IDE channels is disconnected. • DMA was manually disabled for testing.
DNS configuration error	
DNS not configured in IP Network Service	
Error in external database certificate	
Error reading MCU time	Failed to read MCU time configuration file ([status]).
External NTP servers failure	
Failed to access DNS server	Failed to access DNS server.
Failed to configure the Media card IP address	Possible reasons for the failure: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Failure type: [OK Or Not supported. • Does not exist Or IP failure. • Duplicate IP Or DHCP failure. • VLAN failure Or Invalid: [status_Number].
Failed to configure the Users list in Linux	External NTP server failure: NTP server failure: [server0_ip], [server1_ip], [server2_ipStr].
Failed to connect to application server	Possible reasons for the failure: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Failed to connect to application server: • Failed to establish connection to server, url = [url].

Table B-1 *Alarms (Continued)*

Alarm Code	Alarm Description
Failed to connect to recording device	The MCU could not connect to any of the defined NTP server for synchronization due to the remote server error.
Failed to connect to SIP registrar	Cannot establish connection with SIP registrar.
Failed to create Default Profile	Possible reasons for the failure: <ul style="list-style-type: none">Failed to validate the Default Profile.Failed to add the Default Profile.
Failed to initialize the file system	Possible reasons for the failure: <ul style="list-style-type: none">Failed to initialize the file system.Failed to initialize the file system and create the CDR index.
Failed to mount Card folder	Failed to mount card folder.
Failed to open Apache server configuration file	Failed to open Apache configuration file.
Failed to open Users list file	
Failed to register with DNS server	
Failed to save Apache server configuration file	Failed to save Apache configuration file.
Failure in initialization of SNMP agent.	
Fallback version is being used	Fallback version is being used. Restore current version. Version being used: [running version]; Current version: [current version].
File error	Possible reasons for the file error: <ul style="list-style-type: none">XML file does not exist [file name]; Error no: [error number].Not authorized to open XML file [file name]; Error no: [error number].Unknown problem in opening XML file [file name]; Error no: [error number].Failed to parse XML file [file name].

Table B-1 Alarms (Continued)

Alarm Code	Alarm Description
File system scan failure	File system scan failure: Failed to scan [file system path].
File system space shortage	File system space shortage: Out of file system space in [file system path]; Free space: [free space percentage]% ([free space] Blocks) - Minimum free space required: [minimum free space percentage]% ([minimum free space] Blocks).
Gatekeeper failure	<p>Possible reasons for the Gatekeeper failure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Failed to register to alternate Gatekeeper. • Gatekeeper discovery state. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check GK IP address (GUI, ping) • Gatekeeper DNS Host name not found. • Gatekeeper Registration Timeout. • Gatekeeper rejected GRQ due to invalid revision. • Gatekeeper rejected GRQ due to resource unavailability. • Gatekeeper rejected GRQ due to Terminal Exclusion. • Gatekeeper rejected GRQ due to unsupported feature. • Gatekeeper rejected GRQ. Reason 18. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to Discovery Required. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to duplicate alias. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check duplicate in aliases or in prefixes • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to Generic Data. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to invalid alias. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to invalid call signaling address. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to invalid endpoint ID. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to invalid RAS address. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to invalid revision. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to invalid state.

Table B-1 Alarms (Continued)

Alarm Code	Alarm Description
Gatekeeper failure (cont.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to invalid terminal alias. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to resource unavailability. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to Security Denial. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to terminal type. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to unsupported Additive Registration. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to unsupported feature. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to unsupported QOS transport. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ due to unsupported transport. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ. Full registration required. • Gatekeeper rejected RRQ. Reason 18. • Gatekeeper Unregistration State. • Registration succeeded.
Hard disk error	Hard disk not responding.
High CPU utilization	
High system CPU usage	High system CPU usage: System CPU usage is approaching limit.
Incorrect Ethernet Settings	Incorrect Ethernet Settings: Ethernet should be set to 100 Full Duplex, Auto Negotiation - off.
Insufficient resources	Insufficient resources.
Insufficient UDP Ports	

Table B-1 Alarms (Continued)

Alarm Code	Alarm Description
Internal MCU reset	<p>Possible explanations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • McmsDaemon reset due to policy decision: [Process failed [abs crash counter: crash counter]: process name]. • McmsDaemon reset due to policy decision: [Process failed [abs crash counter: crash counter]: process name]; Cannot reset while system is in DEBUG mode. • Power down signal was detected. • [CS Component Failure; unit type: [NonComponent\CSMngnt\CSH323\CSSIP]\CS Component Failure; unit type: (invalid: [unit type])\No connection with CS]; Cannot reset while system is in DEBUG mode. • Reset cause unknown: [reset source]\Restore Factory Defaults - [mcu restore name]\CM_Loaded indication repeated; boardId: [boardId]\reset from Cards process - simulation\No connection with MPM; board Id:[boardId]\SmMfaFailure - boardId: [boardId]. Status: [status], problem bitmask: [problemBitMask]\MPM failure, boardId: [slotId]\Switch failure\No connection with Switch.
Internal System configuration during startup	System configuration during startup.
Invalid date and time	Invalid date and time: MCU year ([year]) must be 2000 or later.
Invalid MCU Version	MCU Version: [Major.Minor.release.internal].
Invalid System Configuration	
IP addresses of Signaling Host and Control Unit are the same	
IP Network Service configuration modified	IP Network Service was modified. Reset the MCU.
IP Network Service deleted	IP Network Service was deleted. Reset the MCU.

Table B-1 Alarms (Continued)

Alarm Code	Alarm Description
IP Network Service not found	Possible explanations: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• IP Service not found in the Network Services list.• m_StatusRead IpServiceList.
ISDN/PSTN Network Services configuration changed	
License not found	
Low Processing Memory	Low Processing Memory: Process is approaching memory utilization limit: [Memory Utilization Percent]
Low system Memory	Low system Memory: The system exceeded 80% of memory usage.
Management Network not configured	
MCU is not configured for AVF gatekeeper mode	
MCU reset	The MCU was reset automatically or by the user. MCU reset: Reset cause: [reset source].
MCU Reset to enable Diagnostics mode	
Missing Central Signaling configuration	
MPL startup failure. Authentication not received.	
MPL startup failure. Management Network configuration not received.	
Music file error	The music file played during the connection to the conference cannot be accessed.
No clock source	The system could not use any of the connected ISDN spans as clock source

Table B-1 Alarms (Continued)

Alarm Code	Alarm Description
No default ISDN/PSTN Network Service defined in ISDN/PSTN Network Services list	
No default IVR Service in IVR Services list	No default IVR Service in IVR Services list: Ensure that one conference IVR Service and one EQ IVR Service are set as default.
No IP Network Services defined	IP Network Service parameters missing.
No ISDN/PSTN Network Services defined	No ISDN/PSTN Network Services were defined or no default ISDN/PSTN Network was defined.
No License for ISDN/PSTN. Please activate the RTM ISDN card through Polycom website	
No response from Central Signaling	No connection with central signaling.
No response from RTM ISDN card	
No usable unit for audio controller;	
NTP synchronization failure	The system failed to synchronize the MCU clock with the NTP clock
Polycom default User exists. For security reasons, it is recommended to delete this User and create your own User.	
Port configuration was modified	
Power off	
Process idle	Process idle: Process did not finish before deadline.
Process terminated	Process terminated: [Process name] terminated.
Product activation failure	
Recording device has disconnected unexpectedly	

Table B-1 Alarms (Continued)

Alarm Code	Alarm Description
Red Alarm	When a certain timeout will be reached (after startup), MCMS will go over the configured Spans. A configured Span that is related to nonexistent card – will produce a 'RED_ALARM' Alert. Similarly on HotSwap: if an RTM card (or an MPM that has an RTM extension) is removed, MCMS will go over the configured Spans. A configured Span that is related to the removed card – will produce a 'RED_ALARM' Alert.
Resource process did not receive the Meeting Room list during startup.	Without the Meeting Rooms list, the system cannot allocate the appropriate dial numbers, Conference ID etc. and therefore cannot run conferences
Resource process failed to request the Meeting Room list during startup.	Without the Meeting Rooms list, the system cannot allocate the appropriate dial numbers, Conference ID etc. and therefore cannot run conferences
Restoring Factory Defaults. Default system settings will be restored once Reset is completed	Default system settings will be restored once Reset is completed.
RTM ISDN card not found	RTM ISDN card is missing.
RTM ISDN card startup procedure error	The RTM ISDN card cannot complete its startup procedure (usually after system reset)
Secured SIP communication failed	
Security mode failed. Certificate not yet valid.	
Security mode failed. Certificate has expired.	
Security mode failed. Certificate host name does not match the RMX host name.	
Security mode failed. Certificate is about to expire.	
Security mode failed. Error in certificate file.	

Table B-1 Alarms (Continued)

Alarm Code	Alarm Description
Single clock source	No Backup clock could be established as only one span is connected to the system or, there is a synchronization failure with another span. This alarm can be cancelled by adding the appropriate flag in the system configuration.
SIP registrations limit reached	SIP registrations limit reached.
Smart Report found errors on hard disk	Smart Report found errors on hard disk.
SSH is enabled	
Startup process failure	Process failed: [Process name] failed to start.
SWITCH not responding	
System Configuration modified	System configuration flags were modified. Reset the MCU.
Task terminated	Task terminated: [Task Name].
Temperature Level Critical	Possible explanations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Temperature has reached a critical level. MCU will shut down. • Temperature problem - Critical.
Temperature Level Major	Possible explanations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Temperature has reached a problematic level and requires attention. • Temperature problem - Major
Terminal initiated MCU reset	MCU reset was initiated by Terminal command [reset].
The Log file system is disabled	Log file system error: The Log File System is disabled. Log files not found.
The software contains patch(es)	The software contains patch(es).
Unit not responding	

Table B-1 *Alarms (Continued)*

Alarm Code	Alarm Description
Unspecified problem	Possible explanations: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Unspecified card error.• Unspecified shelf error.• Unspecified problem.
User initiated MCU reset	MCU reset was initiated by a system user.
Version upgrade is in progress	
Voltage problem	Possible reasons for the problem: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Card voltage problem.• Shelf voltage problem.• Voltage problem
Yellow Alarm	

Appendix C

CDR Fields - Unformatted File

The CDR (Call Detail Records) utility is used to retrieve conference information to a file. The CDR utility can retrieve conference information to a file in both formatted and unformatted formats.

Unformatted CDR files contain multiple records. The first record in each file contains information about the conference in general, such as the conference name and start time. The remaining records each contain information about one event that occurred during the conference, such as a participant connecting to the conference, or a user extending the length of the conference. The first field in each record identifies the event type, and this is followed by values containing information about the event. The fields are separated by commas.

Formatted files contain basically the same information as unformatted files, but with the field values replaced by descriptions. Formatted files are divided into sections, each containing information about one conference event. The first line in each section is a title describing the type of event, and this is followed by multiple lines, each containing information about the event in the form of a descriptive field name and value.



The field names and values in the formatted file will appear in the language being used for the RMX Web Client user interface at the time when the CDR information is retrieved.

The value of the fields that support Unicode values, such as the info fields, will be stored in the CDR file in UTF8. The application that reads the CDR file must support Unicode.

The MCU sends the entire CDR file via API or HTTP, and the RMX 2000 or external application does the processing and sorting. The RMX 2000 ignores events that it does not recognize, that is, events written in a higher version that do not exist in the current version. Therefore, to enable compatibility between versions, instead of adding new fields to existing events, new fields are added as separate events, so as not to affect the events from older versions. This allows users with lower versions to retrieve CDR files that were created in higher versions.



This appendix describes the fields and values in the unformatted CDR records. Although the formatted files contain basically the same information, in a few instances a single field in the unformatted file is converted to multiple lines in the formatted file, and in other cases, multiple fields in the unformatted file are combined into one line in the formatted file.

In addition, to enable compatibility for applications that were written for the MGC family, the unformatted file contains fields that were supported by the MGC family, but are not supported by the RMX 2000, whereas these fields are omitted from the formatted file.

The Conference Summary Record

The conference summary record (the first record in the unformatted CDR file) contains the following fields:

Table C-1 Conference Summary Record Fields

Field	Description
<i>File Version</i>	The version of the CDR utility that created the file.
<i>Conference Routing Name</i>	The Routing Name of the conference.
<i>Internal Conference ID</i>	The conference identification number as assigned by the system.
<i>Reserved Start Time</i>	Not supported. Contains the same value as the Actual Start Time field.
<i>Reserved Duration</i>	The amount of time the conference was scheduled to last.
<i>Actual Start Time</i>	The actual time the conference started in local time.
<i>Actual Duration</i>	The actual conference duration.
<i>Status</i>	<p>The conference status code as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 - The conference is an ongoing conference. 2 - The conference was terminated by a user. 3 - The conference ended at the scheduled end time. 4 - The conference ended automatically because no participants joined the conference for a predefined time period, or all the participants disconnected from the conference and the conference was empty for a predefined time period. 5 - The conference never started. 6 - The conference could not start due to a problem. 8 - An unknown error occurred. 9 - The conference was terminated by a participant using DTMF codes. <p>Note: If the conference was terminated by an MCU reset, this field will contain the value 1 (ongoing conference).</p>

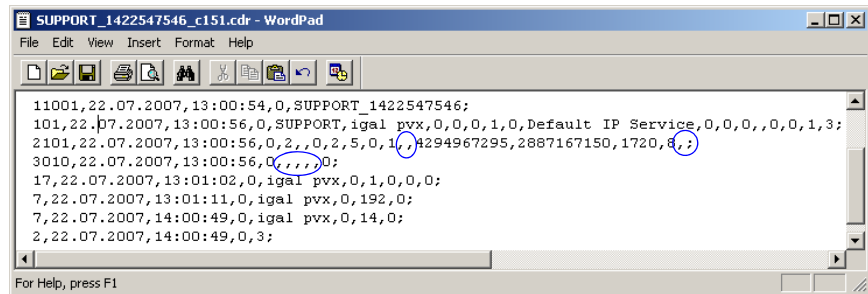
Table C-1 Conference Summary Record Fields (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>File Name</i>	The name of the conference log file.
<i>GMT Offset Sign</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>GMT Offset</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>File Retrieved</i>	Indicates if the file has been retrieved and saved to a formatted file, as follows: 0 - No 1 - Yes

Event Records

The event records, that is, all records in the unformatted file except the first record, contain standard fields, such as the event type code and the time stamp, followed by fields that are event specific.

The event fields are separated by commas. Two consecutive commas with nothing between them (,,), or a comma followed immediately by a semi-colon (;), indicates an empty field, as in the example below:



Standard Event Record Fields

All event records start with the following fields:

- The CDR event type code. For a list of event type codes and descriptions, refer to Table C-2, "*CDR Event Types*", on page [C-6](#).
- The event date.
- The event time.
- The structure length. This field is required for compatibility purposes, and always contains the value 0.

Event Types

The table below contains a list of the events that can be logged in the CDR file, and indicates where to find details of the fields that are specific to that type of event.



The event code identifies the event in the unformatted CDR file, and the event name identifies the event in the formatted CDR file.

Table C-2 CDR Event Types

Event Code	Event Name	Description
1	CONFERENCE START	<p>The conference started.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-3, “<i>Event Fields for Event 1 - CONFERENCE START</i>”, on page C-15.</p> <p>Note: There is one CONFERENCE START event per conference. It is always the first event in the file, after the conference summary record. It contains conference details, but not participant details.</p>
2	CONFERENCE END	<p>The conference ended.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-8, “<i>Event Fields for Event 2 - CONFERENCE END</i>”, on page C-22.</p> <p>Note: There is one CONFERENCE END event per conference, and it is always the last event in the file.</p>
3	ISDN/PSTN CHANNEL CONNECTED	<p>An ISDN/PSTN channel connected.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-9, “<i>Event fields for Event 3 - ISDN/PSTN CHANNEL CONNECTED</i>”, on page C-22.</p>

Table C-2 CDR Event Types (Continued)

Event Code	Event Name	Description
4	<i>ISDN/PSTN CHANNEL DISCONNECTED</i>	An ISDN/PSTN channel disconnected. For more information about the fields, see Table C-10, “ <i>Event fields for Event 4 - ISDN/PSTN CHANNEL DISCONNECTED</i> ”, on page C-25 .
5	<i>ISDN/PSTN PARTICIPANT CONNECTED</i>	An ISDN/PSTN participant connected to the conference. For more information about the fields, see Table C-11, “ <i>Event fields for Event 5 - ISDN/PSTN PARTICIPANT CONNECTED</i> ”, on page C-25 .
7	<i>PARTICIPANT DISCONNECTED</i>	A participant disconnected from the conference. For more information about the fields, see Table C-12, “ <i>Event Fields for Event 7 - PARTICIPANT DISCONNECTED</i> ”, on page C-27 .
10	<i>DEFINED PARTICIPANT</i>	Information about a defined participant, that is, a participant who was added to the conference before the conference started. For more information about the fields, see Table C-14, “ <i>Event Fields for Events 10, 101, 105 - DEFINED PARTICIPANT, USER ADD PARTICIPANT, USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT</i> ”, on page C-29 . Note: There is one event for each participant defined before the conference started.
15	<i>H323 CALL SETUP</i>	Information about the IP address of the participant. For more information about the fields, see Table C-17, “ <i>Event fields for Event 15 - H323 CALL SETUP</i> ”, on page C-35 .

Table C-2 CDR Event Types (Continued)

Event Code	Event Name	Description
17	<i>H323 PARTICIPANT CONNECTED</i>	<p>An H.323 participant connected to the conference.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-18, “Event Fields for Events 17, 23 - H323 PARTICIPANT CONNECTED, SIP PARTICIPANT CONNECTED”, on page C-36.</p>
18	<i>NEW UNDEFINED PARTICIPANT</i>	<p>A new undefined participant joined the conference.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-19, “Event Fields for Event 18 - NEW UNDEFINED PARTICIPANT”, on page C-38.</p>
20	<i>BILLING CODE</i>	<p>A billing code was entered by a participant using DTMF codes.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-21, “Event Fields for Event 20 - BILLING CODE”, on page C-42.</p>
21	<i>SET PARTICIPANT DISPLAY NAME</i>	<p>A user assigned a new name to a participant, or an end point sent its name.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-22, “Event Fields for Event 21 - SET PARTICIPANT DISPLAY NAME”, on page C-42.</p>
22	<i>DTMF CODE FAILURE</i>	<p>An error occurred when a participant entered a DTMF code.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-23, “Event Fields for Event 22 - DTMF CODE FAILURE”, on page C-43.</p>

Table C-2 CDR Event Types (Continued)

Event Code	Event Name	Description
23	<i>SIP PARTICIPANT CONNECTED</i>	<p>A SIP participant connected to the conference.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-18, “<i>Event Fields for Events 17, 23 - H323 PARTICIPANT CONNECTED, SIP PARTICIPANT CONNECTED</i>”, on page C-36.</p>
26	<i>RECORDING LINK</i>	<p>A recording event, such as recording started or recording resumed, occurred.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-24, “<i>Event fields for Event 26 - RECORDING LINK</i>”, on page C-43.</p>
28	<i>SIP PRIVATE EXTENSIONS</i>	<p>Contains SIP Private Extensions information.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-25, “<i>Event Fields for Event 28 - SIP PRIVATE EXTENSIONS</i>”, on page C-44.</p>
30	<i>GATEKEEPER INFORMATION</i>	<p>Contains the gatekeeper caller ID, which makes it possible to match the CDR in the gatekeeper and in the MCU.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-26, “<i>Event Fields for Event 30 - GATEKEEPER INFORMATION</i>”, on page C-45.</p>
31	<i>PARTICIPANT CONNECTION RATE</i>	<p>Information about the line rate of the participant connection. This event is added to the CDR file each time the endpoint changes its connection bit rate. For more information about the fields, see Table C-27, “<i>Event fields for Event 31 - PARTICIPANT CONNECTION RATE</i>”, on page C-45.</p>

Table C-2 CDR Event Types (Continued)

Event Code	Event Name	Description
100	<i>USER TERMINATE CONFERENCE</i>	A user terminated the conference. For more information about the fields, see Table C-28, “Event Fields for Event 100 - <i>USER TERMINATE CONFERENCE</i> ”, on page C-45 .
101	<i>USER ADD PARTICIPANT</i>	A user added a participant to the conference during the conference. For more information about the fields, see Table C-14, “Event Fields for Events 10, 101, 105 - <i>DEFINED PARTICIPANT, USER ADD PARTICIPANT, USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT</i> ”, on page C-29 .
102	<i>USER DELETE PARTICIPANT</i>	A user deleted a participant from the conference. For more information about the fields, see Table C-29, “Event Fields for Events 102, 103, 104 - <i>USER DELETE PARTICIPANT, USER DISCONNECT PARTICIPANT, USER RECONNECT PARTICIPANT</i> ”, on page C-46 .
103	<i>USER DISCONNECT PARTICIPANT</i>	A user disconnected a participant. For more information about the fields, see Table C-29, “Event Fields for Events 102, 103, 104 - <i>USER DELETE PARTICIPANT, USER DISCONNECT PARTICIPANT, USER RECONNECT PARTICIPANT</i> ”, on page C-46 .
104	<i>USER RECONNECT PARTICIPANT</i>	A user reconnected a participant who was disconnected from the conference. For more information about the fields, see Table C-29, “Event Fields for Events 102, 103, 104 - <i>USER DELETE PARTICIPANT, USER DISCONNECT PARTICIPANT, USER RECONNECT PARTICIPANT</i> ”, on page C-46 .

Table C-2 CDR Event Types (Continued)

Event Code	Event Name	Description
105	<i>USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT</i>	<p>A user updated the properties of a participant during the conference.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-14, “<i>Event Fields for Events 10, 101, 105 - DEFINED PARTICIPANT, USER ADD PARTICIPANT, USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT</i>”, on page C-29.</p>
106	<i>USER SET END TIME</i>	<p>A user modified the conference end time.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-30, “<i>Event Fields for Event 106 - USER SET END TIME</i>”, on page C-46.</p>
1001	<i>NEW UNDEFINED PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1</i>	<p>Additional information about a NEW UNDEFINED PARTICIPANT event.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-20, “<i>Event Fields for Event 1001 - NEW UNDEFINED PARTY CONTINUE 1</i>”, on page C-42.</p>
2001	<i>CONFERENCE START CONTINUE 1</i>	<p>Additional information about a CONFERENCE START event.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-4, “<i>Event Fields for Event 2001 - CONFERENCE START CONTINUE 1</i>”, on page C-17.</p>
2007	<i>PARTICIPANT DISCONNECTED CONTINUE 1</i>	<p>Additional information about a PARTICIPANT DISCONNECTED event.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-13, “<i>Event Fields for Event 2007 - PARTICIPANT DISCONNECTED CONTINUE 1</i>”, on page C-28.</p>

Table C-2 CDR Event Types (Continued)

Event Code	Event Name	Description
2010	<i>DEFINED PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1</i>	<p>Additional information about a DEFINED PARTICIPANT event.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-15, “Event Fields for Events 2010, 2101, 2105 - DEFINED PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1, USER ADD PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1, USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1”, on page C-32.</p>
2011	<i>DEFINED PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 2</i>	<p>Additional information about a DEFINED PARTICIPANT event.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-16, “Event Fields for Event 2011 - DEFINED PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 2, Event 2102 - USER ADD PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 2, Event 2106 - USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 2”, on page C-34.</p>
2101	<i>USER ADD PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1</i>	<p>Additional information about a USER ADD PARTICIPANT event.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-15, “Event Fields for Events 2010, 2101, 2105 - DEFINED PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1, USER ADD PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1, USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1”, on page C-32.</p>
2102	<i>USER ADD PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 2</i>	<p>Additional information about a USER ADD PARTICIPANT event.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-16, “Event Fields for Event 2011 - DEFINED PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 2, Event 2102 - USER ADD PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 2, Event 2106 - USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 2”, on page C-34.</p>

Table C-2 CDR Event Types (Continued)

Event Code	Event Name	Description
2105	<i>USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1</i>	<p>Additional information about a USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT event.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-15, “<i>Event Fields for Events 2010, 2101, 2105 - DEFINED PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1, USER ADD PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1, USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1</i>”, on page C-32.</p>
2106	<i>USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 2</i>	<p>Additional information about a USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT event.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-16, “<i>Event Fields for Event 2011 - DEFINED PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 2, Event 2102 - USER ADD PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 2, Event 2106 - USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 2</i>”, on page C-34.</p>
3010	<i>PARTICIPANT INFORMATION</i>	<p>The contents of the participant information fields.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-31, “<i>Event Fields for Event 3010 - PARTICIPANT INFORMATION</i>”, on page C-46.</p>

Table C-2 CDR Event Types (Continued)

Event Code	Event Name	Description
5001	CONFERENCE START CONTINUE 4	<p>Additional information about a CONFERENCE START event.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-5, “Event Fields for Event 5001 - CONFERENCE START CONTINUE 4”, on page C-20.</p> <p>Note: An additional CONFERENCE START CONTINUE 4 event will be written to the CDR each time the value of one of the following conference fields is modified:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Conference Password • Chairperson Password • Info1, Info2 or Info3 • Billing Info <p>These additional events will only contain the value of the modified field.</p>
6001	CONFERENCE START CONTINUE 5	<p>Additional information about a CONFERENCE START event.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-6, “Event Fields for Event 6001 - CONFERENCE START CONTINUE 5”, on page C-21.</p>
11001	CONFERENCE START CONTINUE 10	<p>Additional information about a CONFERENCE START event. This event contains the Display Name.</p> <p>For more information about the fields, see Table C-7, “Event Fields for Event 11001 - CONFERENCE START CONTINUE 10”, on page C-21</p>



This list only includes events that are supported by the RMX 2000. For a list of MGC Manager events that are not supported by the RMX 2000, see “MGC Manager Events that are not Supported by the RMX 2000” on page [C-51](#).

Event Specific Fields

The following tables describe the fields which are specific to each type of event.



Some fields that were supported by the MGC Manager, are not supported by the RMX 2000. In addition, for some fields the RMX 2000 has a fixed value, whereas the MGC Manager supported multiple values. For more information about the MGC Manager fields and values, see the *MGC Manager User's Guide Volume II, Appendix A*.

Table C-3 Event Fields for Event 1 - CONFERENCE START

Field	Description
<i>Dial-Out Manually</i>	Indicates whether the conference was a dial-out manually conference or not. Currently the only value is: 0 - The conference was <i>not</i> a dial-out manually conference, that is, the MCU initiates the communication with dial-out participants, and the user does not need to connect them manually.
<i>Auto Terminate</i>	Indicates whether the conference was set to end automatically if no participant joins the conference for a predefined time period after the conference starts, or if all participants disconnect from the conference and the conference is empty for a predefined time period. Possible values are: 0 - The conference was <i>not</i> set to end automatically. 1 - The conference was set to end automatically.
<i>Line Rate</i>	The conference line rate, as follows: 0 - 64 kbps 6 - 384 kbps 12 - 1920 kbps 13 - 128 kbps 15 - 256 kbps 23 - 512 kbps 24 - 768 kbps 26 - 1152 kbps 29 - 1472 kbps 32 - 96 kbps

Table C-3 Event Fields for Event 1 - CONFERENCE START (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Line Rate (cont.)</i>	33 - 1024 kbps 34 - 4096 kbps
<i>Restrict Mode</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Audio Algorithm</i>	The audio algorithm. Currently the only value is: 255 - Auto
<i>Video Session</i>	The video session type. Currently the only value is: 3 - Continuous Presence
<i>Video Format</i>	The video format. Currently the only value is: 255 - Auto
<i>CIF Frame Rate</i>	The CIF frame rate. Currently the only value is: 255 -Auto
<i>QCIF Frame Rate</i>	The QCIF frame rate: Currently the only value is: 255 - Auto
<i>LSD Rate</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>HSD Rate</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>T120 Rate</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .

Table C-4 *Event Fields for Event 2001 - CONFERENCE START*
CONTINUE 1

Field	Description
<i>Audio Tones</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Alert Tone</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Talk Hold Time</i>	The minimum time that a speaker has to speak to become the video source. The value is in units of 0.01 seconds. Currently the only value is 150 , which indicates a talk hold time of 1.5 seconds.
<i>Audio Mix Depth</i>	The maximum number of participants whose audio can be mixed. Currently the only value is 5 .
<i>Operator Conference</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Video Protocol</i>	The video protocol. Currently the only value is: 255 - Auto
<i>Meet Me Per Conference</i>	Indicates the Meet Me Per Conference setting. Currently the only value is: 1 - The Meet Me Per Conference option is enabled, and dial-in participants can join the conference by dialing the dial-in number.
<i>Number of Network Services</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Chairperson Password</i>	The chairperson password for the conference. An empty field "" means that no chairperson password was assigned to the conference.
<i>Chair Mode</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .

Table C-4 Event Fields for Event 2001 - CONFERENCE START
CONTINUE 1 (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Cascade Mode</i>	The cascading mode. Currently the only value is: 0 - None
<i>Master Name</i>	Not supported. This field remains empty.
<i>Minimum Number of Participants</i>	The number of participants for which the system reserved resources. Additional participants may join the conference without prior reservation until all the resources are utilized. Currently the only value is 0 .
<i>Allow Undefined Participants</i>	Indicates whether or not undefined dial-in participants can connect to the conference. Currently the only value is: 1 - Undefined participants can connect to the conference
<i>Time Before First Participant Joins</i>	Note: This field is only relevant if the Auto Terminate option is enabled. Indicates the number of minutes that should elapse from the time the conference starts, without any participant connecting to the conference, before the conference is automatically terminated by the MCU.
<i>Time After Last Participant Quits</i>	Note: This field is only relevant if the Auto Terminate option is enabled. Indicates the number of minutes that should elapse after the last participant has disconnected from the conference, before the conference is automatically terminated by the MCU.
<i>Conference Lock Flag</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .

Table C-4 *Event Fields for Event 2001 - CONFERENCE START*
CONTINUE 1 (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Maximum Number of Participants</i>	The maximum number of participants that can connect to the conference at one time. The value 65535 (auto) indicates that as many participants as the MCU's resources allow can connect to the conference, up to the maximum possible for the type of conference.
<i>Audio Board ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 65535 .
<i>Audio Unit ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 65535 .
<i>Video Board ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 65535 .
<i>Video Unit ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 65535 .
<i>Data Board ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 65535 .
<i>Data Unit ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 65535 .
<i>Message Service Type</i>	The Message Service type. Currently the only value is: 3 - IVR
<i>Conference IVR Service</i>	The name of the IVR Service assigned to the conference. Note: If the name of the IVR Service contains more than 20 characters, it will be truncated to 20 characters.
<i>Lecture Mode Type</i>	Indicates the type of Lecture Mode, as follows: 0 - None 1 - Lecture Mode 3 - Presentation Mode

Table C-4 Event Fields for Event 2001 - CONFERENCE START
CONTINUE 1 (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Lecturer</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant if the Lecture Mode Type is Lecture Mode.</p> <p>The name of the participant selected as the conference lecturer.</p>
<i>Time Interval</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant if Lecturer View Switching is enabled.</p> <p>The number of seconds a participant is to be displayed in the lecturer window before switching to the next participant.</p> <p>Currently the only value is 15.</p>
<i>Lecturer View Switching</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant when Lecture Mode is enabled.</p> <p>Indicates the lecturer view switching setting, as follows: 0 - Automatic switching between participants is disabled. 1 - Automatic switching between participants is enabled.</p>
<i>Audio Activated</i>	<p>Not supported.</p> <p>Always contains the value 0.</p>
<i>Lecturer ID</i>	<p>Not supported.</p> <p>Always contains the value 4294967295.</p>

Table C-5 Event Fields for Event 5001 - CONFERENCE START
CONTINUE 4

Field	Description
<p>Note: When this event occurs as the result of a change to the value of one of the event fields, the event will only contain the value of the modified field. All other fields will be empty.</p>	
<i>Conference ID</i>	The conference ID.

Table C-5 Event Fields for Event 5001 - CONFERENCE START
CONTINUE 4 (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Conference Password</i>	The conference password. An empty field "" means that no conference password was assigned to the conference.
<i>Chairperson Password</i>	The chairperson password. An empty field "" means that no chairperson password was assigned to the conference.
<i>Info1 Info2 Info3</i>	The contents of the conference information fields. These fields enable users to enter general information for the conference, such as the company name, and the contact person's name and telephone number. The maximum length of each field is 80 characters.
<i>Billing Info</i>	The billing code.

Table C-6 Event Fields for Event 6001 - CONFERENCE START CONTINUE 5

	Description
<i>Encryption</i>	Indicates the conference encryption setting, as follows: 0 - The conference is <i>not</i> encrypted. 1 - The conference is encrypted.

Table C-7 Event Fields for Event 11001 - CONFERENCE START
CONTINUE 10

	Description
<i>Display Name</i>	The Display Name of the conference.

Table C-8 Event Fields for Event 2 - CONFERENCE END

	Description
<i>Conference End Cause</i>	<p>Indicates the reason for the termination of the conference, as follows:</p> <p>1 - The conference is an ongoing conference or the conference was terminated by an MCU reset.</p> <p>2 - The conference was terminated by a user.</p> <p>3 - The conference ended at the scheduled end time.</p> <p>4 - The conference ended automatically because no participants joined the conference for a predefined time period, or all the participants disconnected from the conference and the conference was empty for a predefined time period.</p> <p>5 - The conference never started.</p> <p>6 - The conference could not start due to a problem.</p> <p>8 - An unknown error occurred.</p> <p>9 - The conference was terminated by a participant using DTMF codes.</p>

Table C-9 Event fields for Event 3 - ISDN/PSTN CHANNEL CONNECTED

Field	Description
<i>Participant Name</i>	The name of the participant.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the participant by the MCU.
<i>Channel ID</i>	The channel identifier.
<i>Number of Channels</i>	The number of channels being connected for this participant.
<i>Connect Initiator</i>	<p>Indicates who initiated the connection, as follows:</p> <p>0 - RMX</p> <p>1 - Participant</p> <p>Any other number - Unknown</p>

Table C-9 Event fields for Event 3 - ISDN/PSTN CHANNEL CONNECTED (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Call Type</i>	The call type, as follows: 68 - 56 Kbs data call 72 - 1536kbs data call (PRI only) 75 - 56 Kbs data call 77 - Modem data service 79 - 384kbs data call (PRI only) 86 - Normal voice call
<i>Network Service Program</i>	The Network Service program, as follows: 0 - None 1 - ATT_SDN or NTI_PRIVATE 3 - ATT_MEGACOM or NTI_OUTWATS 4 - NTI FX 5 - NTI TIE TRUNK 6 - ATT ACCUNET 8 - ATT 1800 16 - NTI_TRO
<i>Preferred Mode</i>	The value of the preferred/exclusive field for B channel selection (the PRF mode), as follows: 0 - None 1 - Preferred 2 - Exclusive For more details refer to the Q.931 standard.
<i>Calling Participant Number Type</i>	The type of calling number, as follows: 0 - Unknown, default 1 - International 2 - National 3 - Network specific 4 - Subscriber 6 - Abbreviated
<i>Calling Participant Number Plan</i>	The calling participant number plan. 0 - Unknown 1 - ISDN/PSTN 9 - Private

Table C-9 Event fields for Event 3 - ISDN/PSTN CHANNEL
CONNECTED (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Calling Participant Presentation Indicator</i>	The calling participant presentation indicator, as follows: 0 - Presentation allowed, default 1 - Presentation restricted 2 - Number not available 255 - Unknown
<i>Calling Participant Screening Indicator</i>	The calling participant screening indicator, as follows: 0 - Participant not screened, default 1 - Participant verification succeeded 2 - Participant verification failed 3 - Network provided 255 - Unknown
<i>Calling Participant Phone Number</i>	The telephone number used for dial-in.
<i>Called Participant Number Type</i>	The type of number called, as follows: 0 - Unknown, default 1 - International 2 - National 3 - Network specific 4 - Subscriber 6 - Abbreviated
<i>Called Participant Number Plan</i>	The called participant number plan, as follows: 0 - Unknown 1 - ISDN/PSTN 9 - Private
<i>Called Participant Phone Number</i>	The telephone number used for dial-out.

Table C-10 Event fields for Event 4 - ISDN/PSTN CHANNEL DISCONNECTED

	Description
<i>Participant Name</i>	The participant name.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the participant by the MCU.
<i>Channel ID</i>	The channel identifier.
<i>Disconnect Initiator</i>	Indicates who initiated the disconnection, as follows: 0 - RMX 1 - Participant Any other number - Unknown
<i>Disconnect Coding Standard</i>	The disconnection cause code standard. For values and explanations, see the Q.931 Standard.
<i>Disconnect Location</i>	The disconnection cause location. For values and explanations, see the Q.931 Standard.
<i>Q931 Disconnection Cause</i>	The disconnection cause value. For values and explanations, see the Q.931 Standard.

Table C-11 Event fields for Event 5 - ISDN/PSTN PARTICIPANT CONNECTED

Field	Description
<i>Participant Name</i>	The name of the participant.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the participant by the MCU.

Table C-11 Event fields for Event 5 - ISDN/PSTN PARTICIPANT CONNECTED (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Participant Status</i>	<p>The participant status, as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 - Idle 1 - Connected 2 - Disconnected 3 - Waiting for dial-in 4 - Connecting 5 - Disconnecting 6 - Partially connected. Party has completed H.221 capability exchange 7 - Deleted by a user 8 - Secondary. The participant could not connect the video channels and is connected via audio only 10 - Connected with problem 11 - Redialing
<i>Remote Capabilities</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to ISDN video participants.</p> <p>The remote capabilities in H.221 format.</p>
<i>Remote Communication Mode</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to ISDN video participants.</p> <p>The remote communication mode in H.221 format.</p>
<i>Secondary Cause</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to ISDN video participants and only if the Participant Status is Secondary.</p> <p>The cause for the secondary connection (not being able to connect the video channels), as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 - Default 11 - The incoming video parameters are not compatible with the conference video parameters 12 - H.323 card failure 13 - The conference video settings are not compatible with the endpoint capabilities 14 - The new conference settings are not compatible with the endpoint capabilities

Table C-11 Event fields for Event 5 - ISDN/PSTN PARTICIPANT CONNECTED (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Secondary Cause (cont.)</i>	<p>15 - Video stream violation due to incompatible annexes or other discrepancy.</p> <p>16 - Inadequate video resources</p> <p>17 - When moved to a Transcoding or Video Switching conference, the participant's video capabilities are not supported by the video cards</p> <p>18 - Video connection could not be established</p> <p>24 - The endpoint closed its video channels</p> <p>25 - The participant video settings are not compatible with the conference protocol</p> <p>26 - The endpoint could not re-open the video channel after the conference video mode was changed</p> <p>27 - The gatekeeper approved a lower bandwidth than requested</p> <p>28 - Video connection for the SIP participant is temporarily unavailable</p> <p>29 - AVF problem. Insufficient bandwidth.</p> <p>30 - H2.39 bandwidth mismatch</p> <p>255 - Other</p>

Table C-12 Event Fields for Event 7 - PARTICIPANT DISCONNECTED

	Description
<i>Participant Name</i>	The name of the participant.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the participant by the MCU.
<i>Call Disconnection Cause</i>	The disconnection cause. For more information about possible values, see Table C-32, "Disconnection Cause Values", on page C-47 .
<i>Q931 Disconnect Cause</i>	If the disconnection cause is "No Network Connection" or "Participant Hang Up", then this field indicates the Q931 disconnect cause.

Table C-13 *Event Fields for Event 2007 - PARTICIPANT DISCONNECTED*
CONTINUE 1

Field	Description
<i>Rx Synchronization Loss</i>	The number of times that the general synchronization of the MCU was lost.
<i>Tx Synchronization Loss</i>	The number of times that the general synchronization of the participant was lost.
<i>Rx Video Synchronization Loss</i>	The number of times that the synchronization of the MCU video unit was lost.
<i>Tx Video Synchronization Loss</i>	The number of times that the synchronization of the participant video was lost.
<i>Mux Board ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Mux Unit ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Audio Codec Board ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Audio Codec Unit ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Audio Bridge Board ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Audio Bridge Unit ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Video Board ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Video Unit ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>T.120 Board ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .

Table C-13 Event Fields for Event 2007 - PARTICIPANT DISCONNECTED
CONTINUE 1

Field	Description
<i>T.120 Unit ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>T.120 MCS Board ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>T.120 MCS Unit ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>H.323 Board ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>H323 Unit ID</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .

Table C-14 Event Fields for Events 10, 101, 105 - DEFINED PARTICIPANT,
USER ADD PARTICIPANT,
USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT

Field	Description
<i>User Name</i>	The login name of the user who added the participant to the conference, or updated the participant properties.
<i>Participant Name</i>	The name of the participant.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the participant by the MCU.
<i>Dialing Direction</i>	The dialing direction, as follows: 0 - Dial-out 5 - Dial-in
<i>Bonding Mode</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .

Table C-14 Event Fields for Events 10, 101, 105 - DEFINED PARTICIPANT, USER ADD PARTICIPANT, USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Number Of Channels</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to ISDN/PSTN participants.</p> <p>The number of channels being connected for this participant.</p>
<i>Net Channel Width</i>	<p>Not supported.</p> <p>Always contains the value 0.</p>
<i>Network Service Name</i>	<p>The name of the Network Service.</p> <p>An empty field "" indicates the default Network Service.</p>
<i>Restrict</i>	<p>Not supported.</p> <p>Always contains the value 0.</p>
<i>Audio Only</i>	<p>Indicates the participant's Audio Only setting, as follows:</p> <p>0 - The participant is <i>not</i> an Audio Only participant</p> <p>1 - The participant is an Audio Only participant</p> <p>255 - Unknown</p>
<i>Default Number Type</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to ISDN/PSTN participants.</p> <p>The type of telephone number, as follows:</p> <p>0 - Unknown</p> <p>1 - International</p> <p>2 - National</p> <p>3 - Network specific</p> <p>4 - Subscriber</p> <p>6 - Abbreviated</p> <p>255 - Taken from Network Service, default</p> <p>Note: For dial-in participants, the only possible value is:</p> <p>255 - Taken from Network Service</p>
<i>Net Sub-Service Name</i>	<p>Not supported.</p> <p>This field remains empty.</p>

Table C-14 Event Fields for Events 10, 101, 105 - DEFINED PARTICIPANT, USER ADD PARTICIPANT, USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Number of Participant Phone Numbers</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to ISDN/PSTN participants.</p> <p>The number of participant phone numbers.</p> <p>In a dial-in connection, the participant phone number is the CLI (Calling Line Identification) as identified by the MCU.</p> <p>In a dial-out connection, participant phone numbers are the phone numbers dialed by the MCU for each participant channel.</p>
<i>Number of MCU Phone Numbers</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to ISDN/PSTN participants.</p> <p>The number of MCU phone numbers.</p> <p>In a dial-in connection, the MCU phone number is the number dialed by the participant to connect to the MCU.</p> <p>In a dial-out connection, the MCU phone number is the MCU (CLI) number as seen by the participant.</p>
<i>Party and MCU Phone Numbers</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to ISDN/PSTN participants.</p> <p>No, one or more fields, one field for each participant and MCU phone number.</p> <p>The participant phone numbers are listed first, followed by the MCU phone numbers.</p>
<i>Identification Method</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to dial-in participants.</p> <p>The method by which the destination conference is identified, as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 - Called phone number, IP address or alias 2 - Calling phone number, IP address or alias
<i>Meet Me Method</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to dial-in participants.</p> <p>The meet-me per method. Currently the only value is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 3 - Meet-me per participant

Table C-15 *Event Fields for Events 2010, 2101, 2105 - DEFINED PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1, USER ADD PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1, USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1*

Field	Description
<i>Network Type</i>	The type of network between the participant and the MCU, as follows: 0 - ISDN/PSTN 2 - H.323 5 - SIP
<i>H.243 Password</i>	Not supported. This field remains empty.
<i>Chair</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Video Protocol</i>	The video protocol used by the participant, as follows: 1 - H.261 2 - H.263 4 - H.264 255 - Auto
<i>Broadcasting Volume</i>	The broadcasting volume assigned to the participant. The value is between 1 (lowest) and 10 (loudest). Each unit movement increases or decreases the volume by 3 dB .
<i>Undefined Participant</i>	Indicates whether are not the participant is an undefined participant, as follows: 0 - The participant is <i>not</i> an undefined participant. 2 - The participant is an undefined participant.
<i>Node Type</i>	The node type, as follows: 0 - MCU 1 - Terminal

Table C-15 Event Fields for Events 2010, 2101, 2105 - DEFINED PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1, USER ADD PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1, USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1 (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Bonding Phone Number</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to ISDN/PSTN participants.</p> <p>The phone number for Bonding dial-out calls. Bonding is a communication protocol that aggregates from two up to thirty 64 Kbps B channels together, to look like one large bandwidth channel.</p>
<i>Video Bit Rate</i>	<p>The video bit rate in units of kilobits per second. A value of 4294967295 denotes auto, and in this case, the rate is computed by the MCU.</p>
<i>IP Address</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to IP participants.</p> <p>The IP address of the participant. An address of 4294967295 indicates that no IP address was specified for the participant, and the gatekeeper is used for routing. In all other cases the address overrides the gatekeeper.</p>
<i>Signaling Port</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to IP participants.</p> <p>The signaling port used for participant connection.</p>
<i>H.323 Participant Alias Type/SIP Participant Address Type</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to IP participants.</p> <p>For H.323 participants, the alias type, as follows: 7 - E164 8 - H.323 ID 13 - Email ID 14 - Participant number</p> <p>For SIP participants, the address type, as follows: 1 - SIP URI 2 - Tel URL</p>

Table C-15 Event Fields for Events 2010, 2101, 2105 - DEFINED PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1, USER ADD PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1, USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 1 (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>H.323 Participant Alias Name/SIP Participant Address</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to IP participants.</p> <p>For H.323 participants: The participant alias. The alias may contain up to 512 characters.</p> <p>For SIP participants: The participant address. The address may contain up to 80 characters.</p>

Table C-16 Event Fields for Event 2011 - DEFINED PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 2, Event 2102 - USER ADD PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 2, Event 2106 - USER UPDATE PARTICIPANT CONTINUE 2

	Description
<i>Encryption</i>	<p>Indicates the participant's encryption setting as follows:</p> <p>0 - The participant is <i>not</i> encrypted.</p> <p>1 - The participant is encrypted.</p> <p>2 - Auto. The conference encryption setting is applied to the participant.</p>
<i>Participant Name</i>	The name of the participant.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the participant by the MCU.

Table C-17 Event fields for Event 15 - H323 CALL SETUP

Field	Description
<i>Participant Name</i>	The name of the participant.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the participant by the MCU.
<i>Connect Initiator</i>	Indicates who initiated the connection, as follows: 0 - MCU 1 - Remote participant Any other number - Unknown
<i>Min Rate</i>	The minimum line rate used by the participant. The data in this field should be ignored. For accurate rate information, see CDR event 31.
<i>Max Rate</i>	The maximum line rate achieved by the participant. The data in this field should be ignored. For accurate rate information, see CDR event 31.
<i>Source Party Address</i>	The IP address of the calling participant. A string of up to 255 characters.
<i>Destination Party Address</i>	The IP address of the called participant. A string of up to 255 characters.
<i>Endpoint Type</i>	The endpoint type, as follows: 0 - Terminal 1 - Gateway 2 - MCU 3 - Gatekeeper 4 - Undefined

Table C-18 Event Fields for Events 17, 23 - H323 PARTICIPANT CONNECTED, SIP PARTICIPANT CONNECTED

Field	Description
<i>Participant Name</i>	The name of the participant. An empty field "" denotes an unidentified participant or a participant whose name is unspecified.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the participant by the MCU.
<i>Participant Status</i>	The participant status, as follows: 0 - Idle 1 - Connected 2 - Disconnected 3 - Waiting for dial-in 4 - Connecting 5 - Disconnecting 6 - Partially connected. Party has completed H.221 capability exchange 7 - Deleted by a user 8 - Secondary. The participant could not connect the video channels and is connected via audio only 10 - Connected with problem 11 - Redialing
<i>Capabilities</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Remote Communication Mode</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .

Table C-18 Event Fields for Events 17, 23 - H323 PARTICIPANT CONNECTED, SIP PARTICIPANT CONNECTED (Continued)

Field	Description
Secondary Cause	<p>Note: This field is only relevant if the Participant Status is Secondary.</p> <p>The cause for the secondary connection (not being able to connect the video channels), as follows:</p> <p>0 - Default.</p> <p>11 - The incoming video parameters are not compatible with the conference video parameters</p> <p>13 - The conference video settings are not compatible with the endpoint capabilities</p> <p>14 - The new conference settings are not compatible with the endpoint capabilities</p> <p>15 - Video stream violation due to incompatible annexes or other discrepancy</p> <p>16 - Inadequate video resources</p> <p>17 - When moved to a Transcoding or Video Switching conference, the participant's video capabilities are not supported by the video cards</p> <p>18 - Video connection could not be established</p> <p>24 - The endpoint closed its video channels</p> <p>25 - The participant video settings are not compatible with the conference protocol</p> <p>26 - The endpoint could not re-open the video channel after the conference video mode was changed</p> <p>27 - The gatekeeper approved a lower bandwidth than requested</p> <p>28 - Video connection for the SIP participant is temporarily unavailable</p> <p>255 - Other</p>

Table C-19 Event Fields for Event 18 - NEW UNDEFINED PARTICIPANT

Field	Description
<i>Participant Name</i>	The name of the participant.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the participant by the MCU.
<i>Dialing Direction</i>	The dialing direction, as follows 0 - Dial-out 5 - Dial-in
<i>Bonding Mode</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Number of Channels</i>	Note: This field is only relevant to ISDN/PSTN participants. The number of channels being connected for this participant.
<i>Net Channel Width</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Network Service Name</i>	The name of the Network Service. An empty field "" indicates the default Network Service.
<i>Restrict</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Audio Only</i>	Indicates the participant's Audio Only setting, as follows: 0 - The participant is <i>not</i> an Audio Only participant 1 - The participant is an Audio Only participant 255 - Unknown
<i>Default Number Type</i>	Note: This field is only relevant to ISDN/PSTN participants. The type of telephone number. Note: Since undefined participants are always dial-in participants, the only possible value is: 255 - Taken from Network Service

Table C-19 Event Fields for Event 18 - NEW UNDEFINED PARTICIPANT
(Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Net Sub-Service Name</i>	Not supported. This field remains empty.
<i>Number of Participant Phone Numbers</i>	Note: This field is only relevant to ISDN/PSTN participants. The number of participant phone numbers. The participant phone number is the CLI (Calling Line Identification) as identified by the MCU.
<i>Number of MCU Phone Numbers</i>	Note: This field is only relevant to ISDN/PSTN participants. The number of MCU phone numbers. The MCU phone number is the number dialed by the participant to connect to the MCU.
<i>Party and MCU Phone Numbers</i>	Note: This field is only relevant to ISDN/PSTN participants. No, one or more fields, one field for each participant and MCU phone number. The participant phone numbers are listed first, followed by the MCU phone numbers.
<i>Identification Method</i>	Note: This field is only relevant to dial-in participants. The method by which the destination conference is identified, as follows: 1 - Called phone number, IP address or alias 2 - Calling phone number, IP address or alias
<i>Meet Me Method</i>	Note: This field is only relevant to dial-in participants. The meet-me per method, as follows: 3 - Meet-me per participant
<i>Network Type</i>	The type of network between the participant and the MCU, as follows: 0 - ISDN/PSTN 2 - H.323 5 - SIP

Table C-19 Event Fields for Event 18 - NEW UNDEFINED PARTICIPANT
(Continued)

Field	Description
<i>H.243 Password</i>	Not supported. This field remains empty.
<i>Chair</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .
<i>Video Protocol</i>	The video protocol, as follows: 1 - H.261 2 - H.263 4 - H.264 255 - Auto
<i>Broadcasting Volume</i>	The broadcasting volume assigned to the participant. The value is between 1 (lowest) and 10 (loudest). Each unit movement increases or decreases the volume by 3 dB .
<i>Undefined Participant</i>	Indicates whether are not the participant is an undefined participant, as follows: 0 - The participant is <i>not</i> an undefined participant. 2 - The participant is an undefined participant.
<i>Node Type</i>	The node type, as follows: 0 - MCU 1 - Terminal
<i>Bonding Phone Number</i>	Note: This field is only relevant to ISDN/PSTN participants. The phone number for Bonding dial-out calls. Bonding is a communication protocol that aggregates from two up to thirty 64 Kbps B channels together, to look like one large bandwidth channel.
<i>Video Bit Rate</i>	The video bit rate in units of kilobits per second. A value of 4294967295 denotes auto, and in this case, the rate is computed by the MCU.

Table C-19 Event Fields for Event 18 - NEW UNDEFINED PARTICIPANT
(Continued)

Field	Description
<i>IP Address</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to IP participants.</p> <p>The IP address of the participant.</p> <p>An address of 4294967295 indicates that no IP address was specified for the participant, and the gatekeeper is used for routing. In all other cases the address overrides the gatekeeper.</p>
<i>Signaling Port</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to IP participants.</p> <p>The signaling port used for participant connection.</p> <p>A value of 65535 is ignored by MCU.</p>
<i>H.323 Participant Alias Type/SIP Participant Address Type</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to IP participants.</p> <p>For H.323 participants, the alias type, as follows:</p> <p>7 - E164</p> <p>8 - H.323 ID</p> <p>13 - Email ID</p> <p>14 - Participant number</p> <p>For SIP participants, the address type, as follows:</p> <p>1 - SIP URI</p> <p>2 - Tel URL</p>
<i>H.323 Participant Alias Name/SIP Participant Address</i>	<p>Note: This field is only relevant to IP participants.</p> <p>For H.323 participants:</p> <p>The participant alias.</p> <p>The alias may contain up to 512 characters.</p> <p>For SIP participants:</p> <p>The participant address.</p> <p>The address may contain up to 80 characters.</p>

Table C-20 Event Fields for Event 1001 - NEW UNDEFINED PARTY
CONTINUE 1

	Description
<i>Encryption</i>	Indicates the participant's encryption setting as follows: 0 - The participant is <i>not</i> encrypted. 1 - The participant is encrypted. 2 - Auto. The conference encryption setting is applied to the participant.
<i>Participant Name</i>	The name of the participant.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the participant by the MCU.

Table C-21 Event Fields for Event 20 - BILLING CODE

	Description
<i>Participant Name</i>	The name of the participant who added the billing code.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number, as assigned by the MCU, of the participant who added the billing code.
<i>Billing Info</i>	The numeric billing code that was added (32 characters).

Table C-22 Event Fields for Event 21 - SET PARTICIPANT DISPLAY NAME

	Description
<i>Participant Name</i>	The original name of the participant, for example, the name automatically assigned to an undefined participant, such as, "<conference name>_(000)".
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the participant by the MCU.
<i>Display Name</i>	The new name assigned to the participant by the user, or the name sent by the end point.

Table C-23 Event Fields for Event 22 - DTMF CODE FAILURE

	Description
<i>Participant Name</i>	The name of the participant.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the participant by the MCU.
<i>Incorrect Data</i>	The incorrect DTMF code entered by the participant, or an empty field "" if the participant did not press any key.
<i>Correct Data</i>	The correct DTMF code, if known.
<i>Failure Type</i>	The type of DTMF failure, as follows: 2 - The participant did not enter the correct conference password. 6 - The participant did not enter the correct chairperson password. 12 - The participant did not enter the correct Conference ID.

Table C-24 Event fields for Event 26 - RECORDING LINK

Field	Description
<i>Participant Name</i>	The name of the Recording Link participant.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the Recording Link participant by the MCU.
<i>Recording Operation</i>	The type of recording operation, as follows: 0 - Start recording 1 - Stop recording 2 - Pause recording 3 - Resume recording 4 - Recording ended 5 - Recording failed
<i>Initiator</i>	Not supported.

Table C-24 Event fields for Event 26 - RECORDING LINK (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>Recording Link Name</i>	The name of the Recording Link.
<i>Recording Link ID</i>	The Recording Link ID.
<i>Start Recording Policy</i>	The start recording policy, as follows: 1 - Start recording automatically as soon as the first participant connects to the conference. 2 - Start recording when requested by the conference chairperson via DTMF codes or from the RMX Web Client, or when the operator starts recording from the RMX Web Client.

Table C-25 Event Fields for Event 28 - SIP PRIVATE EXTENSIONS

	Description
<i>Participant Name</i>	The name of the participant.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The participant's identification number as assigned by the system.
<i>Called Participant ID</i>	The called participant ID.
<i>Asserted Identity</i>	The identity of the user sending a SIP message as it was verified by authentication.
<i>Charging Vector</i>	A collection of charging information.
<i>Preferred Identity</i>	The identity the user sending the SIP message wishes to be used for the P-Asserted-Header field that the trusted element will insert.

Table C-26 Event Fields for Event 30 - GATEKEEPER INFORMATION

	Description
<i>Participant Name</i>	The name of the participant.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the participant by the MCU.
<i>Gatekeeper Caller ID</i>	The caller ID in the gatekeeper records. This value makes it possible to match the CDR in the gatekeeper and in the MCU.

Table C-27 Event fields for Event 31 - PARTICIPANT CONNECTION RATE

Field	Description
<i>Participant Name</i>	The participant name.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the participant by the MCU.
<i>Participant Current Rate</i>	The participant line rate in Kbps.

Table C-28 Event Fields for Event 100 - USER TERMINATE CONFERENCE

	Description
<i>Terminated By</i>	The login name of the user who terminated the conference.

Table C-29 Event Fields for Events 102, 103, 104 - USER DELETE PARTICIPANT, USER DISCONNECT PARTICIPANT, USER RECONNECT PARTICIPANT

	Description
<i>User Name</i>	The login name of the user who reconnected the participant to the conference, or disconnected or deleted the participant from the conference.
<i>Participant Name</i>	The name of the participant reconnected to the conference, or disconnected or deleted from the conference.
<i>Participant ID</i>	The identification number assigned to the participant by the MCU.

Table C-30 Event Fields for Event 106 - USER SET END TIME

	Description
<i>New End Time</i>	The new conference end time set by the user, in GMT time.
<i>User Name</i>	The login name of the user who changed the conference end time.

Table C-31 Event Fields for Event 3010 - PARTICIPANT INFORMATION

	Description
<i>Info1</i> <i>Info2</i> <i>Info3</i> <i>Info4</i>	The participant information fields. These fields enable users to enter general information about the participant, such as the participant's e-mail address. The maximum length of each field is 80 characters.
<i>VIP</i>	Not supported. Always contains the value 0 .

Disconnection Cause Values



For an explanation of the disconnection causes, see *Appendix A: "Disconnection Causes"* on page [A-1](#).

Table C-32 *Disconnection Cause Values*

Value	Call Disconnection Cause
0	Unknown
1	Participant hung up
2	Disconnected by User
5	Resources deficiency
6	Password failure
20	H323 call close. No port left for audio
21	H323 call close. No port left for video
22	H323 call close. No port left for FECC
23	H323 call close. No control port left
25	H323 call close. No port left for video content
51	A common key exchange algorithm could not be established between the MCU and the remote device
53	Remote device did not open the encryption signaling channel
59	The remote devices' selected encryption algorithm does not match the local selected encryption algorithm
141	Called party not registered
145	Caller not registered
152	H323 call close. ARQ timeout
153	H323 call close. DRQ timeout
154	H323 call close. Alt Gatekeeper failure

Table C-32 *Disconnection Cause Values (Continued)*

Value	Call Disconnection Cause
191	H323 call close. Remote busy
192	H323 call close. Normal
193	H323 call close. Remote reject
194	H323 call close. Remote unreachable
195	H323 call close. Unknown reason
198	H323 call close. Small bandwidth
199	H323 call close. Gatekeeper failure
200	H323 call close. Gatekeeper reject ARQ
201	H323 call close. No port left
202	H323 call close. Gatekeeper DRQ
203	H323 call close. No destination IP value
204	H323 call close. Remote has not sent capability
205	H323 call close. Audio channels not open
207	H323 call close. Bad remote cap
208	H323 call close. Capabilities not accepted by remote
209	H323 failure
210	H323 call close. Remote stop responding
213	H323 call close. Master slave problem
251	SIP timer popped out
252	SIP card rejected channels
253	SIP capabilities don't match
254	SIP remote closed call
255	SIP remote cancelled call
256	SIP bad status

Table C-32 *Disconnection Cause Values (Continued)*

Value	Call Disconnection Cause
257	SIP remote stopped responding
258	SIP remote unreachable
259	SIP transport error
260	SIP bad name
261	SIP trans error TCP invite
300	SIP redirection 300
301	SIP moved permanently
302	SIP moved temporarily
305	SIP redirection 305
380	SIP redirection 380
400	SIP client error 400
401	SIP unauthorized
402	SIP client error 402
403	SIP forbidden
404	SIP not found
405	SIP client error 405
406	SIP client error 406
407	SIP client error 407
408	SIP request timeout
409	SIP client error 409
410	SIP gone
411	SIP client error 411
413	SIP client error 413
414	SIP client error 414

Table C-32 *Disconnection Cause Values (Continued)*

Value	Call Disconnection Cause
415	SIP unsupported media type
420	SIP client error 420
480	SIP temporarily not available
481	SIP client error 481
482	SIP client error 482
483	SIP client error 483
484	SIP client error 484
485	SIP client error 485
486	SIP busy here
487	SIP request terminated
488	SIP client error 488
500	SIP server error 500
501	SIP server error 501
502	SIP server error 502
503	SIP server error 503
504	SIP server error 504
505	SIP server error 505
600	SIP busy everywhere
603	SIP global failure 603
604	SIP global failure 604
606	SIP global failure 606

MGC Manager Events that are not Supported by the RMX 2000

The following MGC Manager events are not supported by the RMX 2000:



For details of these events see the *MGC Manager User's Guide Volume II, Appendix A*.

- Event 8 - REMOTE COM MODE
- Event 11 - ATM CHANNEL CONNECTED
- Event 12 - ATM CHANNEL DISCONNECTED
- Event 13 - MPI CHANNEL CONNECTED
- Event 14 - MPI CHANNEL DISCONNECTED
- Event 15 - H323 CALL SETUP
- Event 16 - H323 CLEAR INDICATION
- Event 24 - SIP CALL SETUP
- Event 25 - SIP CLEAR INDICATION
- Event 27 - RECORDING SYSTEM LINK
- Event 107 - OPERATOR MOVE PARTY FROM CONFERENCE
- Event 108 - OPERATOR MOVE PARTY TO CONFERENCE
- Event 109 - OPERATOR ATTEND PARTY
- Event 110 - OPERATOR ON HOLD PARTY
- Event 111 - OPERATOR BACK TO CONFERENCE PARTY
- Event 112 - OPERATOR ATTEND PARTY TO CONFERENCE
- Event 113 - CONFERENCE REMARKS
- Event 2108 - OPERATOR MOVE PARTY TO CONFERENCE
CONTINUE 1
- Event 3001 - CONFERENCE START CONTINUE 2
- Event 3108 - OPERATOR MOVE PARTY TO CONFERENCE
CONTINUE 2
- Event 4001 - CONFERENCE START CONTINUE 3

Appendix D

Ad Hoc Conferencing and External Database Authentication

The RMX Ad Hoc conferencing feature enables participants to start ongoing conferences on-the-fly, without prior definition when dialing an Ad Hoc-enabled Entry Queue. The created conference parameters are taken from the Profile assigned to the Ad Hoc-enabled Entry Queue.

Ad Hoc conferencing is available in two modes:

- **Ad Hoc Conferencing without Authentication**

Any participant can dial into an Entry Queue and initiate a new conference if the conference does not exist. This mode is usually used for the organization's internal Ad Hoc conferencing.

- Ad Hoc conferencing with external database authentication

In this mode, the participant's right to start a new conference is validated against a database.

The external database application can also be used to validate the participant's right to join an ongoing conference. Conference access authentication can be:

- Part of the Ad Hoc conferencing flow where the participants must be authorized before they can enter the conference created in the Ad Hoc flow.
- Independent of Ad Hoc conferencing where conference access is validated for all conferences running on the MCU regardless of the method in which the conference was started.

Ad Hoc Conferencing without Authentication

A participant dials in to an Ad Hoc-enabled Entry Queue and starts a new conference based on the Profile assigned to the Entry Queue. In this configuration, any participant connecting to the Entry Queue can start a new conference, and no security mechanism is applied. This mode is usually used in organizations where Ad Hoc conferences are started from within the network and without security breach.

Starting a conference uses the following method:

- 1 The participant dials in to the Ad Hoc-enabled Entry Queue.
- 2 The Conference ID is requested by the system.
- 3 The participant inputs a Conference ID via his/her endpoint remote control using DTMF codes.
- 4 The MCU checks whether a conference with the same Conference ID is running on the MCU. If there is such a conference, the participant is moved to that conference. If there is no ongoing conference with that Conference ID, the system creates a new conference, based on the Profile assigned to the Entry Queue, and connects this participant as the conference chairperson.

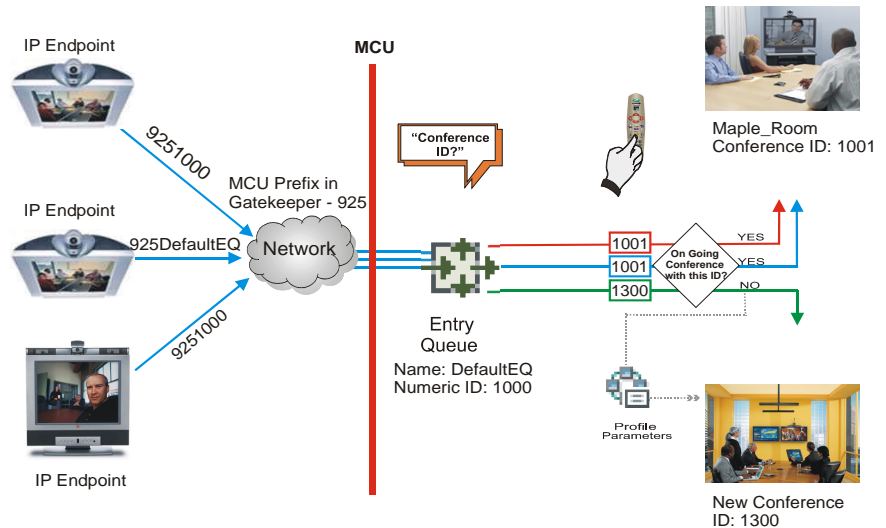


Figure D-1 Ad Hoc Conference Initiation without Authentication

To enable this workflow, the following components must be defined in the system:

- An Entry Queue IVR Service with the appropriate audio file requesting the Conference ID
- An Ad Hoc-enabled Entry Queue with an assigned Profile

Ad Hoc Conferencing with Authentication

The MCU can work with an external database application to validate the participant's right to start a new conference. The external database contains a list of participants, with their assigned parameters. The conference ID entered by the participant is compared against the database. If the system finds a match, the participant is granted the permission to start a new conference.

To work with an external database application to validate the participant's right to start a new conference, the Entry Queue IVR Service must be configured to use the external database application for authentication. In the external database application, you must define all participants (users) with rights to start a new conference using Ad Hoc conferencing. For each user defined in the database, you enter the conference ID, Conference Password (optional) and Chairperson Password (when applicable), billing code, Conference general information (corresponding to the User Defined 1 field in the Profile properties) and user's PIN code. The same user definitions can be used for conference access authentication, that is, to determine who can join the conference as a participant and who as a chairperson.

Entry Queue Level - Conference Initiation Validation with an External Database Application

Starting a new conference with external database application validation entails the following steps:

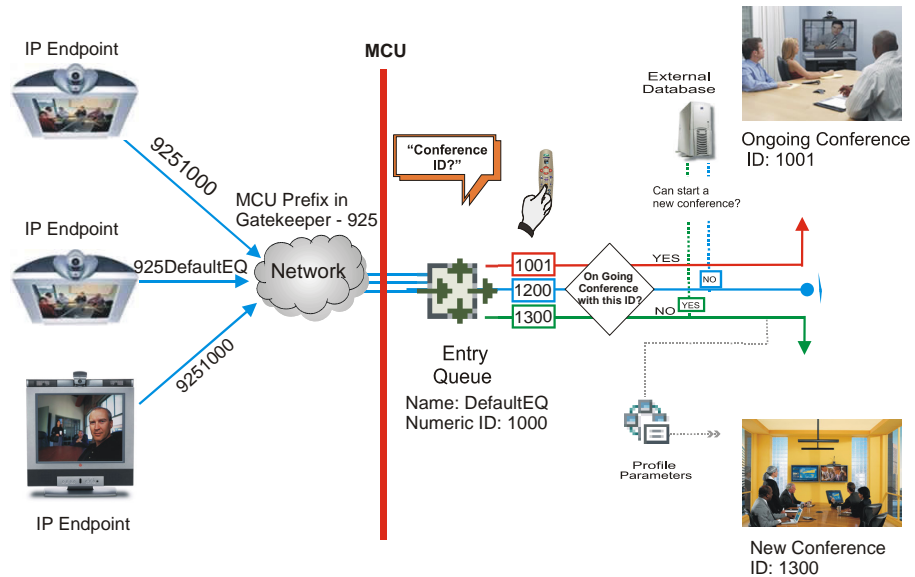


Figure D-2 Conference Initiation Validation with External Database Application

- 1** The participant dials in to an Ad Hoc-enabled Entry Queue.
- 2** The participant is requested to enter the Conference ID.
- 3** The participant enters the conference ID via his/her endpoint remote control using DTMF codes. If there is an ongoing conference with this Conference ID, the participant is moved to that conference where another authentication process can occur, depending on the IVR Service configuration.
- 4** If there is no ongoing conference with that Conference ID, the MCU verifies the Conference ID with the database application that compares it against its database. If the database application finds a match, the external database application sends a response back to the MCU, granting the participant the right to start a new ongoing conference.

If this Conference ID is not registered in the database, the conference cannot be started and this participant is disconnected from the Entry Queue.

- 5 The external database contains a list of participants (users), with their assigned parameters. Once a participant is identified in the database (according to the conference ID), his/her parameters (as defined in the database) can be sent to the MCU in the same response granting the participant the right to start a new ongoing conference. These parameters are:

- Conference Name
- Conference Billing code
- Conference Password
- Chairperson Password
- Conference Information, such as the contact person name. These fields correspond to Info 1, 2 and 3 fields in the *Conference Properties - Information* dialog box.
- Maximum number of participants allowed for the conference
- Conference Owner

These parameters can also be defined in the conference Profile. In such a case, parameters sent from the database overwrite the parameters defined in the Profile. If these parameters are not sent from the external database to the MCU, they will be taken from the Profile.

- 6 A new conference is started based on the Profile assigned to the Entry Queue.

- 7 The participant is moved to the conference.

If no password request is configured in the Conference IVR Service assigned to the conference, the participant that initiated the conference is directly connected to the conference, as its chairperson.

If the Conference IVR Service assigned to the conference is configured to prompt for the conference password and chairperson password, without external database authentication, the participant has to enter these passwords in order to join the conference.

To enable this workflow, the following components must be defined in the system:

- A Conference IVR Service with the appropriate prompts. If conference access is also validated with the external database

application it must be configured to access the external database for authentication.

- An Entry Queue IVR Service configured with the appropriate audio prompts requesting the Conference ID and configured to access the external database for authentication.
- Create a Profile with the appropriate conference parameters and the appropriate Conference IVR Service assigned to it.
- An Ad Hoc-enabled Entry Queue with the appropriate Entry Queue IVR Service and Conference Profile assigned to it.
- An external database application with a database containing Conference IDs associated with participants and their relevant properties.
- Define the flags required to access the external database in System Configuration. For more information, see "**MCU Configuration to Communicate with an External Database Application**" on page [D-13](#).

Conference Access with External Database Authentication

The MCU can work with an external database application to validate the participant's right to join an existing conference. The external database contains a list of participants, with their assigned parameters. The conference password or chairperson password entered by the participant is compared against the database. If the system finds a match, the participant is granted the permission to access the conference.

To work with an external database application to validate the participant's right to join the conference, the Conference IVR Service must be configured to use the external database application for authentication.

Conference access authentication can be performed as:

- Part of the Ad Hoc conferencing flow where the participants must be authorized before they can enter the conference created in the Ad Hoc flow
- Independent of Ad Hoc conferencing where conference access is validated for all conferences running on the MCU regardless of the method in which the conference was started.

Conference access authentication can be implemented for all participants joining the conference or for chairpersons only.

Conference Access Validation - All Participants (Always)

Once the conference is created either via an Ad Hoc Entry Queue, or a standard ongoing conference, the right to join the conference is authenticated with the external database application for all participants connecting to the conference.

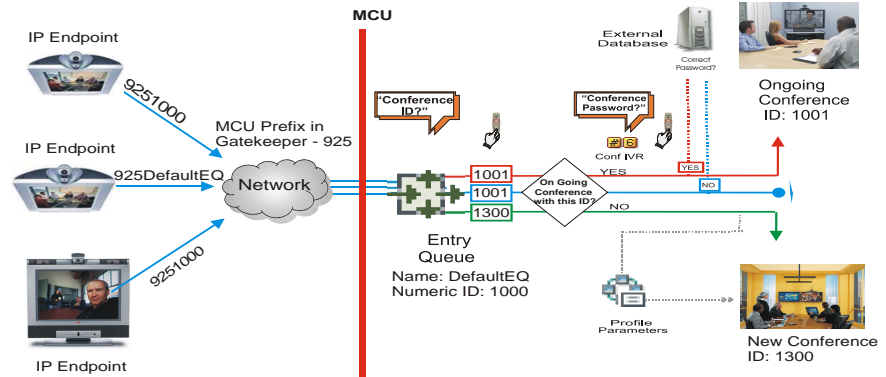


Figure D-3 Conference Access - Conference Password validation with External Database Application

Joining the conference entails the following steps:

- When the conference is started (either in the Ad Hoc flow or in the standard method), all participants connecting to the conference are moved to the Conference IVR queue where they are prompted for the conference password.
- When the participant enters the conference password or his/her personal password, it is sent to the external database application for validation.
- If there is a match, the participant is granted the right to join the conference. In addition, the external database application sends to the MCU the following parameters:
 - Participant name (display name)
 - Whether or not the participant is the conference chairperson
 - Participant Information, such as the participant E-mail. These fields correspond to Info 1, 2, 3 and 4 fields in the *Participant Properties - Information* dialog box.

If there is no match (i.e. the conference or personal password are not defined in the database), the request to access the conference is rejected and the participant is disconnected from the MCU.

- If the Conference IVR Service is configured to prompt for the chairperson identifier and password, the participant is requested to enter the chairperson identifier.
 - If no identifier is entered, the participant connects as a standard, undefined participant.
- If the chairperson identifier is entered, the participant is requested to enter the chairperson password. In this flow, the chairperson password is **not** validated with the external database application, only with the MCU.
 - If the correct chairperson password is entered, the participant is connected to the conference as its chairperson.
 - If the wrong password is entered, he/she is disconnected from the conference.

To enable conference access validation for all participants the following conferencing components are required:

- The external database must hold the conference password or the participant personal password/PIN code or the participant's Alias.
- The Conference IVR Service assigned to the conference (defined in the Profile) must be configured to authenticate the participant's right to access the conference with the external database application for all requests. In addition it must be configured to prompt for the Conference Password.

Conference Access Validation - Chairperson Only (Upon Request)

An alternative validation method at the conference level is checking only the chairperson password with the external database application. All other participants can be checked only with the MCU (if the Conference IVR Service is configured to prompt for the conference password) or not checked at all (if the Conference IVR Service is configured to prompt only for the chairperson password).

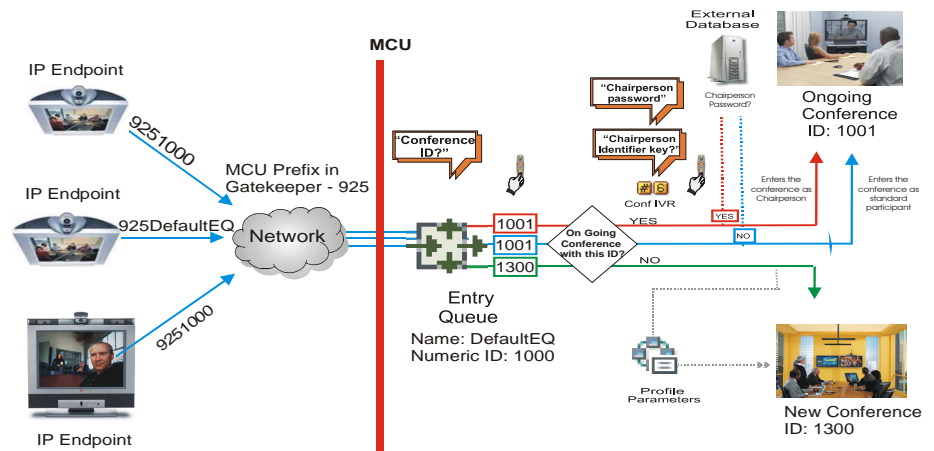


Figure D-4 Conference Access - Chairperson Password validation with external database application

Joining the conference entails the following steps:

- When the conference is started (either in the Ad Hoc flow or in the standard method), all participants connecting to the conference are moved to the conference IVR queue where they are prompted for the conference password.
- If the Conference IVR Service is configured to prompt for the Conference password, the participant is requested to enter the conference password. In this flow, the conference password is **not** validated with the external database application, only with the MCU.
 - If the wrong password is entered, he/she is disconnected from the conference.

- If the correct conference password is entered, the participant is prompted to enter the chairperson identifier key.
 - If no identifier is entered, the participant is connected to the conference as a standard participant.
- If the chairperson identifier is entered, the participant is prompted to enter the chairperson password.
- When the participant enters the chairperson password or his/her personal password, it is sent to the external database application for validation.
 - If the password is incorrect the participant is disconnected from the MCU.
- If there is a match, the participant is granted the right to join the conference as chairperson. In addition, the external database application sends to the MCU the following parameters:
 - Participant name (display name)
 - Participant Information, such as the participant E-mail. These fields correspond to Info 1, 2, 3 and 4 fields in the *Participant Properties - Information* dialog box.

To enable conference access validation for all participants the following conferencing components are required:

- The external database must hold the Chairperson Password or the participant's Alias.
- The Conference IVR Service assigned to the conference (defined in the Profile) must be configured to check the external database for the Chairperson password only when the participant enters the chairperson identifier key (either pound or star). In addition, it must be configured to prompt for the chairperson identifier key and password.

System Settings for Ad Hoc Conferencing and External Database Authentication

Ad Hoc Settings

Before a participant can initiate an Ad Hoc conference (with or without authentication), the following components must be defined:

- **Profiles**

Defines the conference parameters for the conferences that will be initiated from the Ad Hoc-enabled Entry Queue. For more information, see "**Conference Profiles**" on page [1-1](#).

- **Entry Queue IVR Service with Conference ID Request Enabled**

The Entry Queue Service is used to route participants to their destination conferences, or create a new conference with this ID.

In Ad Hoc conferencing, the Conference ID is used to check whether the destination conference is already running on the MCU and if not, to start a new conference using this ID. For more information, see "**Entry Queues IVR Service**" on page [12-24](#).

- **Ad Hoc - enabled Entry Queue**

Ad Hoc conferencing must be enabled in the Entry Queue and a Profile must be assigned to the Entry Queue. In addition, an Entry Queue IVR Service supporting conference ID request. For more information, see "**Ad Hoc Conferencing**" on page [3-10](#).

Authentication Settings

- **MCU Configuration**

Usage of an external database application for authentication (for starting new conferences or joining ongoing conferences) is configured for the MCU in the System Configuration.

- **Entry Queue IVR Service with Conference Initiation Authentication Enabled**

Set the Entry Queue IVR Service to send authentication requests to the external database application to verify the participant's right to start a new conference according to the Conference ID entered by the participant.

- **Conference IVR Service with Conference Access Authentication Enabled**

Set the Conference IVR Service to send authentication requests to the external database application to verify the participant's right to connect to the conference as a standard participant or as a chairperson.

- **External Database Application Settings**

The external database contains a list of participants (users), with their assigned parameters. These parameters are:

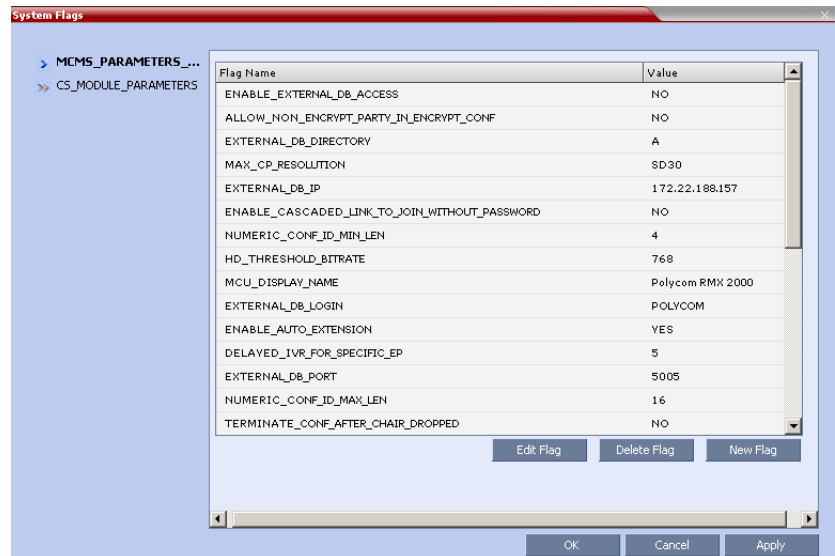
- Conference Name
- Conference Billing code
- Conference Password
- Chairperson Password
- Conference Information, such as the contact person name. These fields correspond to Info 1, 2 and 3 fields in the *Conference Properties - Information* dialog box.
- Maximum number of participants allowed for the conference
- Conference Owner
- Participant name (display name)
- Participant Information, such as the participant E-mail. These fields correspond to Info 1, 2, 3 and 4 fields in the *Participant Properties - Information* dialog box.

MCU Configuration to Communicate with an External Database Application

To enable the communication with the external database application, several flags must be set in the System Configuration.

To set the System Configuration flags:

- 1 On the *Setup* menu, click **System Configuration**.
The *System Flags* dialog box opens.



- 2 Modify the values of the following flags:

Table D-1 Flag Values for Accessing External Database Application

Flag	Description and Value
ENABLE_EXTERNAL_DB_ACCESS	The flag that enables the use of the external database application.
EXTERNAL_DB_IP	The IP address of the external database application server. default IP: 0.0.0.0.

Table D-1 *Flag Values for Accessing External Database Application (Continued)*

Flag	Description and Value
EXTERNAL_DB_PORT	The port number used by the MCU to access the external application server. Default Port = 80. To use the WebCommander application as an external database application, you must specify 5005.
EXTERNAL_DB_LOGIN	The user name defined in the external database application for the MCU. To use the WebCommander application as an external database application, the default user name is POLYCOM.
EXTERNAL_DB_PASSWORD	The password associated with the user name defined for the MCU in the external database application. To use the WebCommander application as an external database application, the default password is POLYCOM.
EXTERNAL_DB_DIRECTORY	The URL of the external database application.

For more information about flag settings, see "**System Configuration**" on page [14-10](#).

- 3 Click **OK**.
- 4 Reset the MCU for flag changes to take effect.

Enabling External Database Validation for Starting New Ongoing Conferences

The validation of the participant's right to start a new conference with an external database application is configured in the *Entry Queue IVR Service - Global* dialog box.

- ➡ Set the *External Server Authentication* field to **Numeric ID**.

The screenshot shows the 'New Entry Queue IVR Service' dialog box. On the left, a sidebar contains a tree view with the following items: Global (selected), Welcome, Conference ID, and Video Services. The main area of the dialog is titled 'Entry Queue IVR Service Name: EQ_IVR'. Below this, there are several configuration fields: 'Language:' with a dropdown set to 'English', 'External Server Authentication:' with a dropdown set to 'Numeric ID' (this field is circled in blue), 'Number of User Input Retries:' with a text box containing '3', 'Timeout for user Input(Sec):' with a text box containing '5', and 'DTMF Delimiter:' with a dropdown set to '#'. At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Enabling External Database Validation for Conferences Access

The validation of the participant's right to join an ongoing conference with an external database application is configured in the *Conference IVR Service - Global* dialog box.

You can set the system to validate all the participants joining the conference or just the chairperson.

- ➔ Set the *External Server Authentication* field to:
 - **Always** - to validate the participant's right to join an ongoing conference for all participants
 - **Upon Request** - to validate the participant's right to join an ongoing conference as chairperson

The screenshot shows the 'New Conference IVR Service' dialog box with the 'Global' tab selected. The 'External Server Authentication' dropdown menu is open, displaying three options: 'Never', 'Always', and 'Upon Request'. The 'Always' option is currently selected and highlighted. A blue oval is drawn around the 'External Server Authentication' field and its dropdown menu. Other fields visible include 'Conference IVR Service Name', 'Language' (set to English), 'Number of User Input Retries' (set to 5), 'Timeout for User Input (sec)' (set to 5), and 'DTMF Delimiter' (set to #). The 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

Appendix E

Gateway to Polycom® DMA™ 7000

Audio only PSTN and ISDN calls can connect to the Polycom Distributed Media Application™ (DMA) 7000 via gateway sessions running on the RMX. ISDN Video endpoints connect using their audio channel (but take video resources). Each RMX conference acting as a gateway session includes one connection to the endpoint and another connection to the DMA. The DMA 7000 enables load balancing and the distribution of multipoint calls on up to 10 Polycom RMX media servers.

As part of this solution, the RMX acts as a gateway for the DMA that supports H.323 calls. The PSTN or ISDN endpoint dials the virtual Meeting Room on the DMA via a special Entry Queue on the RMX.

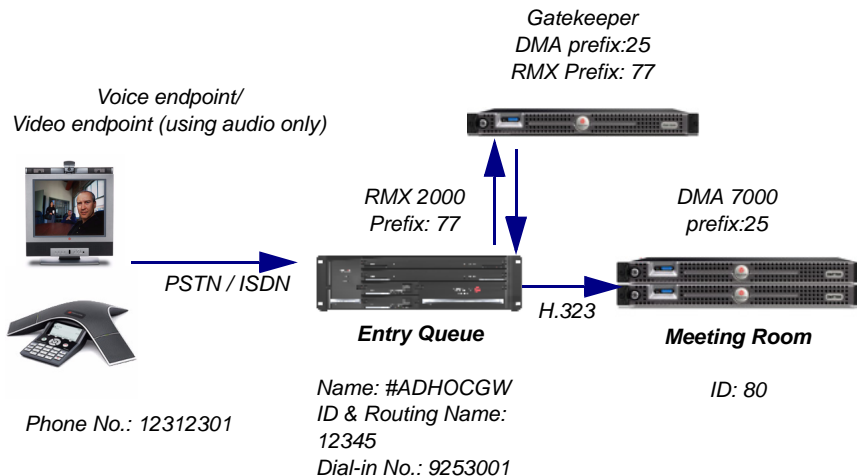


Figure E-1 Gateway to DMA Solution

To enable this solution a special Ad Hoc-enabled Entry Queue is defined on the RMX. To function as a gateway to the DMA, the Entry Queue Display Name must include the string **#ADHOCGW**, for example, **#ADHOCGW1** or **EQ#ADHOCGW2**.

An ISDN Network Service with the dial-in numbers range must be defined on the RMX.

In addition, the dialing string of the destination conference must be communicated to the dialing endpoint and used during the connection to the Entry Queue on the RMX. To enable the RMX to accept this dialing string as the ID of the conference, the flag defining the ID length (number of digits composing the ID string) must be set accordingly. For more details on flag definition, see the *RMX Administrator's Guide*, "System Configuration" on page 14-10.

Both the RMX and the DMA must be registered with the same gatekeeper.

Call Flow

The participant dials the Ad Hoc Entry Queue on the RMX using the appropriate dialing string:

- PSTN/ISDN participant: Entry Queue dial-in number (9253001), including the country and area code (if needed).

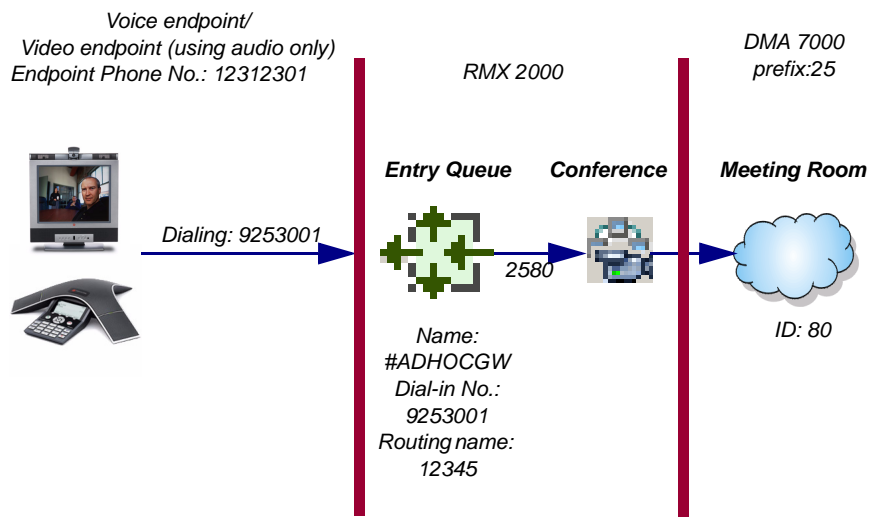


Figure E-2 Call Flow from PSTN/ISDN Endpoint to DMA via RMX

Upon connection to the Ad Hoc Entry Queue, when the participant is prompted for the target conference ID, he or she enters the string of the target meeting room on the DMA followed by a # key. This string is composed of the DMA prefix as registered in the gatekeeper and the ID of the virtual meeting room running on the DMA. For example, if the DMA prefix is 25 and the target meeting room ID is 80 the participant enters 2580 followed by the # key.

New Conference (Gateway Session) Created

The RMX creates a new conference with its unique ID.

Conference Display Name:

The display name of the new conference that acts as the gateway session is composed of the following components:

- The prefix **GW_**
- The endpoint visual name (if one exists)_. For example, Main1_
If a visual name is not defined for the endpoint, the participant phone number will be used. For example, (12312301)_
- (number) where the number is a gateway conference counter.

For example: if the endpoint visual name is Main1, the conference name will be GW_Main1_(001).

If no visual name can be retrieved, the conference name when the PSTN endpoint connects is GW_(12312301)_(001)

Conference Routing Name:

The conference routing name includes the following components:

- The prefix **GW_**
- (number) where the number is a gateway conference counter.

For example: GW_(001).

Conference ID:

The ID of the new conference is assigned randomly by the MCU.

The Connected Participants

Once this conference is created, the calling participant is connected to it and a new dial-out H.323 participant is automatically created and added to this audio only gateway session.

The connecting participant name is derived from the Entry Queue display name and it includes the Entry Queue name, an activation identification number (appears between brackets), underscore and a random number (appears between brackets), for example, #ADHOCGW(12)_(001).

The dial out participant name is derived from the conference name and the suffix **_323Out**. For example, GW_Main1_(001)_323Out or GW_(001)_323Out.

The RMX uses the conference ID entered by the calling participant as the E.164 format dialing string to connect the participant to the DMA. for example, 2580.


Setting up the RMX as an Audio Gateway to the DMA

To enable the RMX to function as an audio gateway to the DMA the following entities must be configured on the RMX:

- ISDN Network Service with defined dial-in numbers range. For more details on how to configure the ISDN Network Service and the dial-in numbers range, see the *RMX Administrator's Guide, "Adding/Modifying ISDN/PSTN Network Services"* on page **11-28**.
- Both RMX and DMA must be registered to the same gatekeeper. The gatekeeper is configured in the Default IP Network Service. For more details, see the *RMX Administrator's Guide, "Modifying the Default IP Network Service"* on page **11-8**.
- Video resources must be converted to audio resources in the Video/Voice Port Configuration. For details, see the *RMX Administrator's Guide, "Video/Voice Port Configuration"* on page **14-30**.
- Optional. A Profile in which the *Maximum Number of Participants* field is set to 2. This Profile will be assigned to the GW-to-DMA Entry Queue. For more details about Profile definition, see the *RMX Administrator's Guide, "Defining Profiles"* on page **1-8**.
- GW-to-DMA Entry Queue

Entry Queue Definition

To define the GW-to-DMA Entry Queue:

- 1 In the *RMX Management* pane, click the **Entry Queues** icon .
- 2 In the *Entry Queues* list pane, click the **New Entry Queue** toolbar button.

- 3 The *New Entry Queue* dialog box opens.

The screenshot shows the 'New Entry Queue' dialog box. The 'Display Name' field contains '#ADHOCGW'. The 'Routing Name' field is empty. The 'Profile' dropdown is set to 'Factory_Video_Profile'. The 'ID' field contains '12345'. The 'Entry Queue IVR Service' dropdown is set to 'Entry Queue IVR Service'. The 'Ad Hoc' checkbox is checked. The 'Cascade' dropdown is set to 'None'. The 'Enable ISDN/PSTN Access' checkbox is checked. The 'ISDN/PSTN Network Service' dropdown is set to '[Default Service]'. The 'Dial-in Number (1)' field contains '9253001'. The 'Dial-in Number (2)' field is empty. The 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

- 4 Define the following parameters:

Table E-1: Entry Queue Definitions Parameters

Option	Description
<i>Display Name</i>	Enter a name that includes the string #ADHOCGW , for example, #ADHOCGW1 or EQ#ADHOCGW2.
<i>Routing Name</i>	Enter a <i>Routing Name</i> using ASCII text or leave this field blank to use the Entry Queue <i>ID</i> as the <i>Routing Name</i> .

Table E-1: Entry Queue Definitions Parameters (Continued)

Option	Description
<i>Profile</i>	<p>Select the Profile to be used by the Entry Queue and that will be used to define the properties of the new conference created by the Ad Hoc Entry Queue. This Profile determines the properties with which participants connect to the Entry Queue and destination conference.</p> <p>The default Profile is selected by default.</p> <p>Note: It is recommended that a new Profile is created and assigned to Entry Queues used as Gateway-to-DMA. In this Profile the <i>Maximum Number of Participants</i> field should be set to 2. For more details about Profile definition, see the <i>RMX Administrator's Guide</i>, "Defining Profiles" on page 1-8.</p>
<i>ID</i>	<p>Enter a unique number identifying the Entry Queue for dial in. Default string length is 4 digits. If you do not manually assign the Entry Queue ID, the MCU assigns one after the completion of the definition. The ID String Length is defined by the flag NUMERIC_CONF_ID_LEN in the System Configuration. For more details, see the <i>RMX Administrator's Guide</i>, Chapter 14, "System Flags – MCMS_PARAMETERS" on page 14-11.</p>
<i>Entry Queue IVR Service</i>	<p>The default Entry Queue IVR Service is selected. If required, select an alternate Entry Queue IVR Service, which includes the required voice prompts, to guide participants during their connection to the Entry Queue.</p>
<i>Ad Hoc</i>	<p>Select this check box to enable the Ad Hoc option for this Entry Queue.</p>
<i>Cascade</i>	<p>Select None for this Entry Queue.</p>

Table E-1: Entry Queue Definitions Parameters (Continued)

Option	Description
<i>Enable ISDN/PSTN Access</i>	Select this check box to allocate dial-in numbers for ISDN/PSTN connections. To define the first dial-in number using the default ISDN/PSTN Network Service, leave the default selection. When the Entry Queue is saved on the MCU, the dial-in number will be automatically assigned to the Entry Queue. This number is taken from the dial-in numbers range in the default ISDN/PSTN Network Service.
<i>ISDN/PSTN Network Service</i>	The default Network Service is automatically selected. To select a different ISDN/PSTN Network Service in the service list, select the name of the Network Service.
<i>Dial-in Number (1)</i>	Leave this field blank to let the system automatically assign a number from the selected ISDN/PSTN Network Service. To manually define a dial-in number, enter the required number from the dial-in number range defined for the selected Network Service.
<i>Dial-in Number (2)</i>	By default, the second dial-in number is not defined. To define a second-dial-in number, enter the required number from the dial-in number range defined for the selected Network Service.

- 5** Click the **OK** button.
The new Entry Queue is added to the *Entry Queues* list.

Monitoring a Gateway-to-DMA Session

When a participant connects to the GW Entry Queue, the activated Entry Queue is listed in the ongoing conferences list. In addition, the new conference acting as a gateway session is created using the naming convention GW_(endpoint name)_(counter).

The screenshot displays the POLYCOM RMX 2000 interface with two main panels: **Gateway Entry Queue** and **Gateway Conference Participants**.

Gateway Entry Queue: This panel lists conferences. Annotations indicate naming rules:

- Name includes endpoint name:** Points to the entry `#ADHOCGW(13)`.
- No endpoint name:** Points to the entry `GW_Polycom Simulation H323_(000)`.
- Name includes CLI number:** Points to the entry `GW_(12312303)_(002)`.

Gateway Conference Participants: This panel shows participants in a conference. Annotations indicate:

- Dial-out Participant:** Points to the entry `GW_(12312303)_(002) (2 participants)`.
- Dial-in Participant:** Points to the entry `#ADHOCGW(13)_(002)`.

The dial-in participant and the dial-out H.323 participant automatically created by the RMX are listed in the Participants list for the gateway-to-DMA conference.

ISDN video participants that connect with their audio channel only take video resources as if they were connected using video.

The gateway-to-DMA conference is automatically terminated when the end time is reached or if it does not include two participants for at least one minute. Possible causes are:

- The dial-out participant did not connect to the DMA due to:
 - Wrong or invalid ID of the target conference
 - Gatekeeper problem
 - No RMX resources
 - DMA problem
- The dial-in or dial-out participant disconnected from the conference.

In addition, the RMX user can terminate the conference as any other ongoing conference or by disconnecting any of the connected participants.

Appendix F

Participant Properties Advanced Channel Information

The following appendix details the properties connected with information about audio and video parameters, as well as, problems with the network which can affect the audio and video quality.

Table F-1 Participant Properties - Channel Status Advanced Parameters

Field	Description
<u>Media Info</u>	
<i>Algorithm</i>	Indicates the audio or video algorithm and protocol.
<i>Frame per packet</i> (audio only)	The number of audio frames per packet that are transferred between the MCU and the endpoint. If the actual Frame per Packets are higher than Frame per Packets declared during the capabilities exchange, a Faulty flag is displayed.
<i>Resolution</i> (video only)	Indicates the video resolution in use. If the actual resolution is higher than resolution declared in the capabilities exchange, the Faulty flag is displayed. For example, if the declared resolution is CIF and the actual resolution is 4CIF, the Faulty flag is displayed.

Table F-1 Participant Properties - Channel Status Advanced Parameters

Field	Description
<i>Frame Rate</i> (video only)	The number of video frames per second that are transferred between the MCU and the endpoint.
<i>Annexes</i> (video only)	Indicates the H.263 annexes in use at the time of the last RTCP report. If the actual annexes used are other than the declared annexes in the capabilities exchange, the Faulty flag is displayed.
<i>Channel Index</i>	For Polycom Internal use only.
<u><i>RTP Statistics</i></u>	
<i>Actual loss</i>	<p>The number of missing packets counted by the IP card as reported in the last RTP Statistics report. If a packet that was considered lost arrives later, it is deducted from the packet loss count. Packet loss is displayed with the following details:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Accumulated N - number of lost packets accumulated since the channel opened.• Accumulated % - percentage of lost packets out of the total number of packets transmitted since the channel opened.• Interval N - number of packets lost in the last RTP report interval (default interval is 5 minutes).• Interval % - percentage of lost packets out of the total number of packets transmitted in the last RTP report interval (default interval is 5 minutes).• Peak - the highest number of lost packets in a report interval from the beginning of the channel's life span.

Table F-1 Participant Properties - Channel Status Advanced Parameters

Field	Description
<i>Out of Order</i>	<p>The number of packets arriving out of order. The following details are displayed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Accumulated N - total number of packets that arrived out of order since the channel opened.• Accumulated % - percentage of packets that arrived out of order out of the total number of packets transmitted since the channel opened.• Interval N - number of packets that arrived out of order in the last RTP report interval (default interval is 5 minutes).• Interval % - percentage of packets that arrived out of order out of the total number of packets transmitted in the last RTP report interval (default interval is 5 minutes).• Peak - the highest number of packets that arrived out of order in a report interval from the beginning of the channel's life span.

Table F-1 Participant Properties - Channel Status Advanced Parameters

Field	Description
<i>Fragmented</i>	<p>Indicates the number of packets that arrived to the IP card fragmented (i.e., a single packet broken by the network into multiple packets). This value can indicate the delay and reordering of fragmented packets that require additional processing, but is not considered a fault.</p> <p>The Fragmented information is displayed with the following details:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Accumulated N - total number of packets that were fragmented since the channel opened.• Accumulated % - percentage of fragmented packets out of the total number of packets transmitted since the channel opened.• Interval N - number of fragmented packets received in the last RTP report interval (default interval is 5 minutes).• Interval % - percentage of fragmented packets out of the total number of packets transmitted in the last RTP report interval (default interval is 5 minutes).• Peak - the highest number of fragmented packets in a report interval from the beginning of the channel's life span.

Appendix G

Secure Communication Mode

The RMX can be configured to work in *Secure Mode* by configuring the RMX and the RMX Web Client to work with SSL/TLS.

In this mode, a SSL/TLS Certificate is installed on the MCU, setting the MCU Listening Port to secured port 443.

TLS is a cryptographic protocol used to ensure secure communications on public networks. TLS uses a *Certificate* purchased from a trusted third party *Certificate Authority* to authenticate public keys that are used in conjunction with private keys to ensure secure communications across the network.

The RMX supports:

- TLS 1.0
- SSL 3.0 (Secure Socket Layer)

Both TLS 1.0 and SSL 3.0 utilize 1024-bit RSA public key encryption.

Switching to Secure Mode

The following operations are required to switch the RMX to *Secure Mode*:

- Purchase and Install the *SSL/TLS certificate*
- Modify the *Management Network* settings
- Create/Modify the relevant *System Flags*

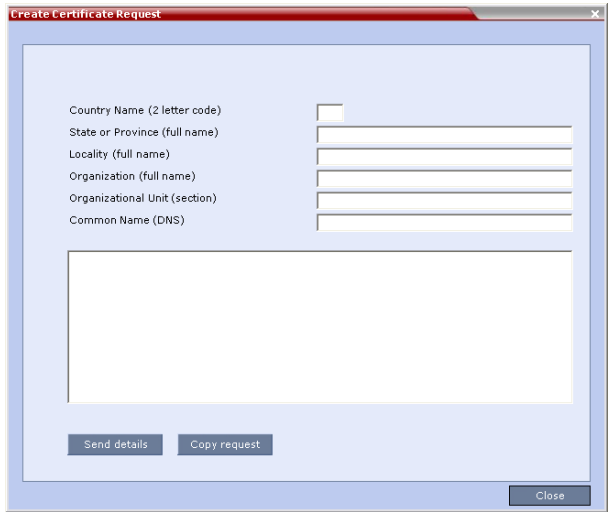
Purchasing a Certificate

Once a certificate is purchased and received it is stored in the RMX and used for all subsequent secured connections.

To create/purchase a certificate:

- 1 In the RMX menu, click **Setup > Secured RMX Communications > Create certificate request**.

The *Create Certificate Request* dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Enter information in all the following fields:

Table G-1 *Create Certificate Request*

Field	Description
Country Name	Enter any 2 letter code for the country name.
<i>State or Province</i>	Enter the full name of the state or province.
<i>Locality</i>	Enter the full name of the town/city/location.
<i>Organization</i>	Enter the full name of your organization for which the certificate will be issued.
<i>Organizational Unit</i>	Enter the full name of the unit (group or division) for which the certificate will be issued.
<i>Common Name (DNS/ IP)</i>	Enter the <i>DNS MCU Host Name</i> . This <i>MCU Host Name</i> must also be configured in the <i>Management Network Properties</i> dialog box.

3 Click **Send Details**.

The RMX creates a *New Certificate Request* and returns it to the *Create Certificate Request* dialog box along with the information the user submitted.

Country Name (2 letter code) PL

State or Province (full name) Tivachet

Locality (full name) Petlikoya

Organization (full name) Polycom

Organizational Unit (section) PD

Common Name (DNS) rmx154

```

-----BEGIN NEW CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
MIIBkjCBATBADA6BTMQswCQYDVQQLSEwJTDLMaGA1UECBMCNDUyCzA3BgNVBAcT
AjMyMRAwDQYDVQQKEwQ0T0xZQ09NMQswCQYDVQQLSEwJTDLMaGA1UEAxMCNDMw
gZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBALBshuzaZVgBuXwh/LTICqjVzrTG
6HTChQumEt8Hlx+R0QmVesaxu9A34/DVyaJMHWhbmoQbJNairVbaulxMhqDrp
oIZuKBN6mm+SpdV63/gFN7o43qgWEVhSDuBcHHTWa/R923oZ738Y9pZb+69rh
eFOidxOQBVAps4ajkgB6AAGgADANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQFAAOBgQCwIqzGUabeZOEH
gJNi6TB2E9cmOs2NU1zf+Ub7IZOIMoskx9wwX1pdjXByF5jzdiX+Nyvr6RGHdf
XSVy8wm0fx7IZ6n6VUpdoEneIPj9Qms2eWUJZWUP0n075JIKZqj7XAOy/nib4
JKUTHE9/RAoCTkm7ex4dk2kHtSdQ=
-----END NEW CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----

```

Send details Copy request Close

4 Click **Copy Request** to copy the *New Certificate Request* to the workstation's clipboard.

5 Connect to your preferred *Certificate Authority's* website using the web browser.

6 Follow the purchasing instructions at the *Certificate Authority's* website.

Paste (**Ctrl + V**) the *New Certificate Request* as required by the *Certificate Authority*.

The *Certificate Authority* issues the TLS/SSL certificate, and sends the certificate to you by e-mail.

Installing the Certificate

To install the certificate:

After you have received the certificate from the *Certificate Authority*:

1 **Copy (Ctrl + C)** the certificate information from the *Certificate Authority's* e-mail to the clipboard.

- 2 In the RMX menu, click **Setup > Secured RMX Communications > Send Certificate**.
- 3 Click **Paste Certificate** to paste the clipboard content into the *Send Certificate* dialog box.



- 4 Click the **Send Certificate** button to send the certificate to the RMX. The MCU validates the certificate.
 - If the certificate is not valid, an error message is displayed.
 - If the certificate matches the private key, and the task is completed, a confirmation message indicating that the certificate was created successfully is displayed.

A *System Restart* is **not** required at this point.

The certificate expiry date is checked daily. An active alarm is raised two weeks before the certificate is due to expire, stating the number of days to expiry.

If the certificate expires, the RMX continues to work in secure mode and an *Active Alarm* is raised with *Security mode failed – Certificate expired* in the description field.



Certificates are deleted when an administrator performs a *Restore Factory Defaults* with the *Comprehensive Restore* option selected.

Creating/Modifying System Flags

The following *System Flags* in *system.cfg* control secure communications.

- *RMX_MANAGEMENT_SECURITY_PROTOCOL*
- *EXTERNAL_DB_PORT*

Appendix G, "System Flags", below, lists both flags and their settings.

If the *System Flag*, *RMX_MANAGEMENT_SECURITY_PROTOCOL* does not exist in the system, it must be created by using the *RMX Setup* menu.

For more information see the *RMX 2000 Administrator's Guide*, "Modifying System Flags" on page [14-10](#).

Table G-2 System Flags

Flag	Description
<i>RMX_MANAGEMENT_SECURITY_PROTOCOL</i>	Enter the protocol to be used for secure communications. Default: TLSV1_SSLV3 (both). Default for U.S. Federal licenses: TLSV1.
<i>EXTERNAL_DB_PORT</i>	The external database server port used by the RMX to send and receive XML requests/responses. For secure communications set the value to 443. Default: 5005.

The RMX must be restarted for modified flag settings to take effect.

Enabling Secure Communication Mode

After the SSL/TLS Certificate is installed, secure communications are enabled by modifying the properties of the *Management Network* in the *Management Network* properties dialog box.

When *Secure Communications Mode* is enabled:

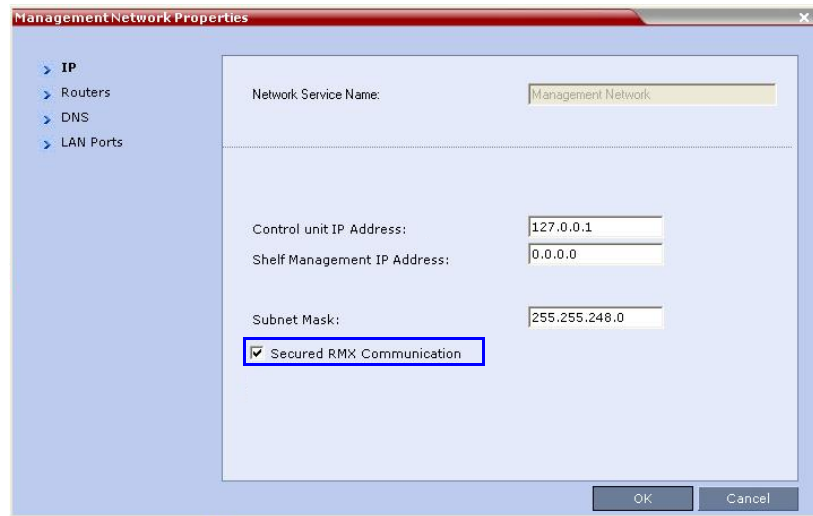
- Only **https://** commands from the browser to the *Control Unit IP Address* of the RMX are accepted.
- The RMX listens only on secured port 443.
- All connection attempts on port 80 are rejected.

- A secure communication indicator (🔒) is displayed in the browser's status bar.

To enable secure communications mode:

- 1** In the *RMX Management* pane, click **IP Network Services**.
- 2** In the *IP Network Services* list pane, double click the **Management Network** entry.

The *Management Network Properties* dialog box is displayed.

The image shows a screenshot of the 'Management Network Properties' dialog box. On the left is a tree view with 'IP' selected, which has sub-items 'Routers', 'DNS', and 'LAN Ports'. The main area contains several input fields: 'Network Service Name' (Management Network), 'Control unit IP Address' (127.0.0.1), 'Shelf Management IP Address' (0.0.0.0), and 'Subnet Mask' (255.255.248.0). At the bottom, there is a checkbox labeled 'Secured RMX Communication' which is checked and highlighted with a blue rectangle. 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

- 3** Select the *Secured RMX Communication* check box.
- 4** Click **OK**.

Alternate Management Network

The *Alternate Management Network* enables direct access to the RMX for support purposes. Access to the Alternate Management Network is via a cable connected to a workstation. The Alternate Management Network is accessible only via the dedicated LAN 3 port.

For more information see the *RMX 2000 Administrator's Guide*, "Configuring Direct Connections to RMX" on page [H-1](#) and "Connecting to the Alternate Management Network" on page [H-7](#).



Connection to the *Alternate Management Network* bypasses LAN and Firewall security. Strict control of access to LAN 3 port is recommended.

Securing an External Database

TLS 1.0 is used when securing communications between the RMX and an external database. The certificate is installed on the database server and the RMX is the client. When the certificate is installed on the database server, all client requests and responses are transferred via secure port 443.

It is important to verify that the external database application is operating in secure mode before enabling secure external database communications on the RMX. The RMX checks the validity of external database's certificate before communicating. If there is a certificate error an *Active Alarm* is raised with *Error in external database certificate* in the description field.

To enable secure RMX Communications with an External Database:

- Set the RMX to communicate with the database server via port 443 by setting the value of the *System Flag EXTERNAL_DB_PORT* in *system.cfg* to 443.

For more information see the *RMX 2000 Administrator's Guide*, "Modifying System Flags" on page **14-10**.

Appendix H

Configuring Direct Connections to RMX

Direct connection to the RMX is necessary if you want to:

- Modify the RMX's *Factory Default Management Network* settings without using the USB key.
- Connect to the RMX's *Alternate Management Network* for support purposes.
- Connect to the RMX via a modem.

Management Network (Primary)

If you do not want to use the USB key method of modifying the RMX's *Management Network* parameters, it is necessary to establish a direct connection between a workstation and the RMX.

Alternate Management Network

The *Alternate Management Network* enables direct access to the RMX for support purposes.

While being separate from all other networks, it has identical functionality to the *Management Network*.

Support personnel can log in and used it to manage the RMX if a connection to the *Management Network* cannot be made or if internet access to the host network is blocked by LAN security or a firewall.

The *Alternate Management Network* can not be configured and operates according to factory defaults.

The administrator's **Login** name, **Password**, viewing and system permissions on the *Alternate Management Network* are the same as those on the *Management Network*.

Once logged in, the *RMX Web Client* behaves as if the administrator had logged in on the *Management Network*.



Connection to the *Alternate Management Network* bypasses LAN and Firewall security. Strict control of access to *LAN 3* port is recommended.

Configuring the Workstation

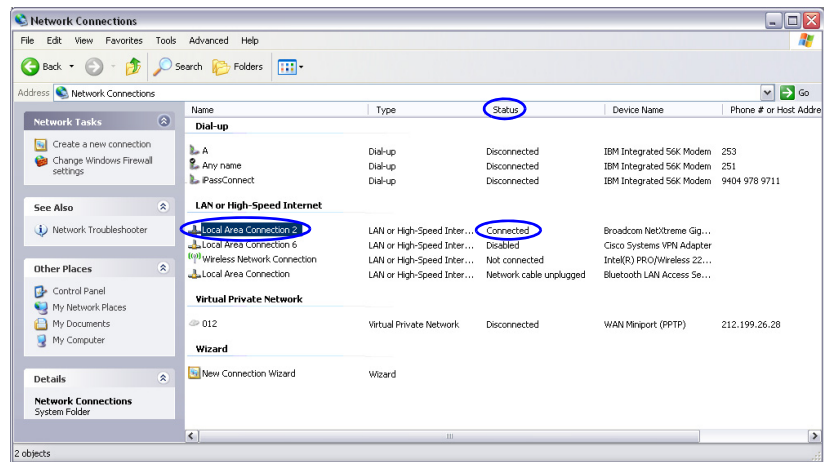
The following procedures show how to modify the workstation's networking parameters using the *Windows New Connection Wizard*.

For non-Windows operating systems an equivalent procedure must be performed by the system administrator.

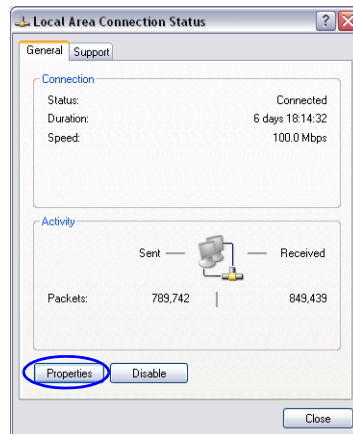
Before connecting directly, you must modify the *IP Address*, *Subnet Mask* and *Default Gateway* settings of the workstation to be compatible with either the RMX's *Default Management Network* or *Alternate Management Network*.

To modify the workstation's IP addresses:

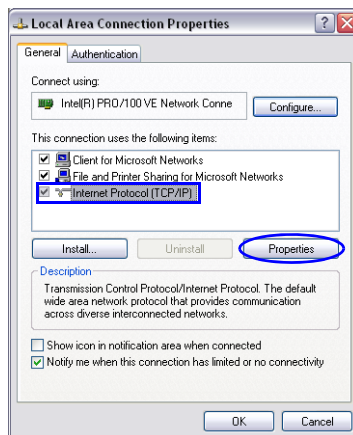
- 1 On the Windows *Start* menu, select **Settings > Network Connections**.
- 2 In the *Network Connections* window, double-click the **Local Area Connection** that has *Connected* status.



- 3 In the *Local Area Connection Status* dialog box, click the **Properties** button.



- 4 In the *Local Area Connection Properties* dialog box, select **Internet Protocol [TCP/IP] > Properties**.



- 5 In the *Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties* dialog box, select **Use the following IP address**.

- 6 Enter the *IP address*, *Subnet mask* and *Default gateway* for the workstation.

The addresses needed for connection to either the RMX's *Default Management Network* or *Alternate Management Network* are listed in Table H-1.

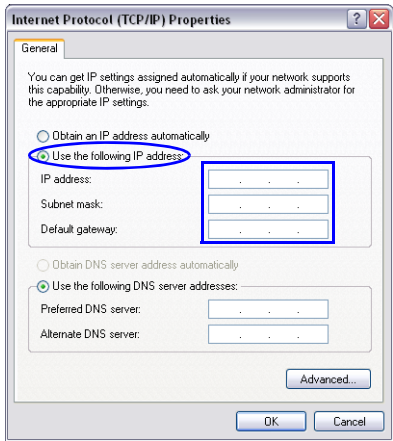


Table H-1 *Network Addresses*

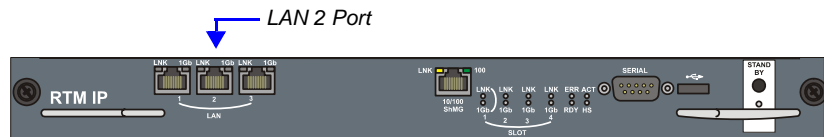
Network Entity	IP Address	
	Management Network (Factory Default)	Alternate Network
Control Unit IP Address	192.168.1.254	169.254.192.10
Control Unit Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.240.0
Default Router IP Address	192.168.1.1	169.254.192.1
Workstation IP Address	192.168.1.255	169.254.192.11
Shelf Management IP Address	192.168.1.252	169.254.192.16

- 7 Click the **OK** button.

Connecting to the Management Network

To connect directly to the RMX:

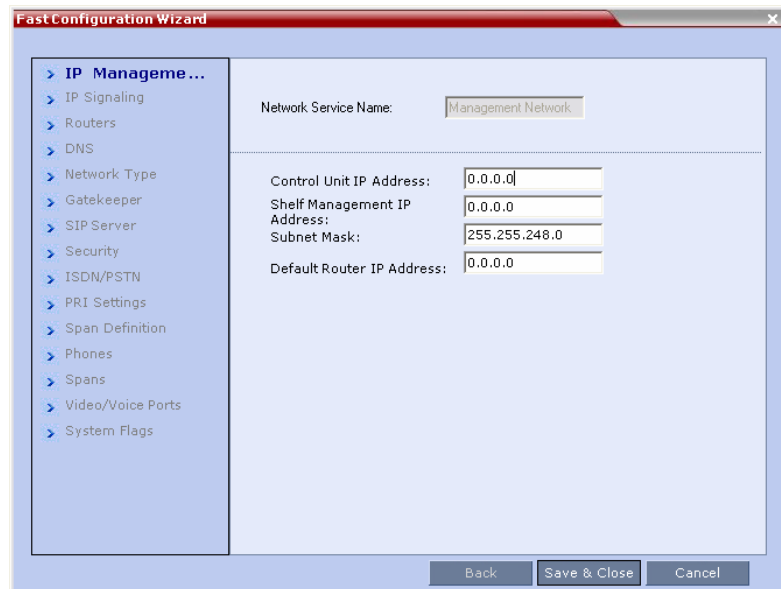
- 1 Using a LAN cable, connect the workstation to the LAN 2 Port on the RMX's back panel.



- 2 Connect the power cable and power the RMX **On**.
- 3 Start the *RMX Web Client* application on the workstation, by entering the factory setting *Management IP* address in the browser's address line and pressing **Enter**.
- 4 In the *RMX Web Client* Login screen, enter the default *Username* (**POLYCOM**) and *Password* (**POLYCOM**) and click the **Login** button.

The *Fast Configuration Wizard* starts.

If no *USB key* is detected and **either**: this is the *First Time Power-up* **or** the *Default IP Service* has been deleted and the RMX has been reset, the following dialog box is displayed:



For more information about First-time Power-up and the *Fast Configuration Wizard* see the *RMX 2000 Getting Started Guide*, "Procedure 3: First-time Power-up and Connection to MCU" on page 2-9.

- 5 Enter the following parameters using the information supplied by your network administrator:

- Control Unit IP Address
- Shelf Management IP Address
- Control Unit Subnet Mask
- Default Router IP Address

- 6 Click the **Save & Close** button.

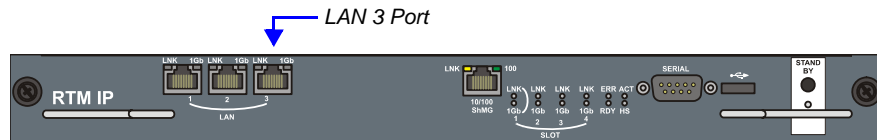
The system prompts you to sign in with the new *Control Unit IP Address*.



- 7 Disconnect the LAN cable between the workstation and the LAN 2 Port on the RMX's back panel.
- 8 Connect LAN 2 Port on the RMX's back panel to the local network using a LAN cable.
- 9 Enter the new *Control Unit IP Address* in the browser's address line, using a workstation on the local network, and press **Enter** to start the *RMX Web Client* application.
- 10 In the *RMX Web Client* Login screen, enter the default *Username* (**POLYCOM**) and *Password* (**POLYCOM**) and click the **Login** button.

Connecting to the Alternate Management Network

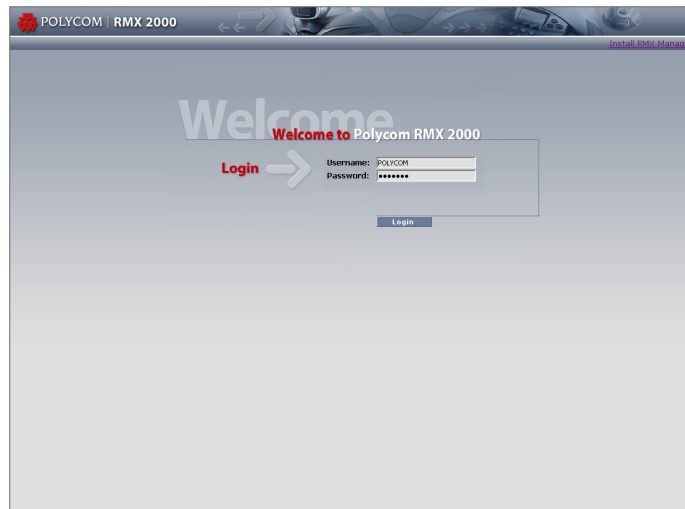
Access to the *Alternate Management Network* is via a cable connected to a workstation. The *Alternate Management Network* is accessible only via the dedicated *LAN 3* port.



To connect to the Alternate Management Network:

- 1 Connect the cable between the RMX's LAN 3 port and the LAN port configured on the workstation.
- 2 Start the *RMX Web Client* application on the workstation, by entering **http://169.254.192.10** (the *Control Unit IP Address*) in the browser's address line and pressing **Enter**.

The *Login* dialog box is displayed.



- 3 In the *RMX Welcome Screen*, enter the administrator's *Username* and *Password* and click the **Login** button.

The *RMX Web Client* starts and the RMX can be managed in the same manner as if you had logged on the *Management Network*.

Connecting to the RMX via Modem

Remote access to the RMX's *Alternate Management Network* is supported via an external PSTN <=> IP modem.

To connect via modem to the *Alternate Management Network* the following procedures must be performed:

- 1 Procedure 1: Install the RMX Manager** – the web client enables direct access to the RMX for support purposes.
- 2 Procedure 2: Configure the modem** – by assigning it an IP address on a specific subnet in the *Alternate Management Network*.
- 3 Procedure 3: Create a dial-up connection** – using the *Windows New Connection Wizard*.
- 4 Procedure 4: Connect to the RMX** – via the *RMX Manager*.

Procedure 1: Install the RMX Manager

Before installing the *RMX Manager*, verify that you have at least 150Mb of free space on your workstation.

For more information see "*Installing RMX Manager*" on page [14-1](#).

Procedure 2: Configure the Modem

Configure the modem as follows:

- **IP address** – near 169.254.192.nn
- **Subnet Mask** – 255.255.240.0



The following IP addresses should **not** be used:

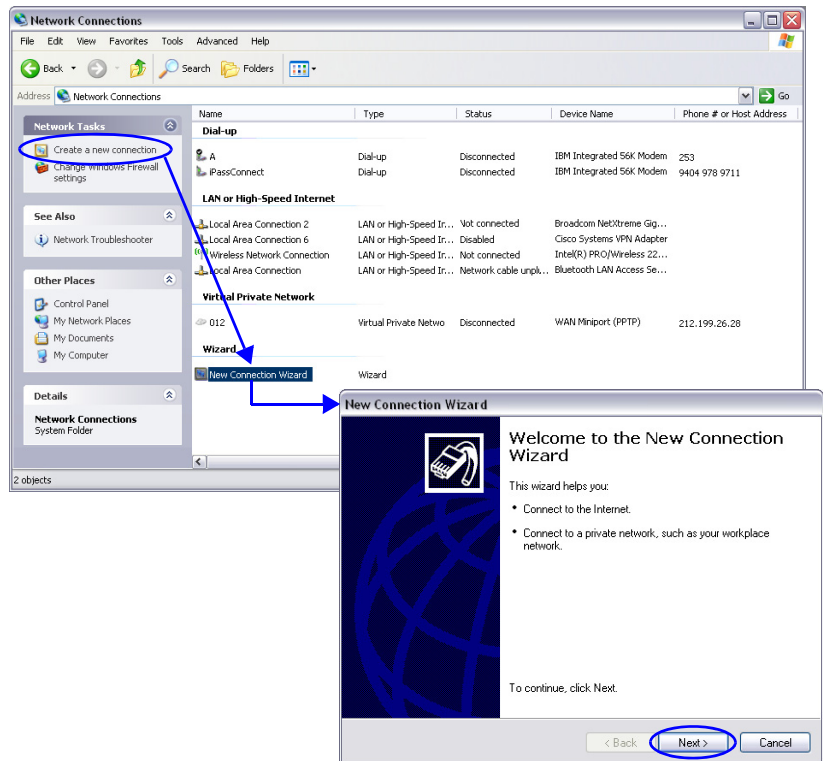
- 169.254.192.10 – the *Control Unit IP Address*
- 169.254.192.16 – the *Shelf Management IP Address*

Procedure 3: Create a Dial-up Connection

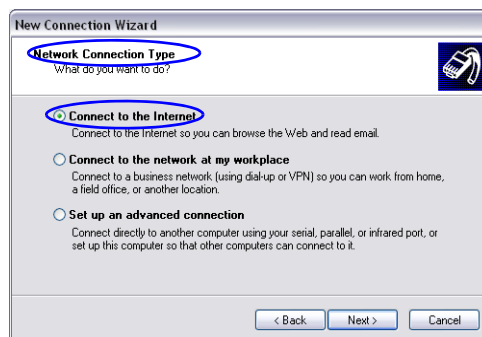
To create a dial-up connection:

This procedure is performed once. Only the *Dial* field in the *Connect* applet (see step 10 on page [H-12](#)) is modified for connection to different modems.

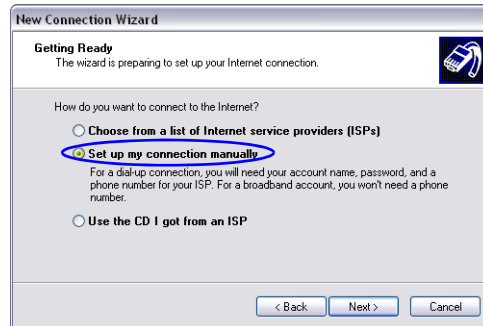
- 1** In *Windows*, navigate via the *Control Panel* to the *Network Connections* applet and select **Create a new connection**.
- 2** When the *New Connection Wizard* is displayed, click the **Next** button.



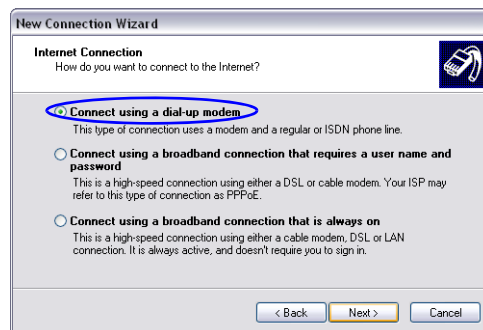
- 3 In the *Network Connection Type* box, select **Connect to the Internet** and click the **Next** button.



- 4 In the *Getting Ready* box, select **Set up my connection manually** and click the **Next** button.



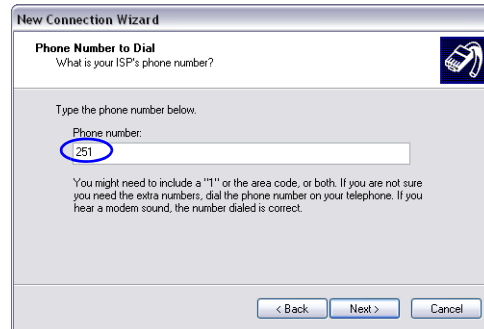
- 5 In the *Internet Connection* box, select **Connect using dial-up modem** and click the **Next** button.



- 6 In the *Connection Name* box, enter a **Name** for the modem connection (e.g. *Modem Connection*) and click the **Next** button.



- 7 In the *Phone Number to Dial* box, enter the **Phone Number** for the modem and click the **Next** button.



The screenshot shows the 'New Connection Wizard' window with the 'Phone Number to Dial' tab selected. The title bar reads 'New Connection Wizard'. Below the tab, the text says 'Phone Number to Dial' and 'What is your ISP's phone number?'. There is a small icon of a modem in the top right corner. The main area contains the instruction 'Type the phone number below.' followed by 'Phone number:' and a text input field containing '251'. Below the input field, there is a note: 'You might need to include a "1" or the area code, or both. If you are not sure you need the extra numbers, dial the phone number on your telephone. If you hear a modem sound, the number dialed is correct.' At the bottom, there are three buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

- 8 In the *Connection Availability* box, select **Anyone's use** and click the **Next** button.



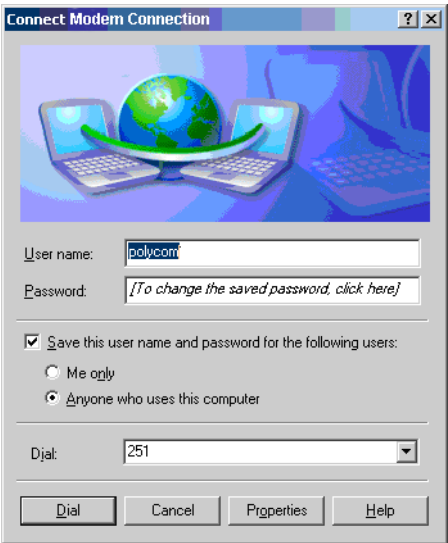
The screenshot shows the 'New Connection Wizard' window with the 'Connection Availability' tab selected. The title bar reads 'New Connection Wizard'. Below the tab, the text says 'Connection Availability' and 'You can make the new connection available to any user or only to yourself.' There is a small icon of a modem in the top right corner. The main area contains the instruction 'A connection that is created for your use only is saved in your user account and is not available unless you are logged on.' followed by 'Create this connection for:'. There are two radio button options: 'Anyone's use' (which is selected and circled in blue) and 'My use only'. At the bottom, there are three buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

- 9 In the *Internet Account Information* box, complete the *Username*, *Password* and *Confirm Password* fields and click the **Next** button.



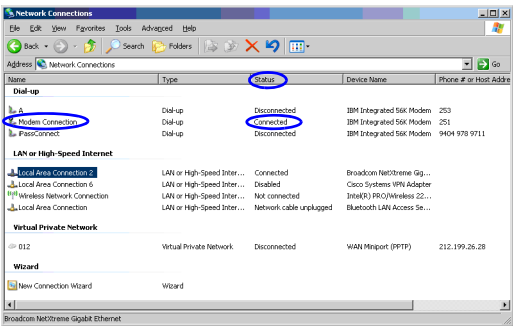
The screenshot shows the 'New Connection Wizard' window with the 'Internet Account Information' tab selected. The title bar reads 'New Connection Wizard'. Below the tab, the text says 'Internet Account Information' and 'You will need an account name and password to sign in to your Internet account.' There is a small icon of a modem in the top right corner. The main area contains the instruction 'Type an ISP account name and password, then write down this information and store it in a safe place. (If you have forgotten an existing account name or password, contact your ISP.)'. There are three text input fields: 'User name:' (containing 'polycom'), 'Password:' (containing seven dots), and 'Confirm password:' (containing seven dots). Below the input fields, there are two checked checkboxes: 'Use this account name and password when anyone connects to the Internet from this computer' and 'Make this the default Internet connection'. At the bottom, there are three buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

- 10 The *Connection* applet is displayed with the field values filled in as specified by the *New Connection Wizard*.



- 11 Click the **Dial** button to establish a connection to *LAN 3 Port* via the modem.

The *Windows – Network Connections* applet displays *Connected* status for the new connection.



Procedure 4: Connect to the RMX

To Connect using the RMX Manager:

To use the browser:

- ➔ In the browser's command line, enter `http://<MCU Control Unit IP Address>/RmxManager.html` and press **Enter**.

To use the Windows Start menu:

1 Click **Start**.

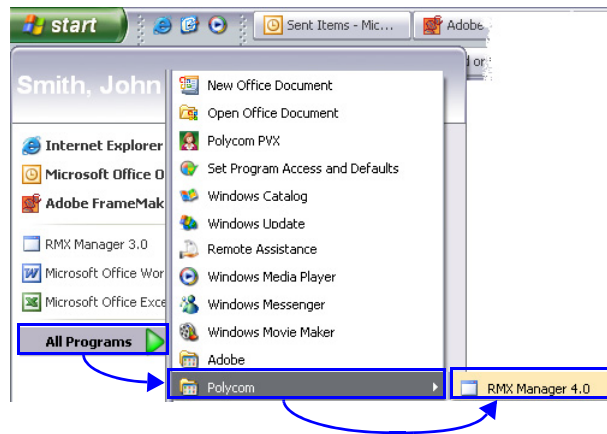
- a If the *RMX Manager* appears in the recently used programs list, click **RMX Manager** in the list to start the application.

or

- b Click **All Programs**.

The *All Programs* list is displayed.

- a Select **Polycom** and then select **RMX Manager**.



The *RMX Manager – Welcome* screen is displayed.

